ESET Mail Security

User guide
Click here to display the online version of this document

Overview

ESET Mail Security for Microsoft Exchange Server is an integrated solution that protects mail servers and users' mailboxes from various types of malicious content. Including email attachments infected by worms or Trojans, documents containing harmful scripts, phishing schemes, spam, sender forging and email spoofing.

ESET Mail Security provides four types of protection: Antivirus, Antispam, Anti-phishing and Rules. ESET Mail Security filters malicious content in Mailbox databases and on the Mail transport layer before it arrives in the recipient's mailbox.

ESET Mail Security supports Microsoft Exchange Server versions 2010 and later, as well as Microsoft Exchange Server in a cluster environment. Specific Exchange Server roles (mailbox, hub, edge) are also supported.

While providing Microsoft Exchange Server protection, ESET Mail Security also includes functionality to ensure the protection of the server itself (real-time file system protection, network protection, web-access protection and email client protection).

You can remotely manage ESET Mail Security in larger networks with the help of ESET PROTECT. Also, ESET Mail Security enables you to use it with third-party Remote monitoring and management (RMM) tools.

Key Features

The following table provides a list of features that are available in the ESET Mail Security.

True 64-bit product core	Adding higher performance and stability to the product core components.
Anti-Malware	An award-winning and innovative defense against malware. This leading-edge technology prevents from attacks and eliminates all types of threats, including viruses, ransomware, rootkits, worms and spyware with cloud-powered scanning for even better detection rates. With a small footprint, it is light on the system resources not compromising its performance. It uses layered security model. Each layer, or a phase, has a number of core technologies. Pre-execution phase has technologies such as UEFI Scanner, Network Attack Protection, Reputation & Cache, In-product Sandbox, DNA Detections. Execution phase technologies are Exploit Blocker, Ransomware Shield, Advanced Memory Scanner and Script Scanner (AMSI), and Post-execution phase uses Botnet Protection, Cloud Malware Protection System and Sandboxing. This feature-rich set of core technologies provides an unrivaled level of protection.
Antispam	Antispam is an essential component for any mail server. ESET Mail Security uses state-of-the-art Antispam engine that prevents from spam and phishing attempts with very high catch rates. ESET Mail Security has won consecutively spam filtering test by Virus Bulletin, a leading security testing authority, and received the VBSpam+ certification for a number years. Antispam engine have achieved a result of 99.99% spam catch rate with zero false positives making it industry-leading technology in spam protection. ESET Mail Security Antispam incorporates multiple technologies (RBL and DNSBL, Fingerprinting, Reputation checking, Content analysis, Rules, manual whitelisting/blacklisting, Backscatter protection and message validation using SPF and DKIM) to maximize detection. ESET Mail Security Antispam is cloud based and most of the cloud databases are located in ESET data centers. Antispam cloud services allow for prompt data updates which provides quicker reaction time in case of an emergence of new spam.

Anti-Phishing protection	A feature which prevents users from accessing web pages known for phishing. Email messages may contain links which lead to phishing web pages and ESET Mail Security uses sophisticated parser that searches message body and subject of incoming email messages to identify such links (URL's). The links are compared against phishing database.
Rules	The rules enable administrators to filter unwanted emails and attachments based on the company's policy. Attachments such as executables, multimedia files, password-protected archives, etc. Different actions can be performed with filtered email messages and their attachments, such as quarantine, deleting, sending notifications or logging into events.
Export to syslog server (Arcsight)	Allows for the contents of Mail server protection log to be duplicated to syslog server in Common Event Format (CEF) for use with log management solutions such as Micro Focus ArcSight. Events can be fed via SmartConnector to ArcSight, or exported to files. This provides for a convenient way of centralized monitoring and management of security events. You can benefit from this feature especially if you have a complex infrastructure with a large number of Microsoft Exchange Servers with ESET Mail Security solution.
Microsoft 365 mailbox scan	For businesses who use hybrid Exchange environment, adds the capability to scan mailboxes in the cloud.
ESET LiveGuard Advanced	ESET Cloud-based service. When ESET Mail Security evaluates an email message as suspicious, it is temporarily put it into the ESET LiveGuard Advanced quarantine. A suspicious email message is automatically submitted to ESET LiveGuard Advanced server for analysis by advanced malware detection engines. ESET Mail Security then receives a result of the analysis and suspicious email message is dealt with depending on the result.
Mail quarantine manager with web interface	Administrator can inspect quarantined objects and decide to delete or release them. This feature offers easy to use management tool. Quarantine web interface allows remote management of the content. It is possible to choose its administrators and/or delegate access. Additionally, users can view and manage their own spam after logging to the Mail Quarantine Web interface, having access to their messages only.
Mail quarantine reports	Quarantine reports are emails sent to selected users or administrators to provide information about all quarantined email messages. It also enables them to remotely manage quarantined content.
On-demand mailbox database scan	On-demand mailbox database scan gives administrators an option to scan selected mailboxes manually, or schedule the scan out of business hours. Mailbox database scanner uses the EWS (Exchange Web Services) API to connect to Microsoft Exchange Server via HTTP/HTTPS. Also, the scanner uses parallelism during scan process to improve the performance.
ESET Cluster	ESET Cluster allows for management of multiple servers from a single location. Similar to ESET File Security for Microsoft Windows Server, joining server nodes to a cluster makes management easier due to the ability to distribute one configuration across all cluster member nodes. ESET Cluster can also be used to synchronize greylisting databases and contents of the Local mail quarantine.
Processes exclusions	Excludes specific processes from Anti-Malware on-access scanning. Anti-Malware on-access scanning may cause conflicts in certain situations, for example during a backup process or live migrations of virtual machines. Processes exclusions help minimize the risk of such potential conflicts and improve the performance of excluded applications, which in turn has a positive effect on the overall performance and stability of the whole system. The exclusion of a process / application is an exclusion of its executable file (.exe).
eShell (ESET Shell)	eShell 2.0 is now available in ESET Mail Security. eShell is a command line interface that offers advanced users and administrators more comprehensive options to manage ESET server products.
ESET PROTECT	Better integration with ESET PROTECT including the ability to schedule various tasks. For more information, see ESET PROTECT Online Help.

Component-based installation	Installation can be customized to contain only selected parts of the product.
Sender Spoofing protection	A new feature that protects from a common practice of faking sender information of an email called sender spoofing. The email recipient is unlikely to distinguish a valid sender from a faked one, as the email usually appears as if it was sent from a legitimate source. You can enable and configure Sender Spoofing protection in Advanced setup or create custom rules.
DKIM Signing	ESET Mail Security provides a DKIM signing feature to further enhance security for outgoing email messages. Select client certificate and specify which email headers are signed with DKIM signature. You can configure DKIM signing for each domain separately for multiple domains.

What's new

New features and enhancements in ESET Mail Security:

- True 64-bit product core

- Office 365 mailbox scan

- Anti-Phishing mail protection

- Backscatter protection

- Mail quarantine administrator reports

- Mail server protection reports

- Synchronization of Local mail quaratine over ESET Cluster

- SMTP protection log

- ESET LiveGuard Advanced

- ESET Inspect support

- ESET RMM

- Export to syslog server (Arcsight)

- Network isolation

- Machine learning protection

- Audit logs

- micro Program Component Updates

- Sender Spoofing protection

- DKIM Signing

- Microsoft 365 mailbox scan

3

See detailed [changelogs](#) for ESET Mail Security.

Mail flow

The following diagram shows mail flow within Microsoft Exchange Server and ESET Mail Security. For details about using ESET LiveGuard Advanced with ESET Mail Security, see [ESET LiveGuard Advanced Online Help](#).
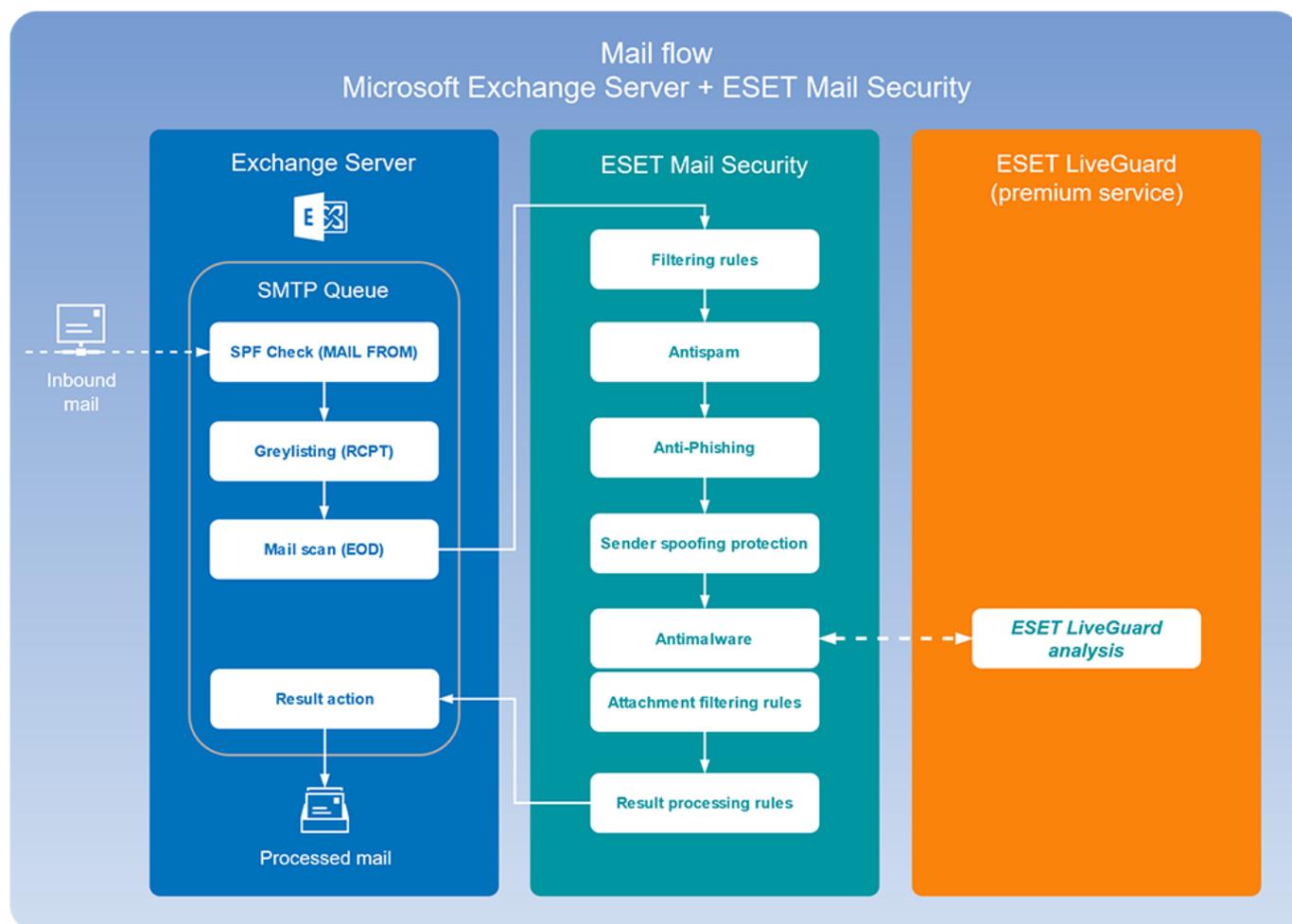
ESET Mail Security features and Exchange Server Roles

The following table lets you identify the features available for each Microsoft Exchange Server supported version and their roles. ESET Mail Security Installation Wizard checks your environment during the installation, and when installed, ESET Mail Security will display its features according to the detected version of your Exchange Server and its roles.

Exchange Server version and server role	Antispam protection	Anti-Phishing protection	Rules	Mail transport protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Mailbox database protection
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	⏴	⏴
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (Hub)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	⏴

Exchange Server version and server role	Antispam protection	Anti-Phishing protection	Rules	Mail transport protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Mailbox database protection
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (Mailbox)	⬚	✓	✓	⬚	✓	✓
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚	⬚
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚
Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚	⬚
Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚
Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚	⬚
Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	⬚

Exchange server roles

Edge role vs Hub role

Both Edge Transport and Hub Transport Servers have Antispam features disabled by default. This is the desired configuration in an Exchange organization with an Edge Transport server. We recommend that you have the Edge Transport server running ESET Mail Security Antispam configured to filter messages before they are routed into the Exchange organization.

The Edge role is the preferred location for Antispam scanning because it enables ESET Mail Security to reject spam early in the process without unnecessarily loading network layers. In this configuration, incoming messages are filtered by ESET Mail Security on the Edge Transport server, so they can safely be moved to the Hub Transport server without further filtering.

Suppose your organization does not use an Edge Transport server and only has a Hub Transport server. In that case, we recommend enabling Antispam features on the Hub Transport server that receives inbound messages from the internet via SMTP.

> **i** Due to the technical restrictions of Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 and later, ESET Mail Security does not support Microsoft Exchange Server deployment with the Client Access Server (CAS) role only (standalone Client Access Server).

Protection modules

The core functionality of ESET Mail Security include the following protection modules:

⌃ Antivirus

Antivirus protection is one of the basic functions of ESET Mail Security. Antivirus protection guards against malicious system attacks by controlling file, email and internet communication. If a threat with malicious code is detected, the Antivirus module can eliminate it by blocking it and then cleaning it, deleting it, or moving it to Quarantine.

⌃ Antispam

Antispam protection incorporates multiple technologies (RBL, DNSBL, Fingerprinting, Reputation checking, Content analysis, Rules, Manual whitelisting/blacklisting, etc.) to maximize detection of email threats. ESET Mail Security Antispam is cloud-based, and most cloud databases are in ESET data centers. Antispam cloud services enable prompt data updates, which provides quicker reaction time In case of the emergence of new spam. It also enables incorrect or false data to be removed from ESET blacklists. Whenever possible, communication with Antispam cloud services is done over a proprietary protocol on port 53535. If it is impossible to communicate through ESET's protocol, DNS services are used instead (port 53). However, using DNS is not as effective because it requires multiple requests to be sent during the spam classification process of a single email message.

> ℹ We recommend opening TCP/UDP port 53535 for the IP addresses listed in this Knowledgebase article. This port is used by ESET Mail Security to send requests.

Normally, no email messages or their parts are sent during the spam classification process. However, suppose ESET LiveGrid® is enabled, and you have explicitly allowed samples to be submitted for analysis. In that case, only messages marked as spam (or most likely spam) may be sent to help with thorough analysis and cloud database enhancement.

If you want to report spam false positive or negative classification, see our Knowledgebase article for details. In addition, ESET Mail Security can also use Greylisting method (disabled by default) of spam filtering.

⌃ Anti-Phishing

ESET Mail Security includes anti-phishing protection, which prevents users from accessing web pages known for phishing. In the case of email messages that may contain links that lead to phishing web pages, ESET Mail Security uses a sophisticated parser that searches the message body and the subject of incoming email messages to identify such links (URLs). The links are compared against the phishing database, and rules with condition Message body are evaluated.

⌃ Rules

The availability of rules for Mailbox database protection, On-demand mailbox database scan and Mail transport protection on your system depends on which Microsoft Exchange Server version is installed on the server with ESET Mail Security.

Rules enable you to manually define email filtering conditions and actions to take with filtered emails. There are different sets of conditions and actions. You can create individual rules that may also be combined. If one rule uses multiple conditions, the conditions will be linked using the logical operator AND. Consequently, the rule will be executed only if all its conditions are met. If multiple rules are created, the logical operator OR will be applied, meaning the program will run the first rule for which the conditions are met.

The first technique used in the scanning sequence is greylisting if enabled. Consequent procedures will always execute the following techniques: protection based on user-defined rules, followed by an antivirus scan and, lastly, an antispam scan.

Multilayered security

ESET Mail Security provides complex protection on different levels:

- Mailbox database protection

- Mail transport protection

- On-demand mailbox database scan

- [Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan](#)

> ℹ️ For comprehensive view, see [matrix](#) of ESET Mail Security features and Microsoft Exchange Server versions and their roles.

Mailbox database protection

The mailbox scanning process is triggered and controlled by the Microsoft Exchange Server. Emails in the Microsoft Exchange Server store database are scanned continuously. Depending on the version of Microsoft Exchange Server, the VSAPI interface version and the user-defined settings, the scanning process can be triggered in any of the following situations:

- When the user accesses email, for example, in an email client (email is always scanned with the latest detection engine).

- In the background, when use of the Microsoft Exchange Server is low.

- Proactively (based on the Microsoft Exchange Server's inner algorithm).

> ℹ️ Mailbox database protection is unavailable for Microsoft Exchange Server 2013, 2016 and 2019.

Mailbox database protection is available for the following systems:

Exchange Server version and server role	Antispam protection	Anti-Phishing protection	Rules	Mail transport protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Mailbox database protection
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (Mailbox)	?	✓	✓	?	✓	✓
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

This type of scanning can be performed on a single server installation with multiple Exchange Server roles on one computer (as long as it includes the Mailbox or Back-End role).

Mail transport protection

SMTP server-level filtering is secured by a specialized plugin. In Microsoft Exchange Server 2010, the plugin is registered as a transport agent on the Edge or the Hub roles of the Microsoft Exchange Server.

SMTP server-level filtering by a transport agent provides protection in the form of Antivirus, Antispam and user-defined rules. As opposed to VSAPI filtering, SMTP server-level filtering is performed before the scanned email arrives in the Microsoft Exchange Server mailbox.

Formerly known as Message filtering on the SMTP server level. The transport agent provides this protection and is only available for Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 or later versions operating in the Edge Transport Server or Hub Transport Server role. This type of scanning can be performed on a single server installation with multiple Exchange Server roles on one computer (as long as it has one of mentioned server roles).

Mail transport protection is available for the following systems:

Exchange Server version and server role	Antispam protection	Anti-Phishing protection	Rules	Mail transport protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Mailbox database protection
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 (Edge)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗

On-demand mailbox database scan

Enable you to execute or schedule an Exchange mailbox database scan. This feature is only available for Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 or later versions operating in the Mailbox server or Hub Transport role. This also applies to a single server installation with multiple Exchange Server roles on one computer (as long as it has one of the mentioned server roles).

On-demand mailbox database scan is available for the following systems:

Exchange Server version and server role	Antispam protection	Anti-Phishing protection	Rules	Mail transport protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Mailbox database protection
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (Hub)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 (Mailbox)	✗	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (multiple roles)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 (Mailbox)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗

Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan

ESET Mail Security provides scanning functionality for Microsoft 365 hybrid environments. It is available and visible in ESET Mail Security only if you have a hybrid Exchange environment (on-premises and cloud). Both routing scenarios are supported through **Exchange Online** or an **on-premises** organization. For more details, see Transport routing in Exchange hybrid deployments.

To activate this feature, register ESET Mail Security scanner.

You can scan Microsoft 365 remote mailboxes and Public folders the same way you would with a traditional On-demand mailbox database scan.

Running a full email database scan in a large environment can result in undesired system loads. To avoid this issue, run a scan on specific databases or mailboxes. To further minimize system impact, use the time filter at the top of the window. For example, instead of using **Scan all messages**, you can select **Scan messages modified within last week**.

We recommend that you configure Microsoft 365. Press the **F5** key and click **Server** > **On-demand mailbox database scan**. Also, see the Database scan account details.

To see the Office 365 mailbox scan activity, check **Log files** > **Mailbox database scan**.

System requirements

Supported Operating Systems:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2022 (Server Core and Desktop Experience)

- Microsoft Windows Server 2019 (Server Core and Desktop Experience)

- Microsoft Windows Server 2016

- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2

- Microsoft Windows Server 2012

> ⚠️ Support for Azure Code Signing must be installed on all Windows operating systems to install or upgrade ESET products released after July 2023. More information.

Supported Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

- Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 up to CU13

- Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 up to CU23

- Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 up to CU23 (CU1 and CU4 are not supported)

- Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 SP1, SP2, SP3 up to RU32

> ℹ️ Standalone Client Access Server (CAS) role is not supported, see Exchange server roles for more details. We recommend that you refer to ESET Mail Security features and Exchange Server Roles to identify what features are available for each supported version of Microsoft Exchange Server and their roles.

Minimum hardware requirements:

Component	Requirement
Processor	Intel or AMD single core x64
Memory	256 MB of free memory
Hard drive	700 MB of free disk space
Screen resolution	800 x 600 pixels or higher

ESET Mail Security has the same recommended hardware requirements that apply to Microsoft Exchange Server. See the following Microsoft Technical Articles for details:

Microsoft Exchange Server 2010

Microsoft Exchange Server 2013

Microsoft Exchange Server 2016

> ℹ️ We strongly recommend installing the latest Service Pack for your Microsoft Server operating system and application before installing the ESET security product. We recommend installing the latest Windows updates and hotfixes whenever available.

Preparing for installation

There are a few steps we recommend that you take in preparation for product installation:

- After purchasing ESET Mail Security, download the .msi installation package from ESET's website.

- Ensure that the server you plan to install ESET Mail Security meets system requirements.

- Log in to the server using an Administrator account.

- If you are going to do an upgrade from an existing installation of ESET Mail Security, we recommend that you backup its current configuration using the Export settings feature.

- Remove /uninstall any third-party antivirus software from your system, if applicable. We recommend that you use the ESET AV Remover. See this Knowledgebase article for a list of third-party antivirus software that can be removed using the ESET AV Remover.

- If you are installing ESET Mail Security on Windows Server 2016, Microsoft recommends uninstalling Windows Defender (Microsoft Defender Antivirus) Features and withdrawing from Windows Defender ATP enrollment to prevent problems caused by having multiple antivirus products installed on a machine.

- If you are installing ESET Mail Security on Windows Server 2019 or Windows Server 2022, Microsoft recommends disabling Microsoft Defender Antivirus manually to prevent problems caused by having multiple antivirus products installed on a machine.

> **ⅰ** If **Windows Defender Features** are present on your Windows Server 2016, 2019 or 2022 during installation of ESET Mail Security, these features are turned off by ESET Mail Security to prevent collisions of real-time protection between multiple antivirus products. Also, Windows Defender Features are turned off by ESET Mail Security with every system start-up / restart.
> There is an exception to this — if you are doing a component installation without **Real-time file system protection** component, Windows Defender Features on Windows Server 2016 are not being turned off.

- For comprehensive view, see matrix of ESET Mail Security features and Microsoft Exchange Server versions and their roles.

- You can check the number of mailboxes by running the Mailbox Count tool, see our Knowledgebase article for details. After your ESET Mail Security is installed, it will display current mailbox count at the bottom of the Monitoring window.

You can run ESET Mail Security installer in two installation modes:

- Main program window - The recommended installation is with the Installation Wizard.

- Silent/Unattended installation - In addition to the Installation Wizard, you can install ESET Mail Security silently via command line.

- Upgrading to the latest version - If you use an earlier ESET Mail Security version, you can choose a suitable upgrade method.

After you have successfully installed or upgraded your ESET Mail Security, further activities are:

Product activation

The available activation scenarios in the activation window may vary depending on the country and the means of distribution.

Post-installation tasks

See the list of recommended tasks you can perform after a successful installation of ESET Mail Security.

Configuring general settings

You can fine-tune your ESET Mail Security by modifying the advanced settings for each feature.

ESET Mail Security installation steps

This is a typical main program window Installation Wizard. Double-click the .msi package and follow the steps to install ESET Mail Security:

1. Click **Next** to continue or click **Cancel** if you want to quit the installation.

2. The Installation Wizard runs in a language that is specified as **Home location** of a **Region** > **Location** setting of your operating system (or **Current location** of a **Region and Language** > **Location** setting in older systems). Use the drop-down menu to select **Product language** in which your ESET Mail Security will be installed. Selected language for ESET Mail Security is independent of the language you see in the Installation Wizard.
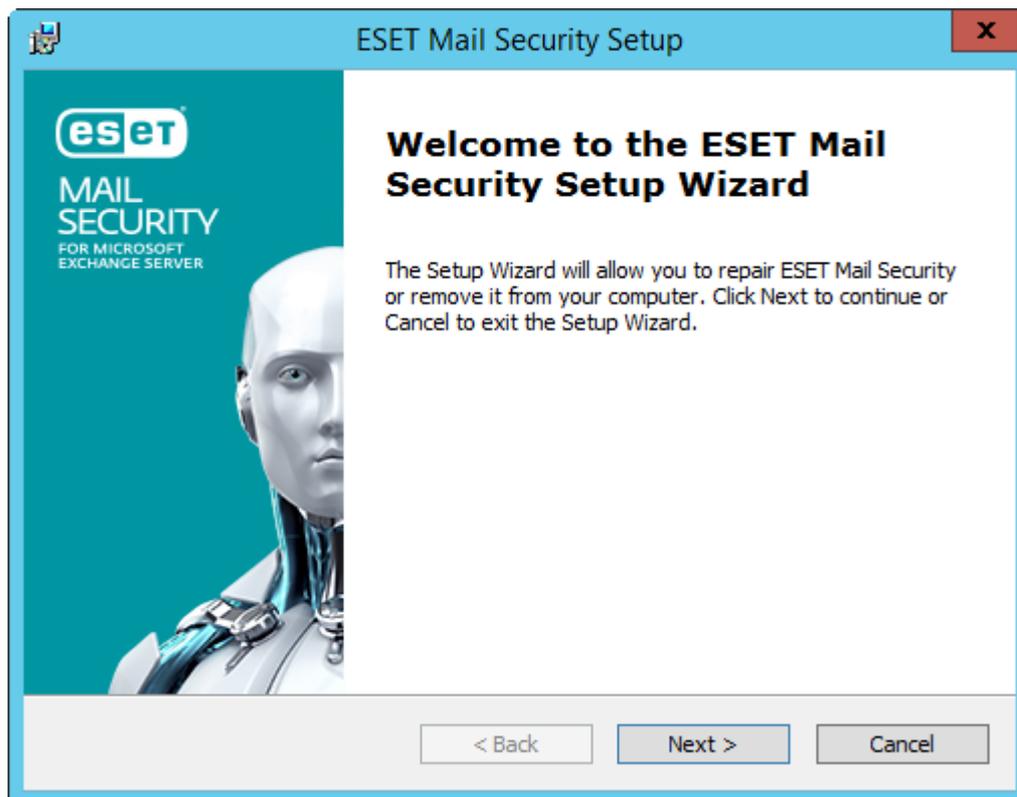
3. Click **Next**, and the End User License Agreement will be displayed. After acknowledging your acceptance of the End User License Agreement and Privacy Policy, click **Next**.
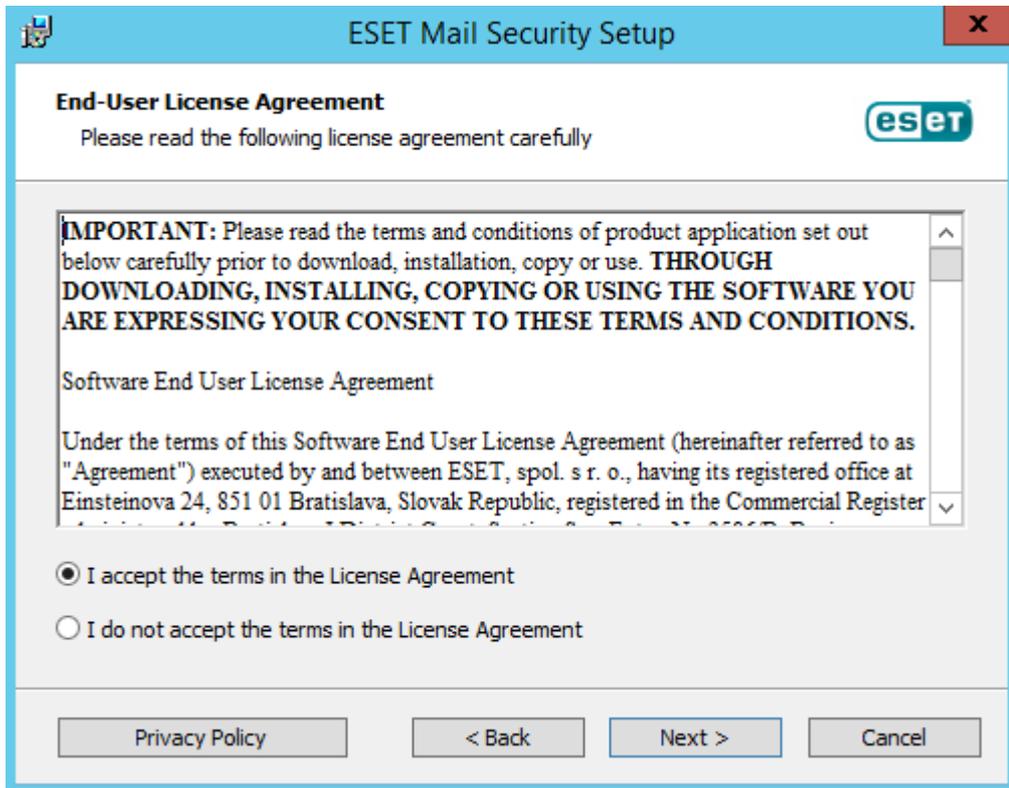
4. Choose one of available installation types (availability depend on your operating system):

Complete

This installs all ESET Mail Security features.

> **i** Installer contains only essential modules; all other modules are downloaded during the initial module update after the product activation.

> **i** If you are planning to use Local quarantine for email messages and do not want to have quarantined message files stored on your C: drive, change the path of **Data folder** to your preferred drive and location. However, keep in mind that all ESET Mail Security data files will be stored in this location.
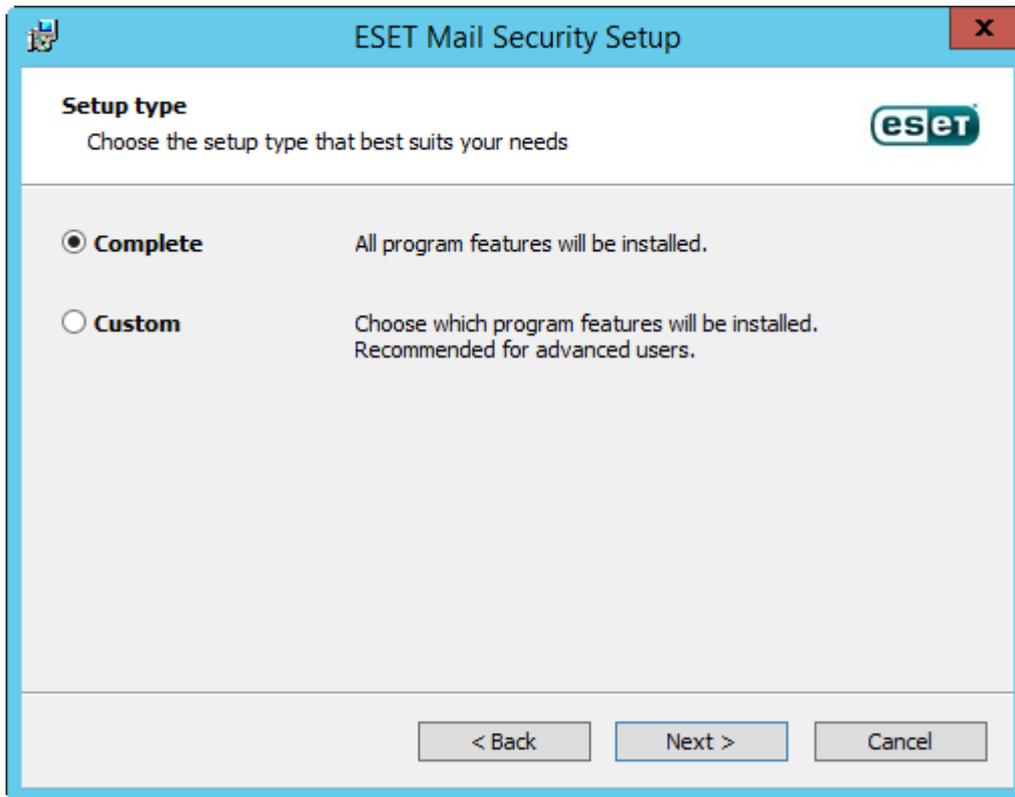
Custom

Lets you choose which features of ESET Mail Security will be installed on your system. A list of product modules and features will be displayed before the installation starts. It is useful when you want to customize ESET Mail Security with only the necessary components.
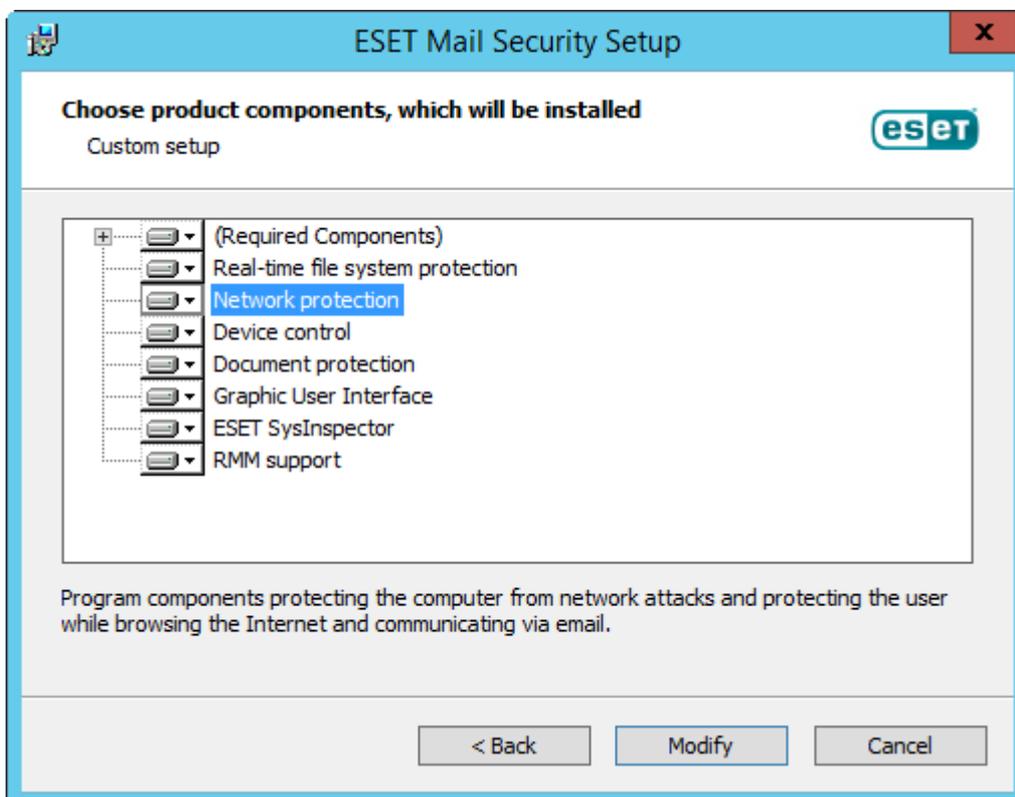
5. You are prompted to select the location where you will install ESET Mail Security. By default, the program installs in *C:\Program Files\ESET\ESET Mail Security*. Click **Browse** to change this location (not recommended).
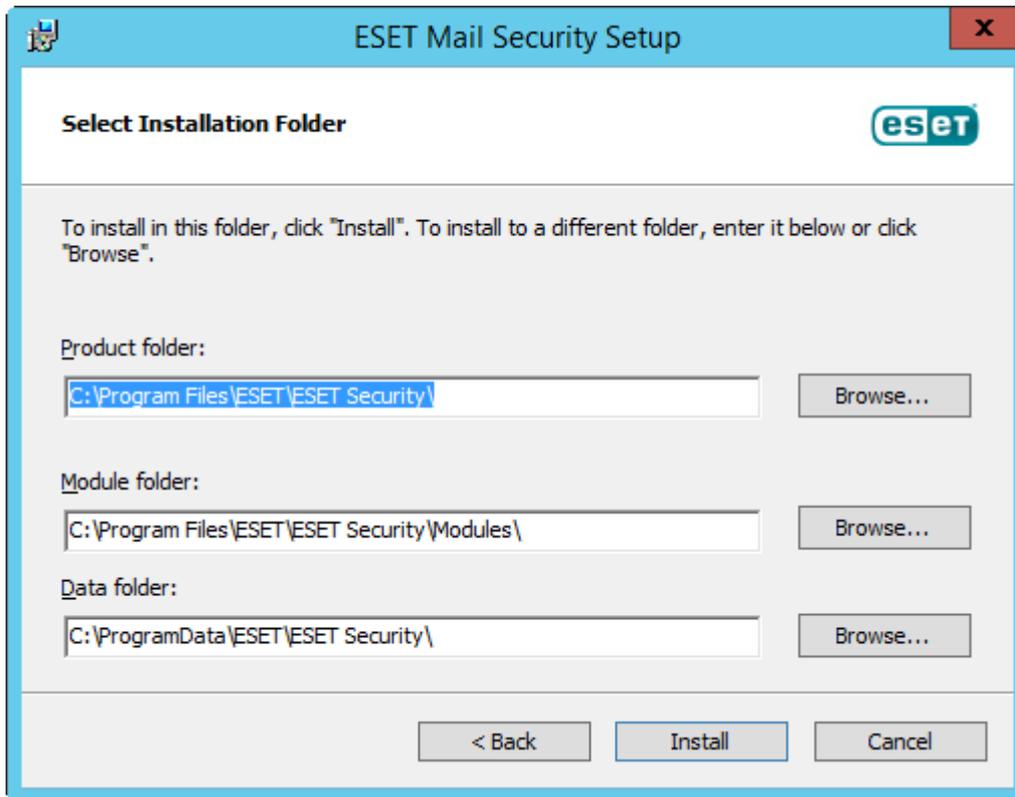
6. Click **Install** to begin the installation. After the installation, you are prompted to [activate](#) ESET Mail Security.

Export settings or remove installation

You can export and save settings or remove the installation. To do so, either run the *.msi* installer package you used during the initial installation or go to **Programs and Features** (accessible from the Windows Control Panel), right-click ESET Mail Security and select **Change**.

You can **Export** your ESET Mail Security settings or **Remove** (uninstall) the ESET Mail Security completely.
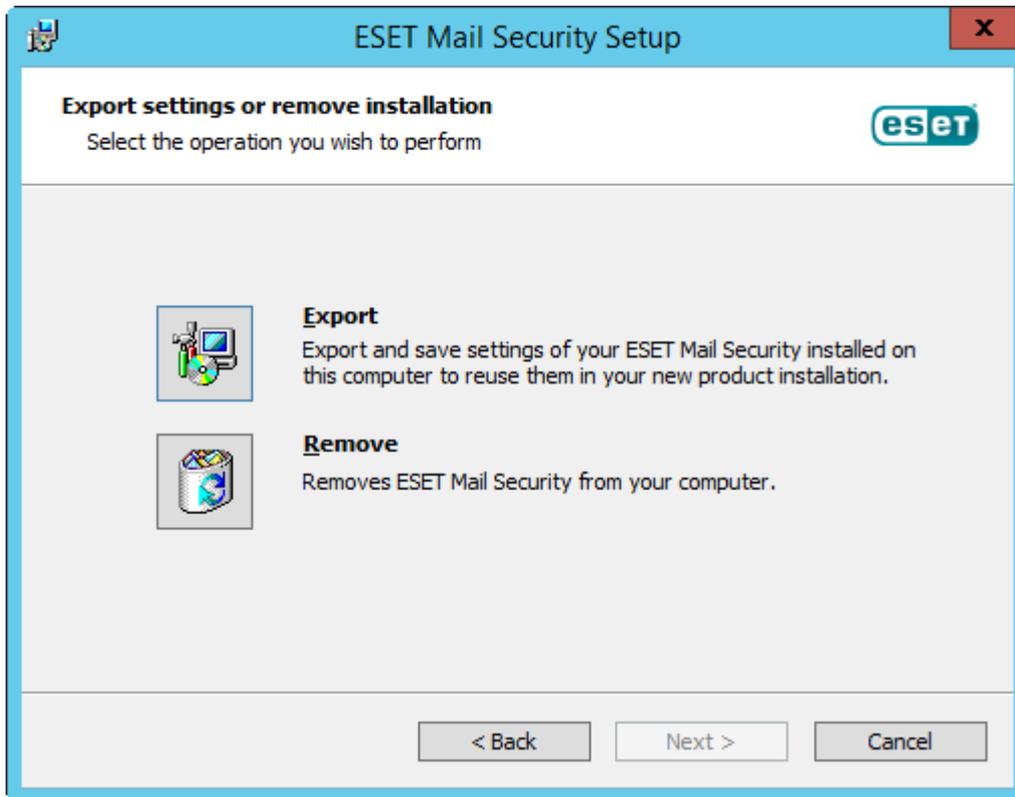
Initial modules update

The installer contains only essential modules, which reduces network traffic related to the size of the installer and saves resources. After the product activation, all other modules will download during the initial module update. The main advantage is a significantly smaller installer, and ESET Mail Security downloads only the latest application modules when you activate the product.

The minimal module installer contains the following modules:

- Loaders

- Anti-Stealth support

- Direct Cloud communication

- Translation support

- Configuration

- SSL

After the product activation, you will see the **Initializing protection** status, which notifies you about the features initializing.
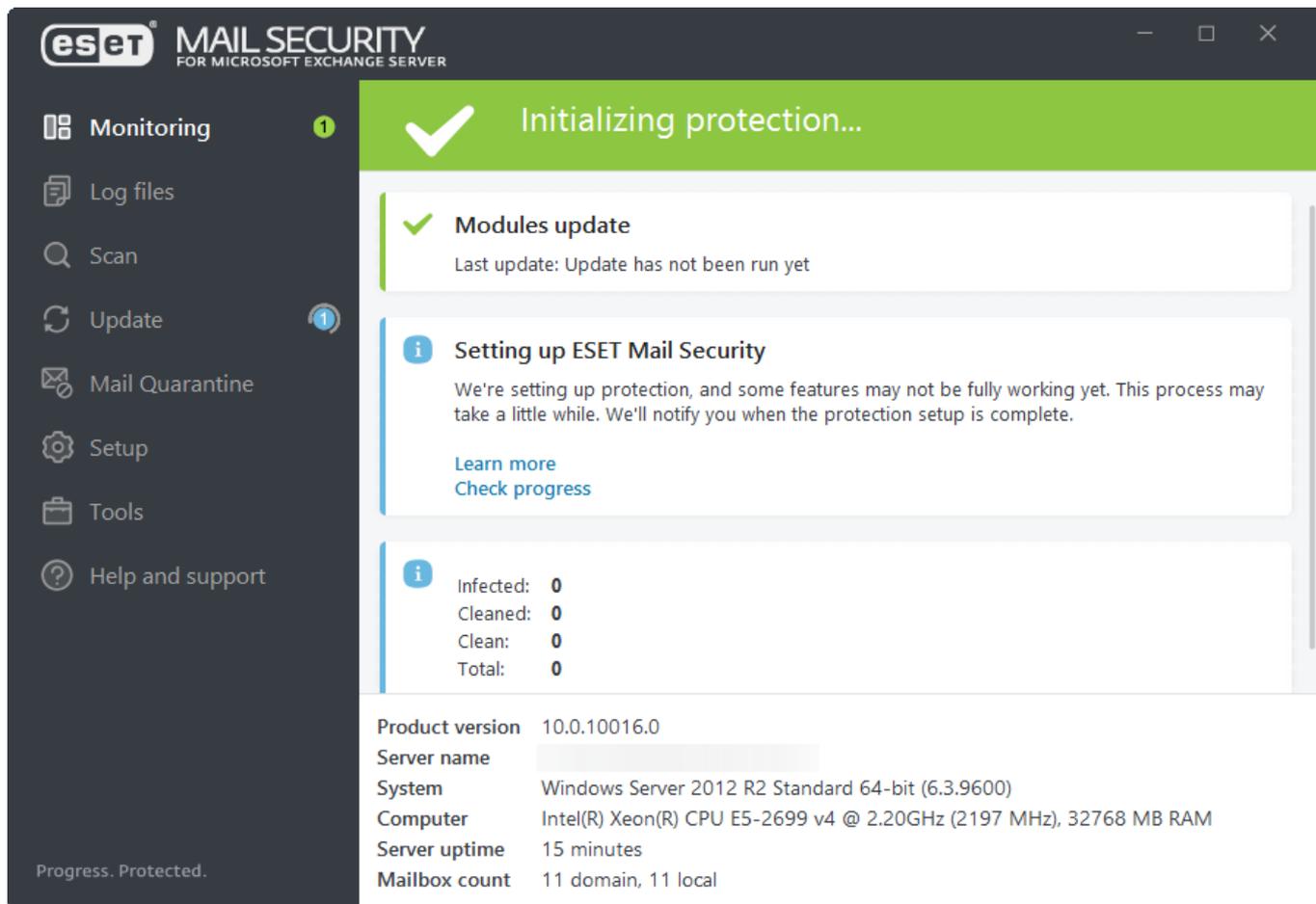
> If you experience problems downloading the modules (for example, no network connection, firewall or proxy settings), a warning application status **Attention required** displays.
> ⚠ Click **Update** > **Check for updates** in the main program window to start the updating process again.
> After several unsuccessful attempts, a red application status **Protection setup failed** displays. If you cannot update the modules, [download](#) the full ESET Mail Security *.msi* installer.

If your server does not have an internet connection and needs updates, use the following methods to download update module files from ESET update servers:

- [Updating from the Mirror](#)

- [Using Mirror Tool](#)

Silent / Unattended installation

Run the following command to complete installation via command line: `msiexec /i <packagename> /qn /l*xv msi.log`

Use the Windows Event Viewer to check the **Application Log** (look for records from Source: MsiInstaller) to ensure you have a successful installation or review any installation issues.

> ✓ **Full installation** on a 64-bit system:
> ```
> msiexec /i emsx_nt64.msi /qn /l*xv msi.log ADDLOCAL=NetworkProtection,RealtimeProtection,^
> DeviceControl,DocumentProtection,Cluster,GraphicUserInterface,SysInspector,SysRescue,Rmm,eula
> ```

When the installation finishes, ESET GUI starts and [Windows notification area icon](#) is displayed in the Windows

notification area.

> ✓ Installation of the product in **specified language** (for example, German):
> `msiexec /i emsx_nt64.msi /qn ADDLOCAL=NetworkProtection,RealtimeProtection,^`
> `DeviceControl,DocumentProtection,Cluster,GraphicUserInterface,^`
> `SysInspector,SysRescue,Rmm,eula PRODUCT_LANG=1031 PRODUCT_LANG_CODE=de-de`
> See **Language parameters** in the Command line installation topic for further details and to view the language code list.

> ⚠ When specifying values for `REINSTALL` parameter, you must list the rest of the features that are not used as values for `ADDLOCAL` or `REMOVE` parameter. It is necessary for the command line installation to run properly that you list all the features as values for `REINSTALL, ADDLOCAL` and `REMOVE` parameters. Adding or removing may not be successful if you do not use the `REINSTALL` parameter.
> See the Command line installation section for the complete list of features.

> ✓ **Complete removal** (uninstallation) from a 64-bit system:
> `msiexec /x emsx_nt64.msi /qn /l*xv msi.log`

> ℹ Your server restarts automatically after a successful uninstallation.

Command line installation

The following settings are intended for use **only with the reduced**, basic and **none** level of the user interface. See documentation for the `msiexec` version used for the appropriate command line switches.

Supported parameters:

APPDIR=<path>

- path - Valid directory path

- Application installation directory

- For example: `emsx_nt64.msi /qn APPDIR=C:\ESET\ ADDLOCAL=DocumentProtection`

APPDATADIR=<path>

- path - Valid directory path

- Application Data installation directory

MODULEDIR=<path>

- path - Valid directory path

- Module installation directory

ADDLOCAL=<list>

- Component installation - list of non-mandatory features to be installed locally.

- Usage with ESET *.msi* packages: `emsx_nt64.msi /qn ADDLOCAL=<list>`

- For more information about the ADDLOCAL property see
https://docs.microsoft.com/en-gb/windows/desktop/Msi/addlocal

- The ADDLOCAL list is a comma-separated list of all feature that will be installed.

- When selecting a feature to be installed, the full path (all parent features) must be explicitly included in the list.

REMOVE=<list>

- Component installation - parent feature you do not want to have installed locally.

- Usage with ESET .msi packages: emsx_nt64.msi /qn REMOVE=<list>

- For more information about the REMOVE property see
https://docs.microsoft.com/en-gb/windows/desktop/Msi/remove

- The REMOVE list is a comma-separated list of parent features that will not be installed (or will be removed in case of existing installation).

- It is sufficient to specify parent feature only. There is no need to explicitly include every child feature to the list.

ADDEXCLUDE=<list>

- The ADDEXCLUDE list is a comma-separated list of all feature names not to be installed.

- When selecting a feature not to be installed, then the whole path (i.e., all its sub-features) and related invisible features must be explicitly included in the list.

- For example: emsx_nt64.msi /qn ADDEXCLUDE=<list>

> **i** ADDEXCLUDE cannot be used with ADDLOCAL

Feature Presence:

- **Mandatory** - The feature is always installed.

- **Optional** - The feature may be deselected for install.

- **Invisible** - Logical feature mandatory for other features to work properly.

List of ESET Mail Security features:

> **!** Names of all the features are case sensitive, for example RealtimeProtection is not equal to REALTIMEPROTECTION.

Feature Name	Feature Presence
SERVER	Mandatory
RealtimeProtection	Mandatory
MAILSERVER	Mandatory
WMIProvider	Mandatory

Feature Name	Feature Presence
HIPS	Mandatory
Updater	Mandatory
eShell	Mandatory
UpdateMirror	Mandatory
DeviceControl	Optional
DocumentProtection	Optional
WebAndEmail	Optional
ProtocolFiltering	Invisible
NetworkProtection	Optional
IdsAndBotnetProtection	Optional
Rmm	Optional
WebAccessProtection	Optional
EmailClientProtection	Optional
MailPlugins	Invisible
Cluster	Optional
_Base	
eula	
ShellExt	Optional
_FeaturesCore	
GraphicUserInterface	Optional
SysInspector	Optional
SysRescue	Optional
EnterpriseInspector	Optional

If you want to remove any of the following features, you need to remove the whole group by specifying every feature that belongs to the group. Otherwise, the feature will not be removed. Here are two groups (each line represents one group):

```
GraphicUserInterface,ShellExt

NetworkProtection,WebAccessProtection,IdsAndBotnetProtection,ProtocolFiltering,MailP
lugins,EmailClientProtection
```

> Exclude **NetworkProtection** section (including child features) from the installation using `REMOVE` parameter and specifying only parent feature:
> ```
> msiexec /i emsx_nt64.msi /qn ADDLOCAL=ALL REMOVE=NetworkProtection
> ```
>
> ✔ Alternatively, you can use `ADDEXCLUDE` parameter, but you must also specify all child features:
> ```
> msiexec /i emsx_nt64.msi /qn ADDEXCLUDE=NetworkProtection,WebAccessProtection,IdsAndBotnetProtection,^
> ProtocolFiltering,MailPlugins,EmailClientProtection
> ```

If you want your ESET Mail Security to be automatically configured after the installation, you can specify basic configuration parameters within the installation command.

> ✔ Install ESET Mail Security and disable ESET LiveGrid®:
> `msiexec /i emsx_nt64.msi /qn /l*xv msi.log CFG_LIVEGRID_ENABLED=0`

List of all configuration properties:

Switch	Value
`CFG_POTENTIALLYUNWANTED_ENABLED=1/0`	0 - Disabled, 1 - Enabled
`CFG_LIVEGRID_ENABLED=1/0`	0 - Disabled, 1 - Enabled
`FIRSTSCAN_ENABLE=1/0`	0 - Disable, 1 - Enable
`CFG_PROXY_ENABLED=0/1`	0 - Disabled, 1 - Enabled
`CFG_PROXY_ADDRESS=<ip>`	Proxy IP address
`CFG_PROXY_PORT=<port>`	Proxy port number
`CFG_PROXY_USERNAME=<user>`	Username for authentication
`CFG_PROXY_PASSWORD=<pass>`	Password for authentication

Language parameters: Product language (you must specify both parameters)

Switch	Value
`PRODUCT_LANG=`	LCID Decimal (Locale ID), for example 1033 for English - United States, see the list of language codes.
`PRODUCT_LANG_CODE=`	LCID String (Language Culture Name) in lowercase, for example en-us for English - United States, see the list of language codes.

Product activation

You are prompted to activate your product when the installation is complete.

You can use any of the following methods to activate ESET Mail Security:

A purchased License Key

Type or copy/paste your ESET-issued License Key into the **License Key** field and click **Continue**. Type the License Key exactly as it is, including the hyphens. If you copy/paste the license, ensure that you do not accidentally select additional space around the text.

ESET Business Account

Use this option if you are registered and have your ESET Business Account where your ESET Mail Security license has been imported.

An offline License file

This is an automatically generated file that is transferred to the ESET product. Your offline License file is generated from the license portal and is used in environments where the application cannot connect to the licensing authority.

Click **Activate later** with ESET PROTECT if your computer is a member of a managed network, and your administrator will perform remote activation via ESET PROTECT. You can also use this option if you want to activate this client later.

Select **Help and support** > **Change license** in the main program window to manage your license information. You will see the public license ID used to identify your product and license. Your Username, under which the computer is registered, is stored in the About section, and you can view it by right-clicking the Windows notification area icon.

After successfully activating ESET Mail Security, the main program window opens and displays your current status on the Monitoring page. Some attention may be required initially; for example, you are asked if you want to be part of ESET LiveGrid®.

The main program window also displays notifications about other items, such as system updates (Windows Updates) or detection engine updates. When everything requiring attention is resolved, the monitoring status turns green and displays the status **You are protected**.

You can activate your product from the main menu under **Help and support** > **Activate Product** or **Monitoring status** > **Product is not activated**.

> **i** ESET PROTECT can silently activate client computers using licenses made available by the administrator.

Activation successful

ESET Mail Security is now activated. From now on, ESET Mail Security will receive regular updates identifying the latest threats and keeping your computer safe.

Click **Done** to finish product activation.

Activation failure

In the case activation of ESET Mail Security was not successful, possible scenarios are:

- License Key already in use

- Invalid License Key—product activation form error

- Missing or invalid information must be addressed

- Communication with the activation database failed—try again in 15 minutes

- Connection to ESET activation servers is unavailable or disabled

Ensure you entered the proper **License Key** or attached an **Offline License** and attempt to activate again.

If you are unable to activate, see the activation troubleshooting wizard.

License

You are prompted to select a license for ESET Mail Security that is associated with your account. Click **Continue** to proceed with activation.

Upgrade to the latest version

New versions of ESET Mail Security are issued to provide improvements or fix issues that cannot be resolved by automatic updates of program modules.

Upgrade methods:

- **Uninstall / Install** - Removing the earlier version before installing the new one. Download the latest version of ESET Mail Security. Export settings from your existing ESET Mail Security if you want to preserve configuration. Uninstall ESET Mail Security and restart the server. Perform a fresh installation with the installer you have downloaded. Import settings to load your configuration. We recommend this procedure if you have a single server running ESET Mail Security.

- **In-place** - An upgrade method without removing the existing version and installing the new ESET Mail Security over it.

> ⚠️ It is necessary that you have **no pending Windows Updates** on your server, as well as **no pending restart** due to Windows Updates or for any other reason. If you try performing in-place upgrade with a pending Windows Updates or restart, the existing version of ESET Mail Security may not be removed correctly. You will also experience problems if you decide to remove the old version of ESET Mail Security manually afterward.

> ℹ️ A server restart will be required during the upgrade of ESET Mail Security.

- Remote - For use in large network environments managed by ESET PROTECT. This is basically a clean upgrade method, but carried out remotely. It is useful if you have multiple servers running ESET Mail Security.

- ESET Cluster wizard - Can also be used as an upgrade method. We recommend this method for 2 or more servers with ESET Mail Security. This is basically an in-place upgrade method, but carried out via ESET Cluster. After the upgrade is completed, you can continue using ESET Cluster and take advantage of its features.

The following settings are preserved from previous versions of ESET Mail Security:

- General ESET Mail Security configuration.

Antispam protection settings:

- All settings that are identical in previous versions, any new settings will use defaults.

- Whitelist and blacklist entries.

> ℹ️ After you have upgraded your ESET Mail Security, we recommend you go through all the settings to ensure it is configured correctly and according to your needs.

Upgrading via ESET PROTECT

ESET PROTECT lets you upgrade multiple servers running an earlier ESET Mail Security version. This method has the advantage of upgrading many servers simultaneously while ensuring each ESET Mail Security is configured identically (if desired).

The procedure includes the following phases:

- **Upgrade the first server** manually by installing the latest ESET Mail Security version over your existing version to preserve your configuration, including rules and multiple whitelists/blacklists. This phase is performed locally on the server running ESET Mail Security.

- **Request configuration** of the newly upgraded ESET Mail Security to version 7.x and convert to policy in ESET PROTECT. The policy will be applied later to all upgraded servers. This phase and the following phases are performed remotely using ESET PROTECT.

- **Run the Software Uninstall task** on all servers running the old ESET Mail Security version.

- **Run the Software Install task** on all servers where you want the latest ESET Mail Security version.

- **Assign a configuration policy** to all servers running the latest ESET Mail Security version.

Follow the instructions below to upgrade via ESET PROTECT

1. Log on to one of the servers running ESET Mail Security and upgrade it by downloading and installing the latest version over your existing version. Follow the regular installation steps. Your original ESET Mail Security configurations are preserved during the installation.

2. Open the ESET PROTECT **Web Console**, select a client computer from a Static or Dynamic group and click **Show Details**.

3. Select the Configuration tab and click the **Request configuration** button to collect your managed product's configurations. Be aware that this process takes a moment. When the latest configuration appears in the list, click **Security product** and choose **Open Configuration**.

4. Create a configuration policy by clicking the **Convert to policy** button. Type the **Name** for a new policy and click **Finish**.

5. Select **Client Tasks** and choose the Software Uninstall task. When creating the uninstall task, we recommend you restart the server after the uninstallation by selecting the check box **Automatically reboot when needed**. Once you create the task, add all desired target computers for uninstallation.

6. Make sure ESET Mail Security is uninstalled from all the targets.

7. Create a Software Install task to install the latest ESET Mail Security version to all desired targets.

8. **Assign the configuration policy** to all the servers running ESET Mail Security, ideally to a group.

Upgrading via ESET Cluster

Creating an ESET Cluster lets you upgrade multiple servers using earlier versions of ESET Mail Security. We recommend using the ESET Cluster method if you have 2 or more servers with ESET Mail Security in your environment. Another benefit of this upgrade method is that you can continue using the ESET Cluster in so the configuration of ESET Mail Security will be synchronized on all member nodes.

Follow the steps below to upgrade using this method:

1. Log on to one of the servers running ESET Mail Security and upgrade it by downloading and installing the latest version over your existing one. Follow the steps for regular installation. All of the original configuration

of your old ESET Mail Security will be preserved during the installation.

2. Run the ESET Cluster wizard and add cluster nodes (servers you want to upgrade ESET Mail Security on). If required, you can add other servers that do not run ESET Mail Security yet (an installation will be performed on these). We recommend that you to leave the default settings in place when specifying your Cluster name and install type (make sure Push license to nodes without activated product is selected).

3. Review the Nodes check log screen. It will list servers with earlier product versions and that the product will be reinstalled. ESET Mail Security will also be installed on any added servers where it is not currently installed.

Nodes check   ?

Node check log

```
[13:39:36] Node check started
[13:39:36] PING test:
[13:39:36] OK
[13:39:36] Administration share access test:
[13:39:36] OK
[13:39:36] Service manager access test:
[13:39:39] OK
[13:39:39] Checking installed product version and features:
[13:39:42]            -2003-SHAREPOINT_2: Older version of the
product detected. Product will be reinstalled.
[13:39:43]            -2003-CLEAN: Install will be performed.
[13:39:45] OK
[13:39:45]
[13:39:45] Warning: The product needs to be reinstalled on some
machines before creating the cluster. This may cause those
machines to be automatically restarted.
```

Check

< Previous   Next >   Cancel

4. The **Nodes install and cluster activation** screen will display installation progress. When installation is successfully completed, it should finish with results similar to these:

If your network or DNS is not configured correctly, you may receive the error message **Failed to obtain activation token from the server**. Try running the ESET Cluster wizard again. It will destroy the cluster and create a new one (without reinstalling the product) and activation should finish successfully this time. If the issue persists, check your network and DNS settings.

Installation in cluster environment

You can deploy ESET Mail Security in a cluster environment (for example, in a failover cluster). We recommend that you install ESET Mail Security on an active node and then redistribute the installation on passive node(s) using the ESET Cluster feature of ESET Mail Security. Apart from the installation, the ESET Cluster will serve as a replication of ESET Mail Security configuration to ensures consistency between cluster nodes necessary for correct operation.

Terminal Server

If you are installing ESET Mail Security on a Windows Server that acts as a Terminal Server, you may want to disable the ESET Mail Security GUI to prevent it from starting up every time a user logs in. See Disable GUI on Terminal Server for specific steps to disable the GUI.

Multiserver / DAG environment

ESET Mail Security supports for multiserver environments. If your infrastructure consists of multiple servers, for example Database availability group (DAG), you can install ESET Mail Security on each Exchange Server with Mailbox role.

The easiest way is to install ESET Mail Security all servers using ESET Cluster. Also, we recommend that you enable Use ESET Cluster to store all quarantined messages on one node in Mail Quarantine settings. If you are planing on using Greylisting, enable Synchronize greylisting databases across the ESET cluster.

Getting started

The following topics will help you get started with ESET Mail Security.

Monitoring

This is a quick overview of ESET Mail Security's current status, where you can easily see if any issues require your attention.

Managed via ESET PROTECT

You can use ESET PROTECT to remotely manage ESET Mail Security.The following part should help you get started with ESET Mail Security.

Post-installation tasks

Intended to help you with initial configuration.

Post-installation tasks

The following are recommended tasks that cover initial configuration of your ESET Mail Security.

Topic	Description
Product Activation	Make sure your ESET Mail Security is activated. You can perform activation in several different ways.
Update	When the product is activated, the module update runs automatically. Check the update status to see if the update was successful.
Mail Quarantine manager	Get to know the Mail quarantine manager, accessible from the program's main program window. This feature enables you to manage quarantined messages such as spam, infected attachments containing malware, phishing messages and messages filtered out by rules. You can see details of each message and take action (release or delete).
Mail Quarantine Web interface	The Mail quarantine Web interface is an alternative to the Mail quarantine manager, enabling you to manage quarantined items remotely. The Mail quarantine Web interface also enables users (email recipients) to manage their quarantined messages. Users can be notified about newly quarantined content with Mail quarantine reports sent via email. We recommend that you configure the reports.
Mail Quarantine reports	Create a scheduled task to send Mail quarantine reports to yourself and to selected users to enable them to release (deliver) certain false positive messages and manage their quarantined content via the Mail quarantine Web interface (online viewer). Users can access the Web interface by clicking a link provided in the Mail quarantine reports and logging in using their domain credentials.
Antispam - Filtering and verification	Antispam is a sophisticated cloud-based functionality that prevents your users (email recipients) from receiving spam. We recommend that you use filtering and verification and add your local IP addresses to the Ignored IP list. IP addresses within your network infrastructure will then be ignored during classification. You can configure and manage the rest of the Approved, Blocked and Ignored lists to customize filtering and verification. You can also enable Greylisting if you decide to use this feature.

Topic	Description
Rules	A powerful feature that enables you to filter email messages based on defined conditions and actions. Use pre-defined rules (modify if required) or create new, customized rules to fit your needs. Rules can be configured for any protection layer (Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection or On-demand mailbox database scan).
Antivirus test	Verify that Antivirus protection works correctly.
Antispam test	Verify that Antispam protection works correctly.
Anti-Phishing test	Verify that Anti-Phishing protection works correctly.

Managed via ESET PROTECT

ESET PROTECT is an application that lets you manage ESET products in a networked environment from one central location. The ESET PROTECT task management system allows you to install ESET security solutions on remote computers and quickly respond to new problems and threats.

ESET PROTECT does not protect against malicious code on its own; it relies on the presence of ESET security solutions on each client.

ESET security solutions support networks that include multiple platform types. Your network can include a combination of current Microsoft, Linux-based, macOS and mobile operating systems.
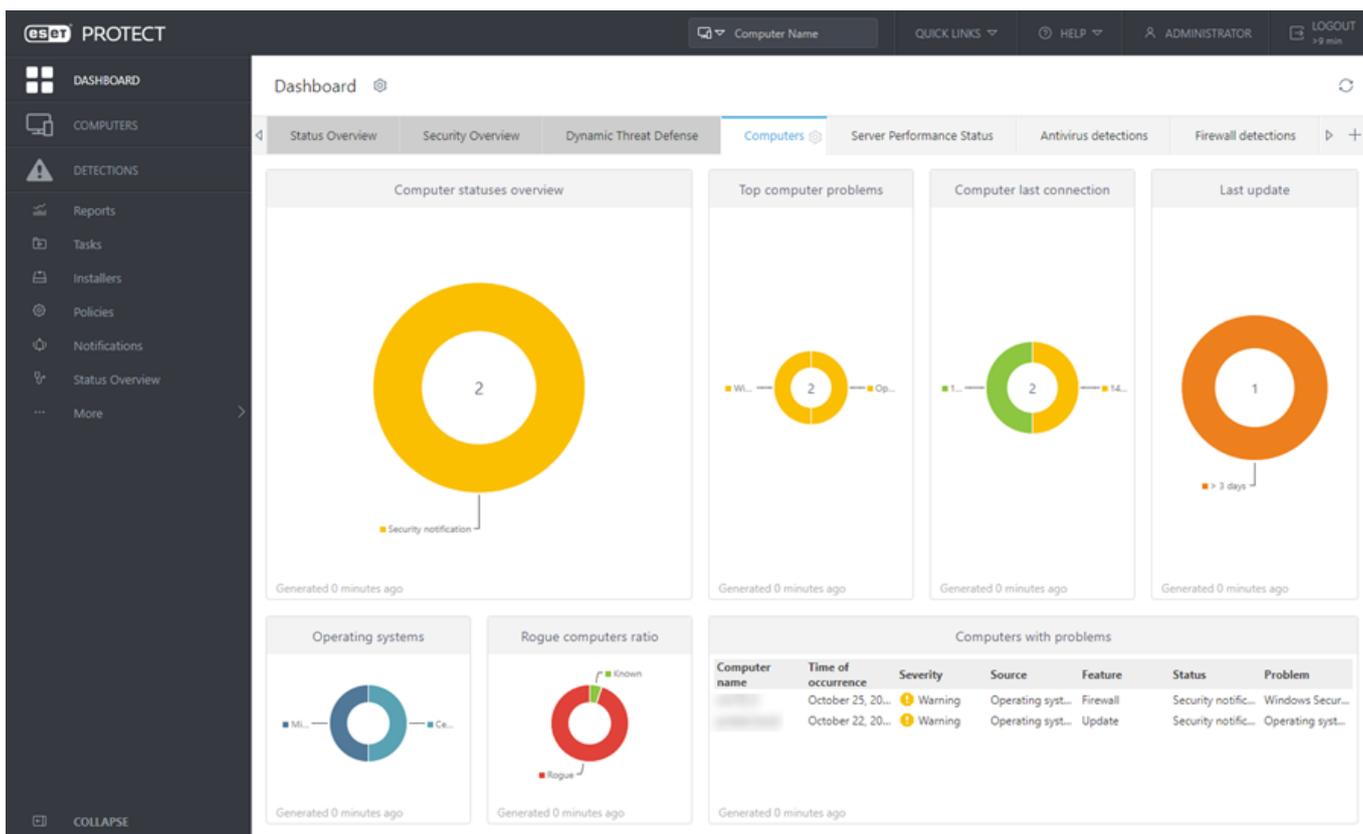
For more information, see ESET PROTECT Online Help.

Monitoring

The protection status shown in the **Monitoring** section informs you about the current protection level of your computer. A status summary about the operation of ESET Mail Security will be displayed in the primary window.

✓ The green **You are protected** status indicates that maximum protection is ensured.

⚠ The red icon indicates critical problems - maximum protection of your system is not ensured. The error message detail should give you a better understanding of the current status. If you are unable to solve a problem, search the ESET Knowledgebase. If you still need assistance, you can submit a support request. ESET Technical Support will respond quickly to your questions and help find a resolution. For a complete list of statuses, open **Advanced setup (F5)** > **Notifications** > Application statuses and click **Edit**.

❗ The orange icon indicates that your ESET product requires attention for a non-critical problem.

Modules that are working properly are assigned a green check. Modules that are not fully functional are assigned a red exclamation point or an orange notification icon. Additional information about the module is shown in the upper part of the window. A suggested solution for fixing the module is also displayed.

To change the status of an individual module, click Setup in the main menu and then click the desired module.

The Monitoring page also contains information about your system including:

- Product version - version number of ESET Mail Security

- Server Name - machine Hostname or FQDN

- System - operating system details

- Computer - hardware details

- Server uptime - shows how long the system is up and running, basically the opposite of downtime.

[Mailbox count](#)

ESET Mail Security detects the number of mailboxes and displays the count based on detection:

- **Domain** - count of all mailboxes in a specific domain to which the Exchange Server belongs. This count also applies to a DAG environment and its total number of mailboxes.

- **Local** - reflects the number of mailboxes in the Exchange Server with ESET Mail Security installed. If the server belongs to a DAG, this number is the number of mailboxes stored on the local Exchange Server out of the total Domain count.

If you cannot solve a problem using the suggested solutions, click **Help and support** to access the help files or search the [ESET Knowledgebase](#). If you still need assistance, you can [Submit support request](#). ESET Technical Support will respond quickly to your questions and help find a resolution.

Windows update available

The System updates window shows the list of available updates ready to be downloaded and installed. The update priority level is shown next to the name of the update. Right-click any update row and click **More information** to display a window with additional info:

System updates

Total number of available updates: 7

Name	Type
⚠ 2019-02 Security Monthly Quality Rollup for Windows Server 2012 R2 for x64-based Systems (KB4487000)	Critical
❗ 2018-12 Cumulative Security Update for Internet Explorer 11 for Windows Server 2012 R2 for x64-based systems (KB4...	Important
❗ Update for Microsoft Silverlight (KB4481252)	Important
❗ Windows Malicious Software Removal Tool x64 - February 2019 (KB890830)	Important
❗ 2019-02 Security and Quality Rollup for .NET Framework 3.5, 4.5.2, 4.6, 4.6.1, 4.6.2, 4.7, 4.7.1, 4.7.2 for Windows 8.1 a...	Important
ℹ Update for Windows Server 2012 R2 (KB4033428)	Recommended
ℹ Microsoft .NET Framework 4.7.2 for Windows Server 2012 R2 for x64 (KB4054566)	Recommended

Run system update **Cancel**

Click **Run system update** to open the **Windows Update** window and proceed with system updates.

Network isolation

ESET Mail Security provides you with an option to block the network connection of your server called network isolation. In some extreme scenarios, you may want to isolate a server from the network as a preventive measure. For example, if you find the server has been infected with malware or the machine has otherwise been compromised.

By activating the network isolation, all network traffic is blocked except the following:

- Connectivity to the Domain Controller remains

- ESET Mail Security is still able to communicate

- If present, ESET Management Agent and ESET Inspect Connector can communicate over the network

Activate and deactivate network isolation using eShell command or ESET PROTECT client task.

eShell

In interactive mode:

- Activate network isolation: `network advanced set status-isolation enable`
- Deactivate network isolation: `network advanced set status-isolation disable`

Alternatively, you can create and run a batch file using Batch / Script mode.

ESET PROTECT

- Activate network isolation via client task.

- Deactivate network isolation via client task.

When network isolation is activated, ESET Mail Security status changes to red with a message **Network access blocked**.

Using ESET Mail Security

This section contains a detailed description of the program's user interface and explains how to use ESET Mail Security.

The user interface allows you to access commonly used features quickly:

- Monitoring

- Log files

- Scan

- Update

- Mail quarantine

- Setup

- Tools

Scan

The On-demand scanner is an important part of ESET Mail Security. It is used to perform scans of files and folders on your computer. To ensure the security of your network, it is essential that computer scans are not just run when an infection is suspected but regularly as part of routine security measures.

We recommend that you perform regular (for example, once a month) in-depth scans of your system to detect viruses not detected by Real-time file system protection. This can occur if a threat is introduced when Real-time file system protection is disabled, the detection engine has not been updated, or if a file was not detected when it was first saved to the disk.

Select available On-demand scans for ESET Mail Security:

Mailbox database scan

Lets you run On-demand database scan. You can choose Public folders, Mail Servers and Mailboxes to scan. Also, you can use Scheduler to run the database scan at a specific time or at an event.

> **i** If you are running Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, 2010, 2013 or 2016 you can choose between Mailbox database protection and On-demand database scan, only one protection type can be active at a time. If you decide to use On-demand database scan you will need to disable integration of Mailbox database protection in Advanced setup under Server. Otherwise On-demand database scan will not be available.

Microsoft 365 mailbox scan

Enables you to scan remote mailboxes in Microsoft 365 hybrid environments.

Storage scan

Scans all shared folders on the local server. If Storage scan is not available, there are no shared folders on your server.

Scan your computer

Allows you to quickly launch a computer scan and clean infected files with no need for user intervention. The advantage of Scan your computer is that it is easy to operate and does not require detailed scanning configuration. Scan checks all files on local drives and automatically cleans or deletes detected infiltrations. The cleaning level is automatically set to the default value. For more detailed information on types of cleaning, see Cleaning.

> **i** We recommend that you run a computer scan at least once a month. Scanning can be configured as a scheduled task.

Custom scan

Custom scan is an optimal solution if you want to specify scanning parameters such as scan targets and scanning methods. The advantage of Custom scan is the ability to configure scan parameters in detail. Configurations can be saved to user-defined scan profiles, which can be useful if scanning is repeatedly performed using the same parameters.

Removable media scan

Similar to Smart scan - quickly launch a scan of removable media (such as CD/DVD/USB) that are connected to the computer. This may be useful when you connect a USB flash drive to a computer and want to scan its content for malware and other potential threats. This type of scan can also be initiated by clicking Custom scan and then selecting Removable media from the Scan targets drop-down menu and clicking Scan.

Hyper-V scan

This option is only visible in the menu if Hyper-V Manager is installed on the server that runs ESET Mail Security. Hyper-V scan allows for scanning of Virtual Machine (VM) disks on Microsoft Hyper-V Server without the need to have any "Agent" installed on the specific VM.

Repeat last scan

Repeats your last scan operation using exactly the same settings.

> ℹ Repeat last scan function is not available if On-demand database scan is present.
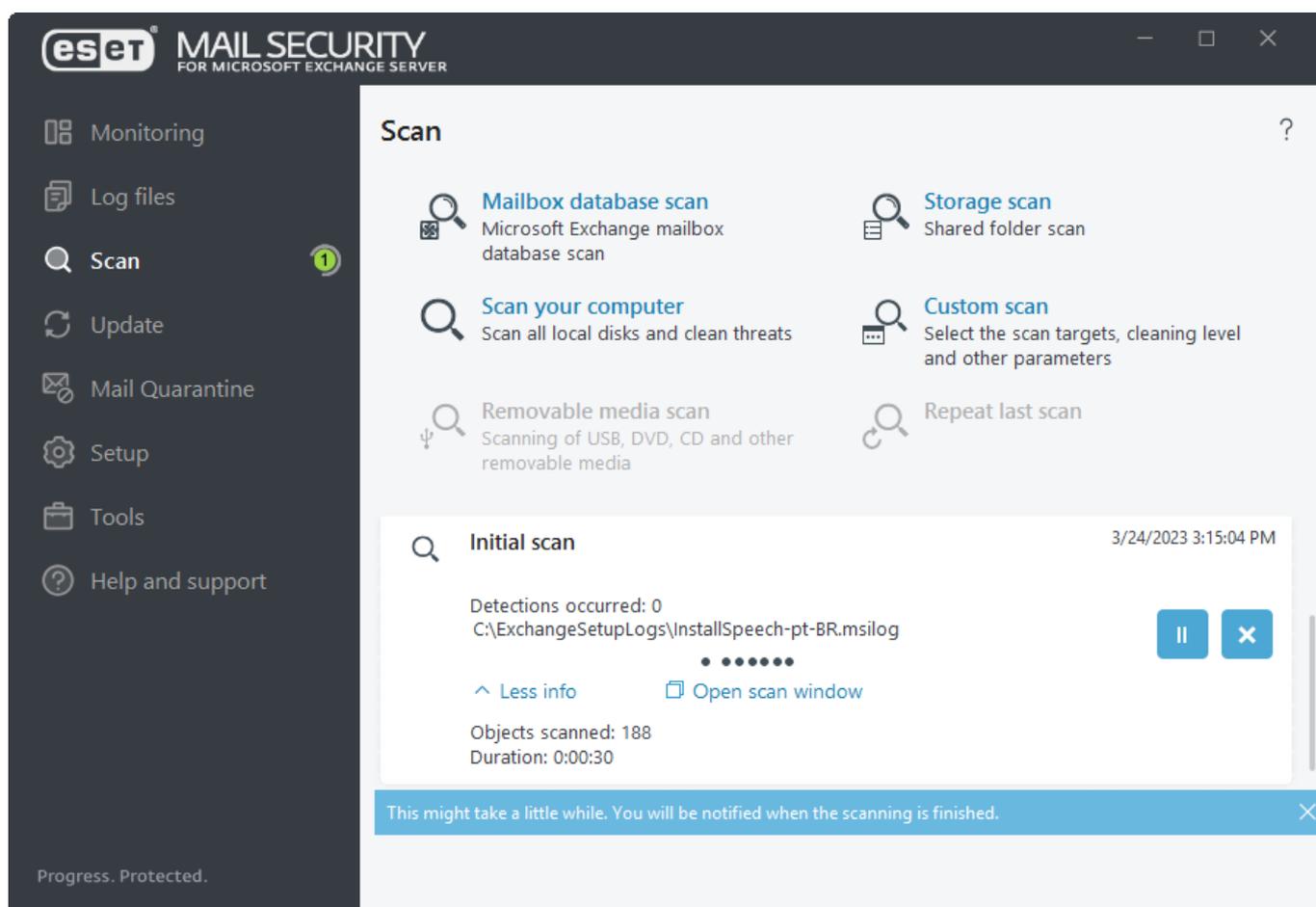
You can use options and shows more information about the scan statuses:

Drag and drop files	You can also drag and drop files into the ESET Mail Security scan window. These files will be virus scanned immediately.
Dismiss/ Dismiss all	Dismissing of give messages.
Scan statuses	Show the status of initial scan. This scan has finished completed or has been interrupted by user.
Show log	Shows more detailed information.

Drag and drop files	You can also drag and drop files into the ESET Mail Security scan window. These files will be virus scanned immediately.
More info	During a scan to see details such as the User who executed the scan, number of Objects scanned and the scan **Duration**. If On-demand Database scan is running, it shows the user who executed the scan, not the actual Database scan account that is being used to connect to EWS (Exchange Web Services) during the scan process.
Open scan windows	The scan progress window shows the current status of the scan and information about the number of files found that contain malicious code.

Scan window and scan log

The scan window shows currently scanned objects including their location, number of threats found (if any), number of scanned objects and scan duration. The bottom part of the window is a scan log that shows detection engine version number, date and time when the scan started and target selection.

Once the scan is in progress, you can click **Pause** if you want to temporarily interrupt the scan. **Resume** option is available when the scan process is paused.

Scroll scan log

Leave this option enabled to auto scroll old logs and view active logs in the Log files window.

> ℹ It is normal that some files, such as password protected files or files exclusively being used by the system (typically *pagefile.sys* and certain log files), cannot be scanned.

After the scan has finished, you will see the scan log with all relevant information related to the specific scan.

Click the switch icon ▢ **Filtering** to open Log filtering window where you can define filtering or search criteria. To view the context menu, right-click a specific log entry:

Action	Usage	Shortcut	See also
Filter same records	This activates log filtering, showing only records of the same type as the one selected.	Ctrl + Shift + F	
Filter...	After clicking this option, the Log filtering window will allow you to define filtering criteria for specific log entries.		Log filtering
Enable filter	Activates filter settings. The first time you activate filtering, you must define settings.		
Disable filter	Turns filtering off (same as clicking the switch at the bottom).		
Copy	Copies information of selected/highlighted record(s) into the clipboard.	Ctrl + C	
Copy all	Copies information from all records in the window.		
Export...	Exports information of selected/highlighted record(s) into an XML file.		
Export all...	Exports all the information in the window into an XML file.		

Log files

Log files contain information about important program events that have occurred, provide an overview of scan results, detected threats, etc. Logs are an essential tool in system analysis, threat detection and troubleshooting. Logging is performed actively in the background with no user interaction. Information is recorded based on the current log verbosity settings. You can view text messages and logs directly from the ESET Mail Security environment or export them for viewing elsewhere.

Choose the appropriate log type from the drop-down menu. The following logs are available:

Detections

The Detections log offers detailed information about infiltrations detected by ESET Mail Security modules. The information includes the time of detection, name of infiltration, location, the performed action and the name of the user logged in at the time the infiltration was detected.

Double-click any log entry to display its details in a separate window. You can create a detection exclusion if required by right-clicking a log record (detection) and clicking **Create exclusion**. Open the exclusion wizard with pre-defined criteria. If there is a name of a detection next to an excluded file, it means that the file is only excluded for the given detection. If that file becomes infected later with other malware, it will be detected.

Events

All important actions performed by ESET Mail Security are recorded in the event log. The event log contains information about events and errors that have occurred in the program. It is designed to help system administrators and users resolve problems. Often the information found here can help you find a solution for a problem occurring in the program.

Computer scan

All scan results are displayed in this window. Each line corresponds to a single computer control. Double-click any entry to view the details of the respective scan.

Blocked files

Contains records of files that were blocked and could not be accessible. The protocol shows the reason and the source module that blocked the file, as well as the application and user that executed the file.

Sent files

Contains records of files Cloud-based protection, ESET LiveGuard Advanced and ESET LiveGrid®.

Audit logs

Contains records of changes in configuration or protection state and create snapshots for later reference. Right-click any record of setting changes type and select Show from the context menu to display detailed information about the performed change. If you want to you previous setting select Restore. You can also use Delete all to remove log records. If you want to deactivate Audit logging, navigate to Advanced setup > Tools > Log files > Audit log.

HIPS

Contains records of specific rules that are marked for recording. The protocol shows the application that called the operation, the result (whether the rule was permitted or prohibited) and the name of the rule created.

Network protection

Contains records of files that were blocked by Botnet protection and IDS (Network attack protection).

Filtered websites

List of websites that were blocked by Web access protection and Anti-phishing mail protection. These logs display

the time, URL, user and application that opened a connection to the specific website.

Device control

Contains records of removable media or devices that were connected to the computer. Only devices with a Device control rule will be recorded to the log file. If the rule does not match a connected device, a log entry for a connected device will not be created. Here you can also see details such as device type, serial number, vendor name and media size (if available).

Mail server protection

All messages detected by ESET Mail Security as infiltration or as a spam are recorded here. These logs apply to following protection types: Antispam, Anti-Phishing, Sender spoofing protection, Rules and Anti-Malware.

When you double-click an item, a window will open with Additional information about the detected email message, such as IP address, HELO domain, Message ID, and Scan type showing the protection layer it was detected on. Also, you can see the result of Anti-Malware, Anti-Phishing and Antispam scan and the reason why it was detected or whether a Rule was activated.

> **i** Not all processed messages are being logged into a Mail server protection log. However, all of the messages that were actually modified (deleted attachment, custom string added to a message header, etc.) are written into the log.

Mailbox database scan

Contains the version of the detection engine, date, scanned location, number of scanned objects, number of threats found, number of rule hits and time of completion.

SMTP protection

All messages that have been evaluated using the greylisting method. SPF and Backscatter are also displayed here. Each record contains HELO Domain, IP sender's and recipient's address, Actions statuses (rejected, rejected [not verified] and verified incoming messages). There are a new action to add subdomain in the greylisting whitelist, see table below

Hyper-V scan

Contains a list of Hyper-V scan results. Double-click any entry to view the details of the respective scan.
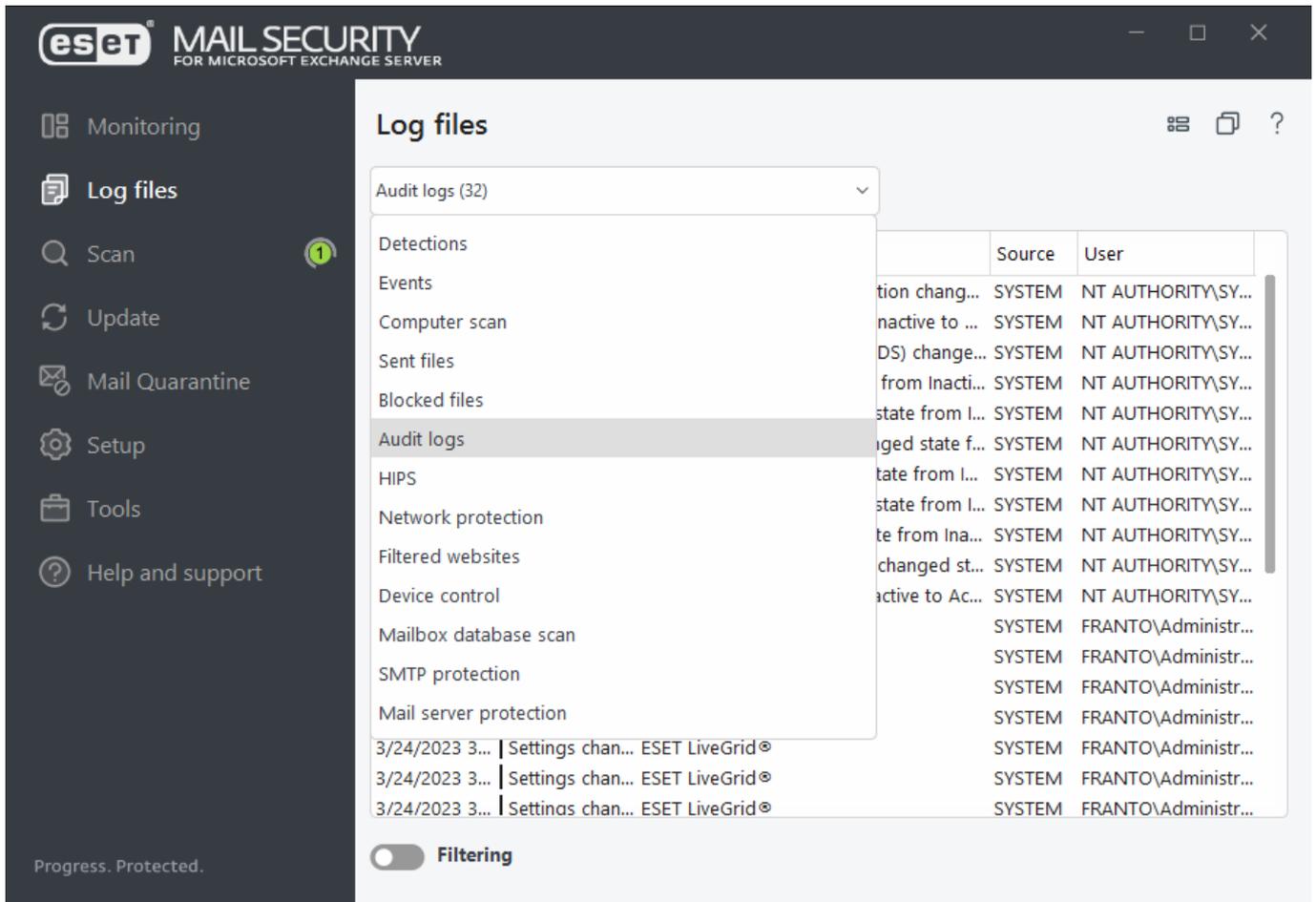
Context menu (right-click) enables you to choose an action with selected log record:

Action	Usage	Shortcut	See also
Show	Shows more detailed information about the selected log in a new window (same as double-click).		
Filter same records	This activates log filtering, showing only records of the same type as the one selected.	Ctrl + Shift + F	
Filter...	After clicking this option, the Log filtering window will allow you to define filtering criteria for specific log entries.		Log filtering
Enable filter	Activates filter settings. The first time you activate filtering, you must define settings.		
Disable filter	Turns filtering off (same as clicking the switch at the bottom).		
Copy	Copies information of selected/highlighted record(s) into the clipboard.	Ctrl + C	
Copy all	Copies information from all records in the window.		
Delete	Deletes selected/highlighted record(s) - this action requires administrator privileges.	Del	
Delete all	Deletes all record(s) in the window - this action requires administrator privileges.		
Export...	Exports information of selected/highlighted record(s) into an XML file.		
Export all...	Exports all the information in the window into an XML file.		
Find...	Opens Find in log window and lets you define search criteria. You can use the find feature to locate a specific record even while filtering is on.	Ctrl + F	Find in log
Find next	Finds the next occurrence of your defined search criteria.	F3	

Action	Usage	Shortcut	See also
Find previous	Finds the previous occurrence.	Shift + F3	
Create exclusion	To exclude objects from cleaning using the detection name, path or its hash.		Create exclusion

Add IP address to greylisting whitelist	Adds sender's IP address to the IP whitelist. You can find the IP whitelist under Greylisting and SPF section of Filtering and verification. This applies to items logged by Greylisting or SPF.		
Add domain to greylisting and SPF whitelist	Adds sender's domain to the Domain to IP whitelist. Only domain is added, subdomain is ignored. For example, if sender's address is sub.domain.com, only domain.com is added to the whitelist. You can find the Domain to IP whitelist under Greylisting and SPF section of Filtering and verification. This applies to items logged by Greylisting.		
Add subdomain to greylisting and SPF whitelist	Adds sender's subdomain to the Domain to IP whitelist. Whole domain is added, including its subdomain (for example sub.domain.com). This gives you more flexibility for filtering, if required. You can find the Domain to IP whitelist under Greylisting and SPF section of Filtering and verification. This applies to items logged by Greylisting.		

Log filtering

The log filtering feature will help you find the information you are looking for, especially when there are many records. It lets you narrow down log records, for example, if you are looking for a specific type of event, status or time period.

You can filter log records by specifying certain search options, only records that are relevant (according to those search options) will be displayed in the Log files window.

Type the keyword you are searching for into the **Find text** field. Use the **Search in columns** drop-down menu to refine your search. Choose one or more record from the **Record log types** drop-down menu. Define the **Time period** from which you want the results to be displayed. You can also use further search options, such as **Match whole words only** or **Case sensitive**.

Find text

Type a string (word, or part of a word). Only records that contain this string will be shown. Other records will be omitted.

Search in columns

Select what columns will be taken into account when searching. You can check one or more columns to be used for searching.

Record types

Choose one or more log record types from the drop-down menu:

- **Diagnostic** - Logs information needed to fine-tune the program and all records above.

- **Informative** - Records informative messages, including successful update messages, plus all records above.

- **Warnings** - Records critical errors and warning messages.

- **Errors** - Errors such as "Error downloading file" and critical errors will be recorded.

- **Critical** - Logs only critical errors.

Time period

Define the time period from which you want the results to be displayed:

- Not specified (default) - Does not search within time period, searches the whole log.

- Last day

- Last week

- Last month

- Time period - You can specify the exact time period (From: and To:) to filter only the records of the specified time period.

Match whole words only

Use the check box if you want to search whole words for more precise results.

Case sensitive

Enable this option if it is important for you to use capital or lowercase letters while filtering. When configuring your filtering/search options, click **OK** to show filtered log records or **Find** to start searching.

The log files are searched from top to bottom, starting from your current position (the highlighted record). The search stops when it finds the first corresponding record. Press **F3** to search for the next record, or right-click and select **Find** to refine your search options.

Update

In the Update section, you can see the current update status of your ESET Mail Security, including the date and time of the last successful update. Regularly updating ESET Mail Security is the best method to maintain the maximum level of security on your server.

The Update module ensures that the program is always up to date in two ways, by updating detection engine and system components. Updating detection engine and program components is an important part of providing complete protection against malicious code.

> **i** If you did not type your [License Key](#) yet, you will not be able to receive updates and will be prompted to activate your Product. To do so, navigate to **Help and support** > **Activate Product**.
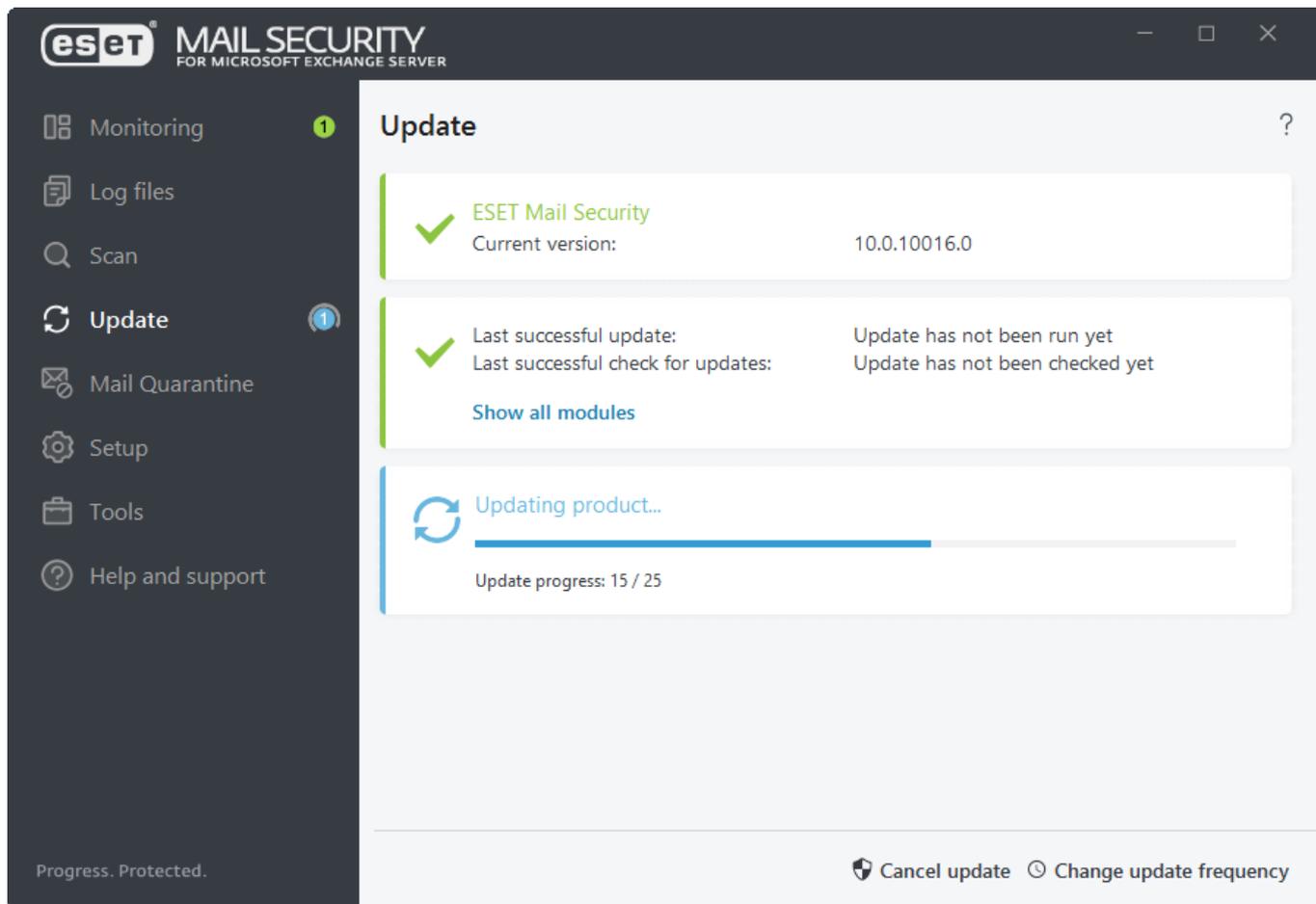
Current version

The ESET Mail Security build version.

Last successful update

The date of the last update. Make sure it refers to a recent date, which means that the modules is current.

Last successful check for updates

The date of the last attempt to update modules.

Show all modules

To open the list of installed modules.

Check for Updates

Updating modules is important parts of maintaining complete protection against malicious code.

Change update frequency

You can edit task timing for scheduler task Regular automatic update.

If you do not check for Updates as soon as possible, one of the following messages will be displayed:

Error message	Descriptions
Modules update is out of date	This error will appear after several unsuccessful attempts to module update. We recommend that you check the update settings. The most common reason for this error is incorrectly entered authentication data or incorrectly configured connection settings.
Modules update failed - Product is not activated	The license key has been entered incorrectly in update setup. We recommend that you check your authentication data. The **Advanced setup** (**F5**) contains additional update options. Click **Help and support** > Manage license from the main menu to enter a new license key.
An error occurred while downloading update files	This can be caused by Internet connection settings. We recommend that you check your Internet connectivity by opening any website in your web browser. If the website does not open, it is likely that an Internet connection is not established or there are connectivity problems with your computer. Please check with your Internet Service Provider (ISP) if you do not have an active Internet connection.
Modules update failed Error 0073	Click **Update** > **Check for updates**, for more information visit this Knowledgebase article.

> i Proxy server options for various update profiles may differ. If this is the case, configure the different update profiles in **Advanced setup** (**F5**) by clicking **Update** > Profile.

Mail Quarantine

Email messages and their components, such as attachments, are put into Mail quarantine instead of traditional file quarantine. The Mail Quarantine provides for a more convenient way of managing spam, infected attachments containing malware or phishing messages. There are different reasons why email messages are put into the Mail Quarantine, depending on which ESET Mail Security protection module handles the message (Anti-Malware, Antispam, Anti-Phishing, Sender Spoofing protection or Rules).

Filtering by icons

You can use icons to filter messages to see attachments, emails or emails with attachments only.

Timespan

Select the time span for which you want to see quarantined emails. When you select **Custom**, you can specify a range (Date from and Date to).

Cluster nodes

Select the cluster nodes for which you want to see quarantined emails.

Quick search

Type a string into the text box to filter displayed emails (all columns are searched).

Type

Use check boxes to filter further by type (spam, malware, rule, phishing, or sender spoofed).

> ⚠ Mail Quarantine manager data is not updated automatically, we recommend that you click **Refresh** ↻ regularly to see the most current items in the Mail Quarantine.

Release

Releases email to its original recipient(s) using Replay directory and deletes it from quarantine. Click Yes to confirm the action. If quarantined item is an attachment from mail-disabled public folder, Release button is not available.

> ℹ When releasing an email from quarantine, ESET Mail Security ignores `To:` MIME header because it can be easily spoofed. Instead, it uses the original recipient information from `RCPT TO:` command acquired during the SMTP connection. This ensures that correct email recipient receives the message which is being released from quarantine.

> ℹ If you run a [clustered](#) environment and release a message from the quarantine, the message will not get quarantined again by the other ESET Mail Security nodes. It is achieved by the synchronization of the rules between the cluster nodes.

Delete

Deletes items from quarantine. Click **Yes** to confirm the action. Items deleted via the main program window are removed from the quarantine view but are still kept in storage. These are automatically deleted later (after three days by default).

Restore to

This option enables you to restore an attachment(s) to a specified location. It is available for attachments only (it will be grayed out for messages). If you need to process whole message, use Release feature for this purpose.

Quarantine mail details

Double-click the quarantined message or right-click and choose **Show Details**. A new window will open with details about the quarantined email message. You can also check the original RFC email headers for further details.

Quarantine attachment details

When an attachment is double-clicked, the detail dialog is different compared to email message detail dialog. RFC headers are unavailable; an area with an attachment envelope text is displayed. You can type the custom text of the attachment envelope when releasing it from mail quarantine.

Actions are also available from the context menu. If desired, click **Release**, **Delete** or **Delete permanently** to take action with a quarantined email message. Click **Yes** to confirm the action. If you choose to **Delete permanently**, the message will be deleted from the file system as well, as opposed to **Delete** which will remove the item from the Mail quarantine manager view.
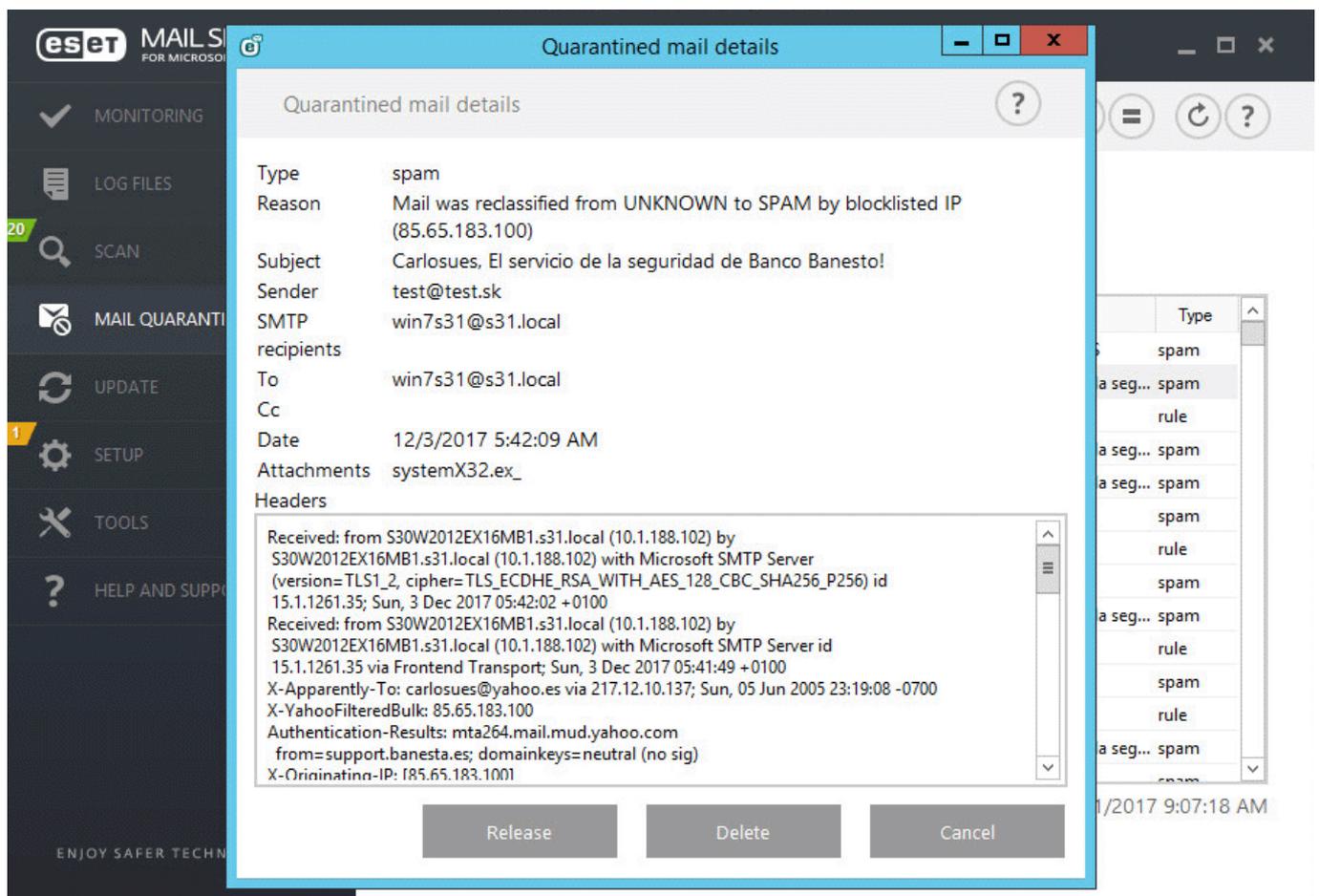
Setup

The Setup menu window contains the following sections:

- Server

- Computer

- Network

- [Web and email](#)

- [Tools - Diagnostic logging](#)
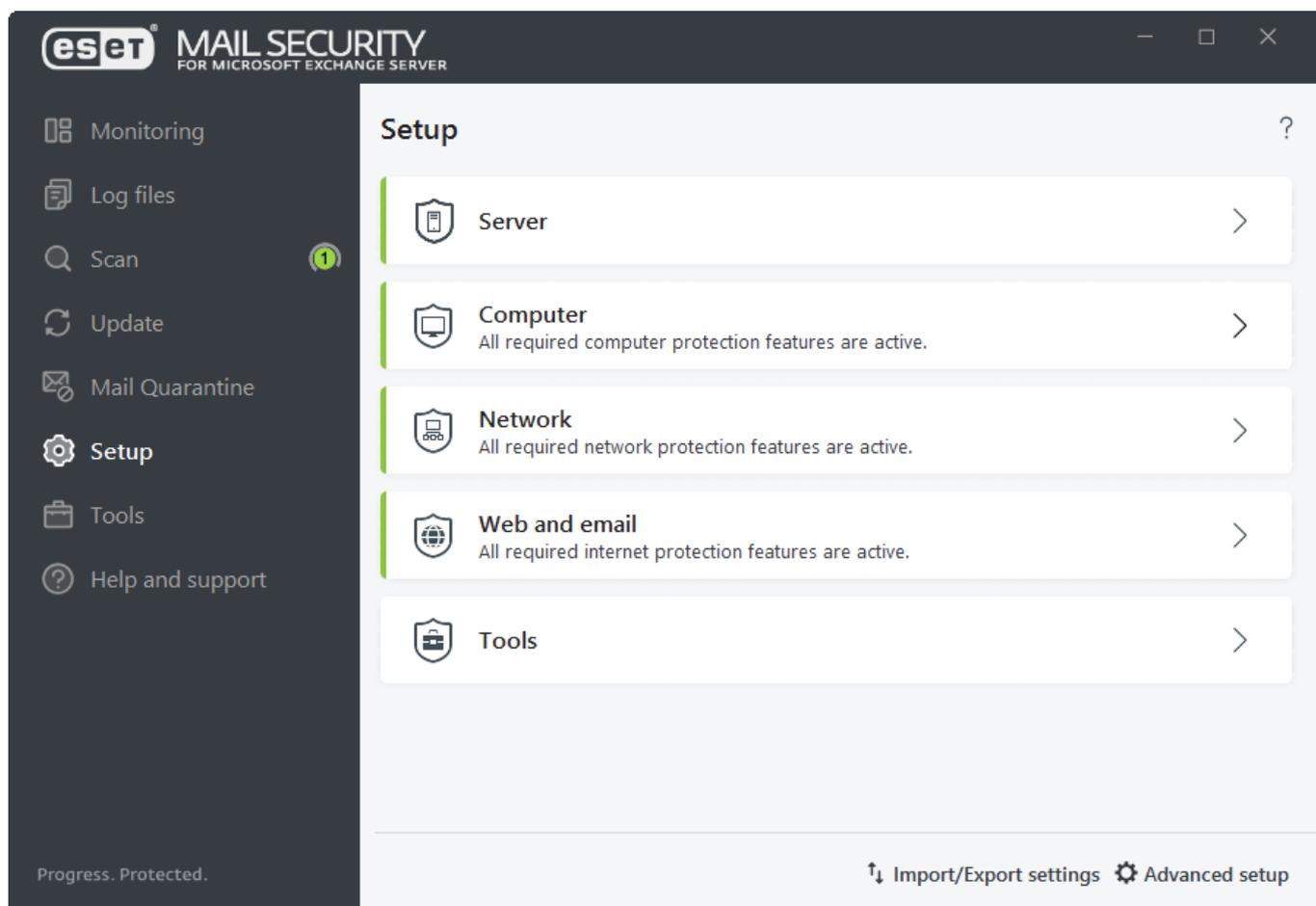
To temporarily disable individual modules, next to the appropriate module, click the green slider bar ⬤. This may decrease the protection level of your server.

To re-enable the protection of a disabled security component, next to the appropriate module, click the red slider bar ⬤. The component is returned to an enabled state.

To access detailed settings of a specific security component, click the gear icon ⚙.

[Import/Export settings](#)

Load setup parameters using an *.xml* configuration file or save the current setup parameters to a configuration file.

[Advanced setup](#)

Configure advanced settings and options based on your needs. To access the **Advanced setup** screen from anywhere in the program, press **F5**.

Server

You will see a list of components that you can enable/disable using the slider bar ⬤. To configure settings for a specific item, click the gear icon ⚙.

Antivirus protection

Guards against malicious system attacks by controlling file, email and internet communication.

Antispam protection

Integrates several technologies (RBL, DNSBL, Fingerprinting, Reputation checking, Content analysis, Rules, Manual whitelisting/blacklisting, etc.) to achieve maximum detection of email threats.

Anti-Phishing protection

Parses message body of incoming emails for phishing links (URL's).

Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan

To activate this feature, register ESET Mail Security scanner.

Automatic exclusions

Identifies critical server applications and server operating system files and automatically adds them to the list of exclusions. This functionality will minimize the risk of potential conflicts and increase the overall performance of the server when running threat detection software.

Cluster

To configure and activate the ESET Cluster.
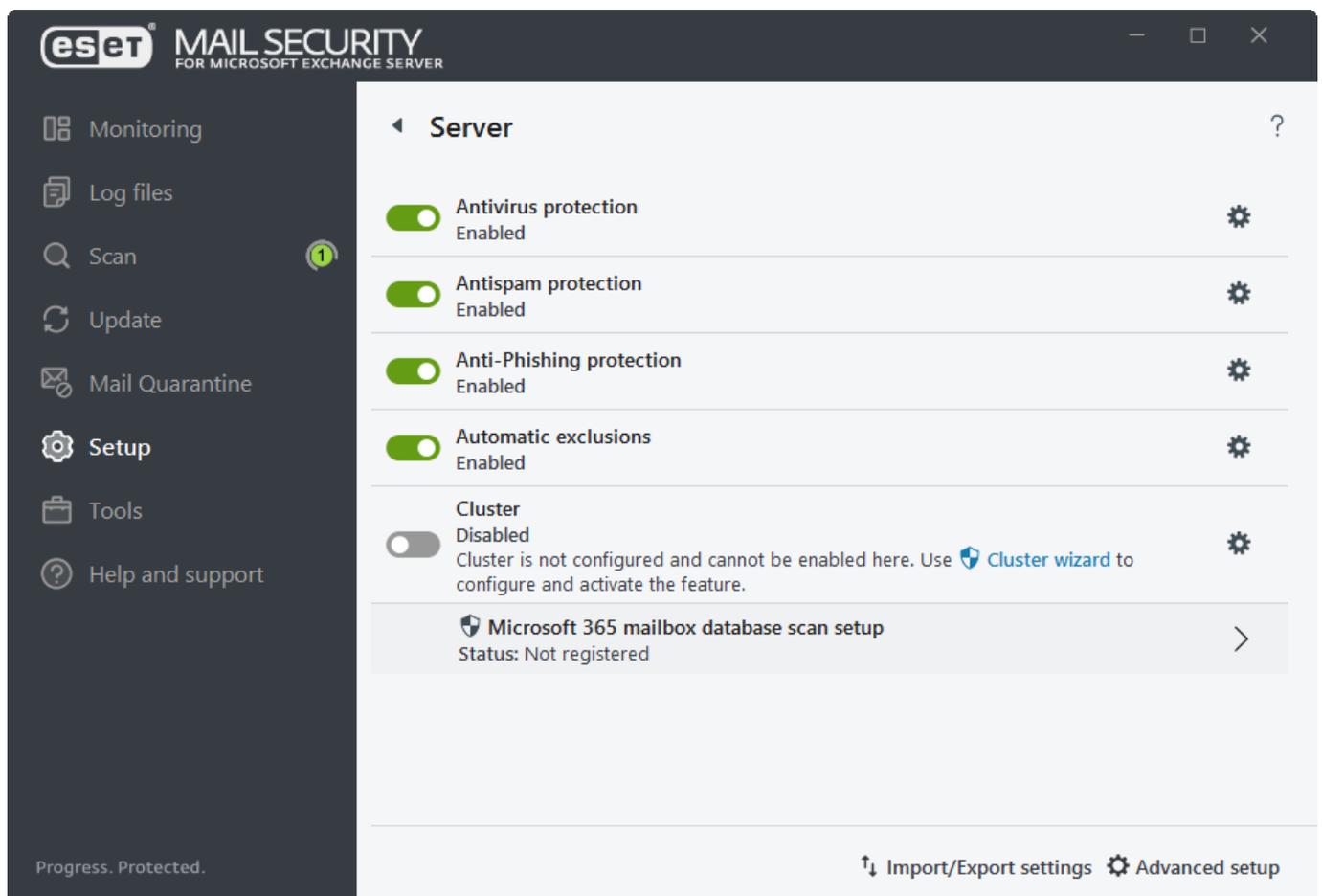
Computer

ESET Mail Security has all of the necessary components to ensure significant protection of the server as a computer. This module allows you to enable/disable and configure the following components:

Real-time file system protection

All files are scanned for malicious code when they are opened, created or run on your computer. For Real-time file system protection, there is also an option to **Configure** or **Edit exclusions** which will open the exclusions setup window where you can exclude files and folders from scanning.

Device control

This module allows you to scan, block or adjust extended filters/permissions and define a user's ability to access and work with a given device.

Host Intrusion Prevention System (HIPS)

System monitors events that occur within the operating system and reacts to them according to a customized set of rules.

- Advanced memory scanner

- Exploit blocker

- Ransomware shield

Presentation mode

A feature for users that demand uninterrupted usage of their software, do not want to be disturbed by pop-up windows, and want to minimize CPU usage. You will receive a warning message (potential security risk) and the main program window will turn orange after enabling Presentation mode.

Pause Antivirus and antispyware protection

Any time that you temporarily disable Antivirus and antispyware protection, you can select the period of time for which you want the selected component to be disabled using the drop-down menu and then click **Apply** to disable the security component. To re-enable protection, click **Enable Antivirus and antispyware protection** or enable using the slider bar.
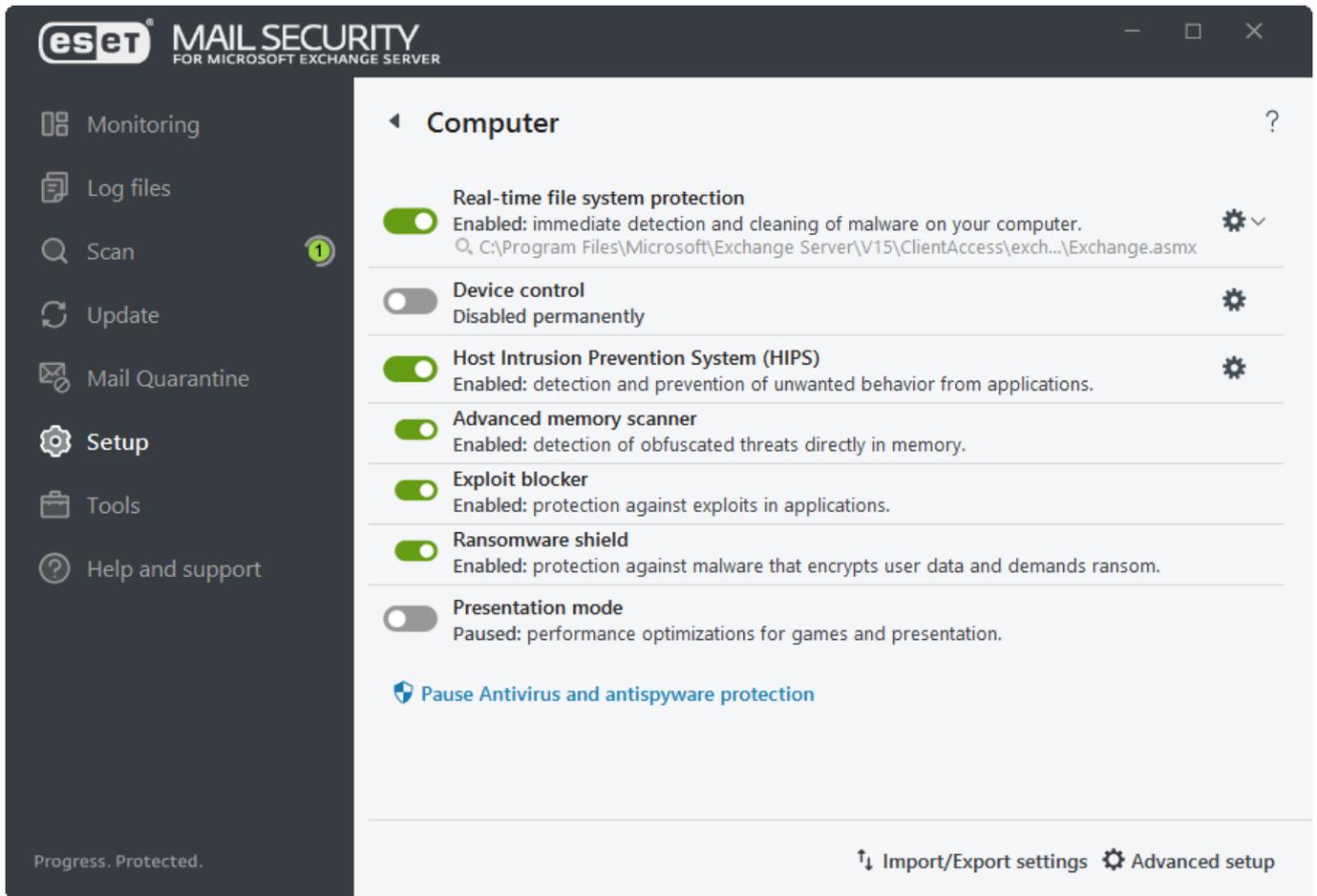
Network

This is accomplished by allowing or denying individual network connections based on your filtering rules. It provides protection against attacks from remote computers and blocks some potentially dangerous services.

The Network module allows you to enable/disable and configure the following components:

Network attack protection (IDS)

Analyzes the content of network traffic and protects from network attacks. Traffic that is considered harmful will be blocked.

Botnet protection

Detection and blocking of Botnet communication. Quickly and accurately identifies malware in the system.

Temporary IP address blacklist (blocked addresses)

View a list of IP addresses that have been detected as the source of attacks and added to the blacklist to block connection for a certain period of time.

Troubleshooting wizard (recently blocked applications or devices)

Helps you resolve connectivity problems caused by network attack protection.
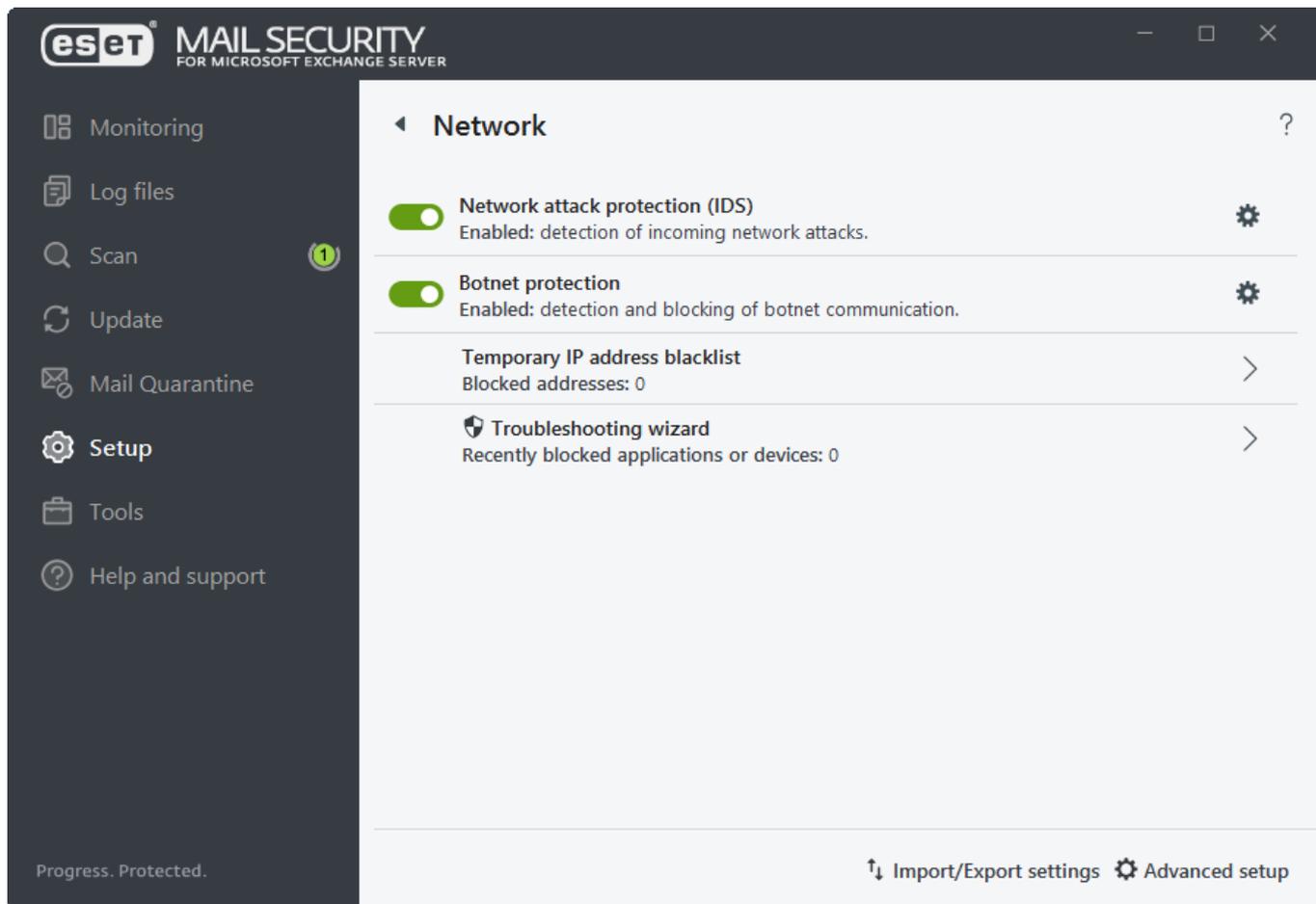
Network troubleshooting wizard

The troubleshooting wizard monitors all blocked connections and will guide you through the troubleshooting process to correct Network Attack Protection issues with specific applications or devices. Next, the wizard will suggest a new set of rules to be applied if you approve them.

Select a time period from the drop-down menu during which communication has been blocked. A list of recently blocked communications gives you an overview of the application type or device, reputation, and the total number of applications and devices blocked during that period. For more details about blocked communication, click **Details**.

The next step is to unblock the application or device you are experiencing connectivity problems.

When you click Unblock, the previously blocked communication will be allowed. If you continue to experience problems with an application or your device does not work as expected, click **The application still doesn't work**. All communications previously blocked for that device will now be allowed. If the issue persists, restart the computer.

Click **Show changes** to see rules created by the wizard.

Click **Unblock another** to troubleshoot communications issues with a different device or application.

Web and email

Web and email allows you to enable/disable and configure the following components:

[Web access protection](#)

If enabled, all HTTP or HTTPS traffic is scanned for malicious software.

[Anti-Phishing protection](#)

Protects you from attempts to acquire passwords, banking data and other sensitive information by illegitimate websites disguised as legitimate ones.

[Email client protection](#)

Monitors communication received through the POP3 and IMAP protocols.
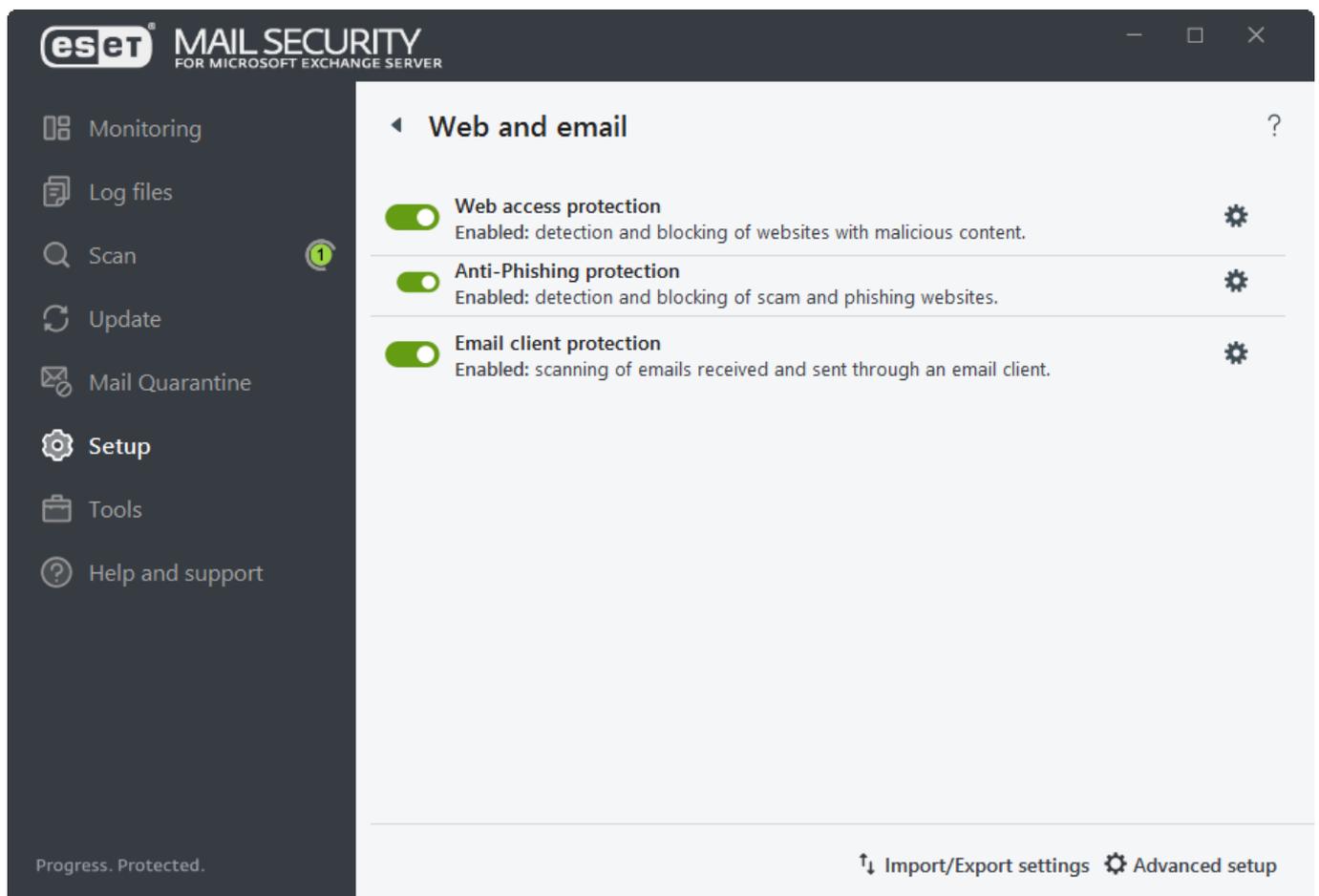
Tools - Diagnostic logging

You can enable [Diagnostic logging](#) when you need detailed information about the behavior of a specific ESET Mail Security feature, for example, when troubleshooting. When you click the gear icon ✱, you can configure for what [features](#) should diagnostic logs be collected.

Choose how long it will be enabled (10 minutes, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 4 hours, 24 hours, until next server restart or permanently). Once diagnostic logging is turned on, ESET Mail Security will be collecting detailed logs according to

what features are enabled.
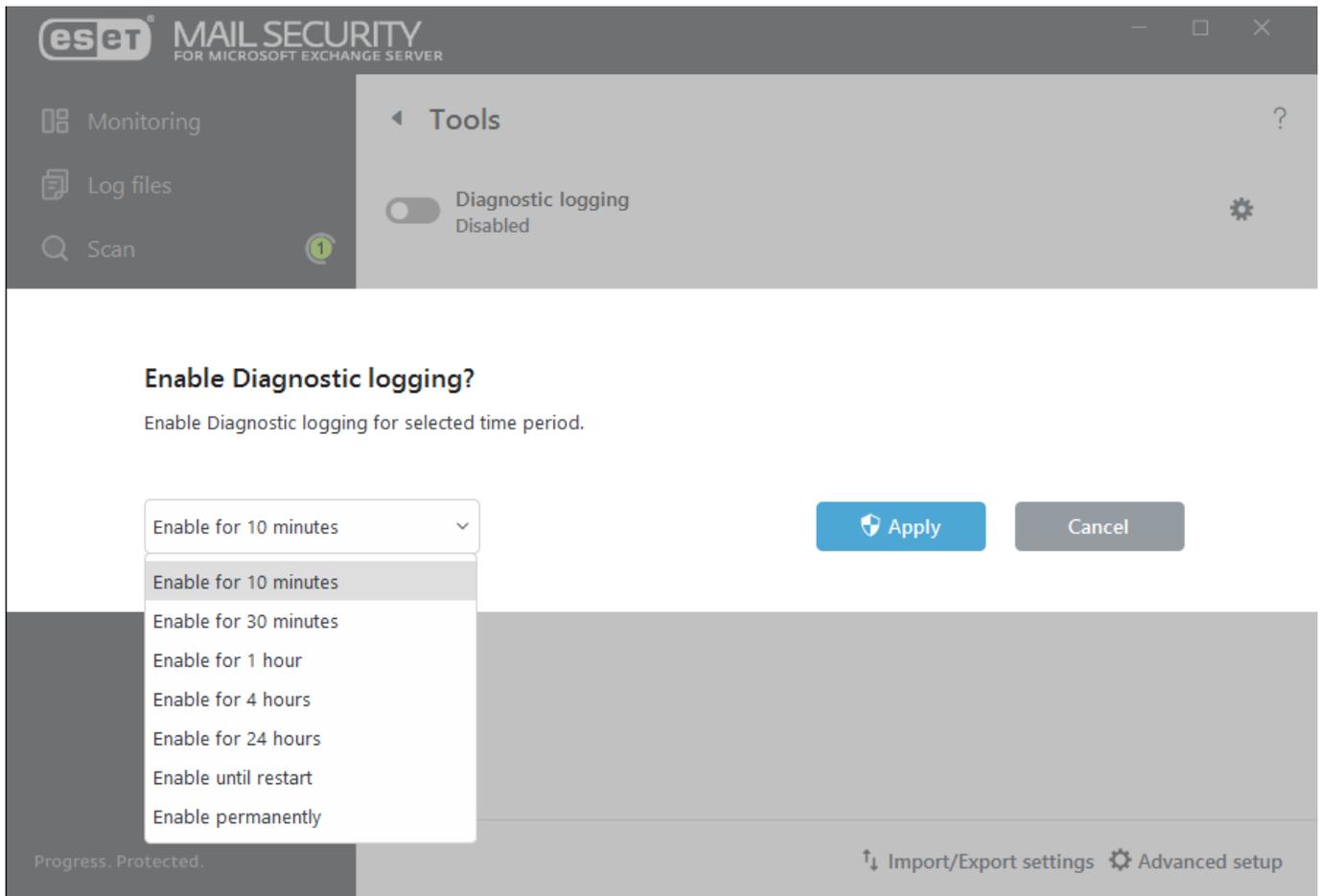
Import and export settings

Import/export settings feature is useful if you need to back up current configuration of your ESET Mail Security. You can also use the import feature to distribute/apply the same settings to other server(s) with ESET Mail Security. Settings are exported to an *.xml* file.
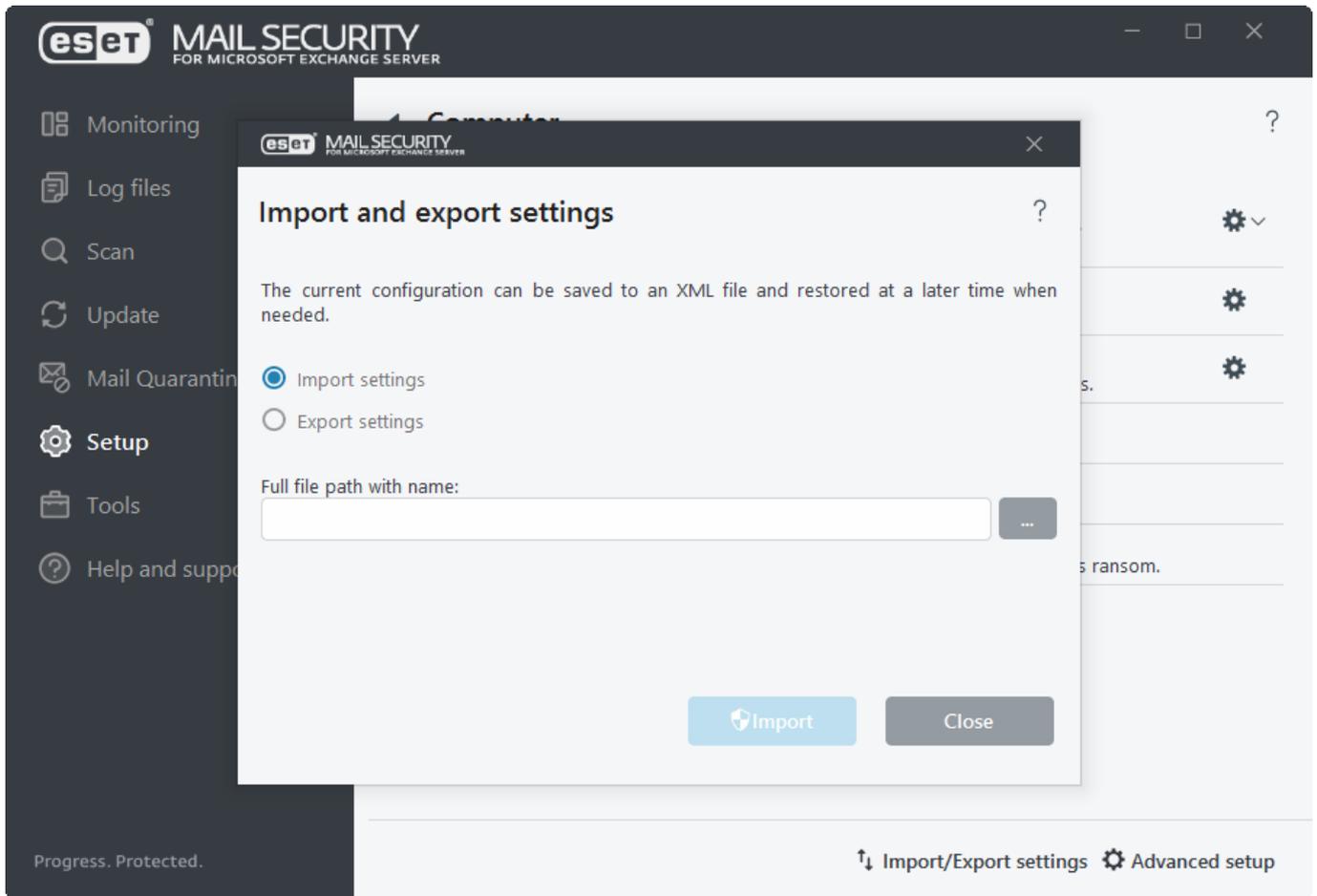
> **i** If you do not have rights to write the exported file to specified directory, you may encounter an error when exporting settings.

Tools

The following features are available for ESET Mail Security administration:

- Running processes

- Protection statistics

- Cluster

- ESET Shell

- ESET LiveGuard Advanced

- ESET SysInspector

- ESET SysRescue Live

- Scheduler

- Submit sample for analysis

- Quarantine
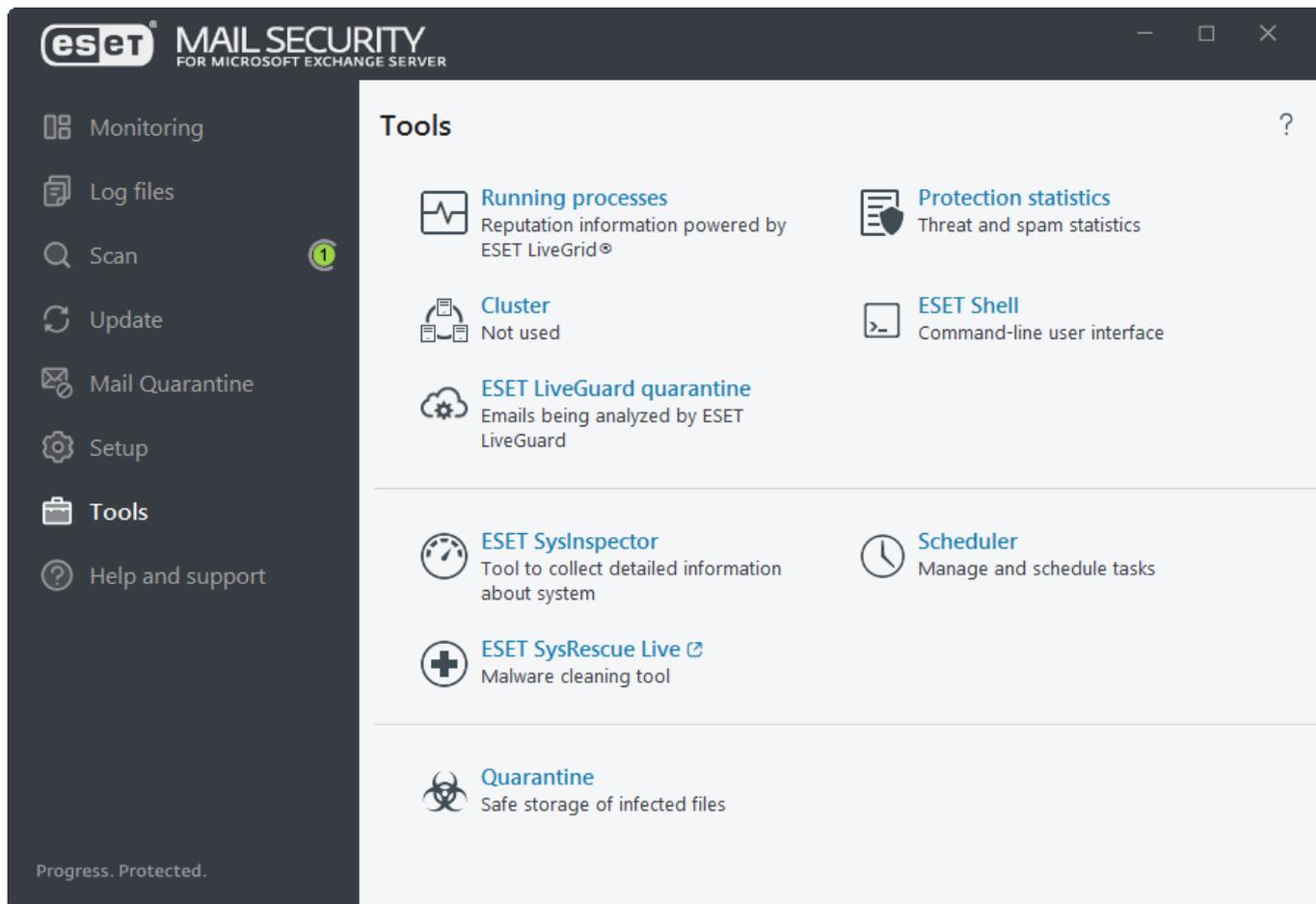
Running processes

Running processes displays the running programs or processes on your computer and keeps ESET immediately and continuously informed about new infiltrations. ESET Mail Security provides detailed information on running processes to protect users with ESET LiveGrid® technology enabled.

> **i** Known applications marked as Best reputation (green) are clean (whitelisted) and will be excluded from scanning, as this will improve the scanning speed of on-demand computer scan or Real-time file system protection on your computer.

Reputation	In most cases, ESET Mail Security and ESET LiveGrid® technology determines object reputation using a series of heuristic rules that examine the characteristics of each object (files, processes, registry keys, etc.) and then weigh their potential for malicious activity. Based on these heuristics, objects are assigned a reputation level from 9 - best reputation (green) to 0 - worst reputation (red).
Process	Image name of the program or process that is currently running on your computer. You can also use the Windows Task Manager to see all running processes on your computer. You can open Task Manager by right-clicking an empty area on the taskbar and then clicking Task Manager or pressing CTRL + SHIFT + ESC on your keyboard.
PID	Is an ID of processes running in Windows operating systems.
Number of users	The number of users that use a given application. This information is gathered by ESET LiveGrid® technology.
Time of discovery	Period of time since the application was discovered by ESET LiveGrid® technology.
Application name	Given name of a program this process belongs to.

> **i** An application is not necessarily malicious software when marked as Unknown (orange). Usually, it is just a newer application. If unsure about the file, use the Submit sample for analysis feature to send the file to the ESET virus Lab. If the file is a malicious application, its detection will be added to one of the upcoming detection engine updates.

Show details

The following information will appear at the bottom of the window:

- **Path** - Location of an application on your computer.

- **Size** - File size either in kB (kilobytes) or MB (megabytes).

- **Description** - File characteristics based on the description from the operating system.

- **Company** - Name of the vendor or application process.

- **Version** - Information from the application publisher.

- **Product** - Application name and/or business name.

- **Created on** - Date and time when an application was created.

- **Modified on** - Last date and time when an application was modified.

Add to processes exclusions

Right-click a process in the Running processes window to exclude it from scanning. Its path will be added to the list of Processes exclusions.

Protection statistics

To view statistical data related to protection modules of ESET Mail Security, select the applicable protection module from the drop-down menu. The statistics include information such as the number of all scanned objects, number of infected objects, number of cleaned objects and the number of clean objects.

Hover your mouse over an object next to the graph and only the data for that specific object will display in the graph. To clear statistics information for the current protection module, click **Reset**. To clear data for all modules, click **Reset all**.
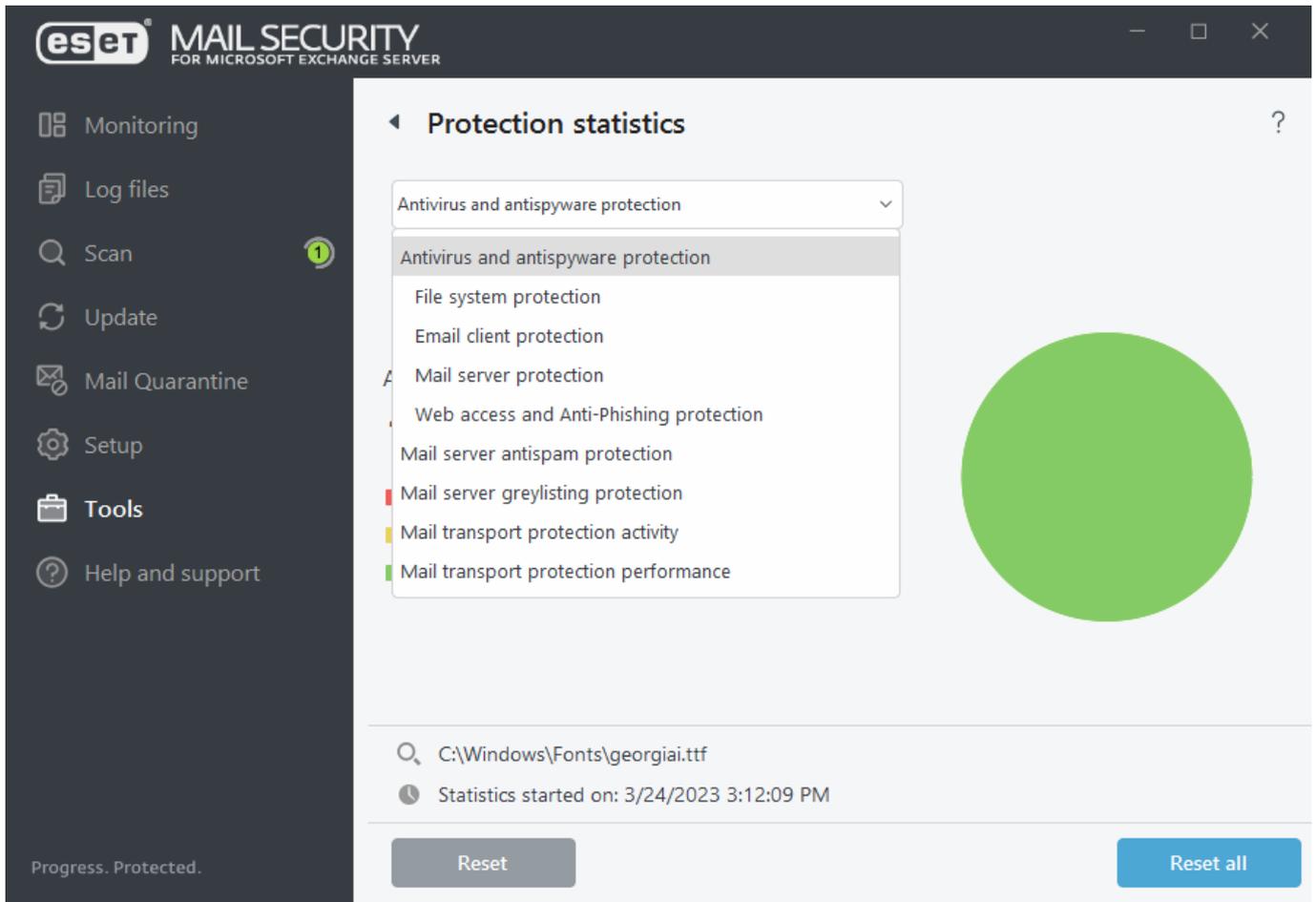
The following statistic graphs are available in ESET Mail Security:

Antivirus and antispyware protection

Displays the overall number of infected and cleaned objects.

File system protection

Displays objects that were read or written to the file system only.

Hyper-V protection

Displays the overall number of infected, cleaned and clean objects (on systems with Hyper-V only).

Email client protection

Displays objects that were sent or received by email clients only.

Web access and Anti-Phishing protection

Displays objects downloaded by web browsers only.

Mail server protection

Displays anti-malware mail server statistics.

Mail server Antispam protection

Displays the history of Antispam statistics. Number of Not scanned refers to objects excluded from scan (based on rules, internal messages, authenticated connections, etc.).

Mail server greylisting protection

Includes Antispam statistic generated using the greylisting method.

Mail transport protection activity

Displays objects verified/blocked/deleted by the mail server.

Mail transport protection performance

Displays data processed by VSAPI/Transport Agent in B/s.

Mailbox database protection activity

Displays objects processed by VSAPI (number of verified, quarantined and deleted objects).

Mailbox database protection performance

Displays data processed by VSAPI (number of different averages for today, for last 7 days and averages since last reset).

Cluster

The ESET Cluster is a P2P communication infrastructure of the ESET line of products for Microsoft Windows Server. Using ESET Cluster is ideal if you have Exchange infrastructure with multiple servers such as DAG.

This infrastructure enables ESET server products to communicate with each other and exchange data such as configuration and notifications, and can Synchronize greylisting databases as well as synchronize data necessary for correct operation of a group of product instances. An example of such group is a group of nodes in a Windows Failover Cluster or Network Load Balancing (NLB) Cluster with ESET products installed where there is a need to have the same configuration of the product across the whole cluster. ESET Cluster ensures this consistency between instances.

> **i** Settings of the User interface and Scheduled tasks are not synchronized between ESET Cluster nodes. This is on purpose. For example, to prevent running scheduled On-demand database scan on all cluster nodes at the same time, not causing unnecessary performance issues.
> Mail server protection logs are kept separate for each cluster node; the logs are therefore not synchronized. You can use the Export to syslog server feature on each node to have the logs duplicated to the Syslog server in CEF format or for use with a SIEM tool. Alternatively, you can use Export to Windows Applications and Services Logs if you prefer to gather the logs from there.
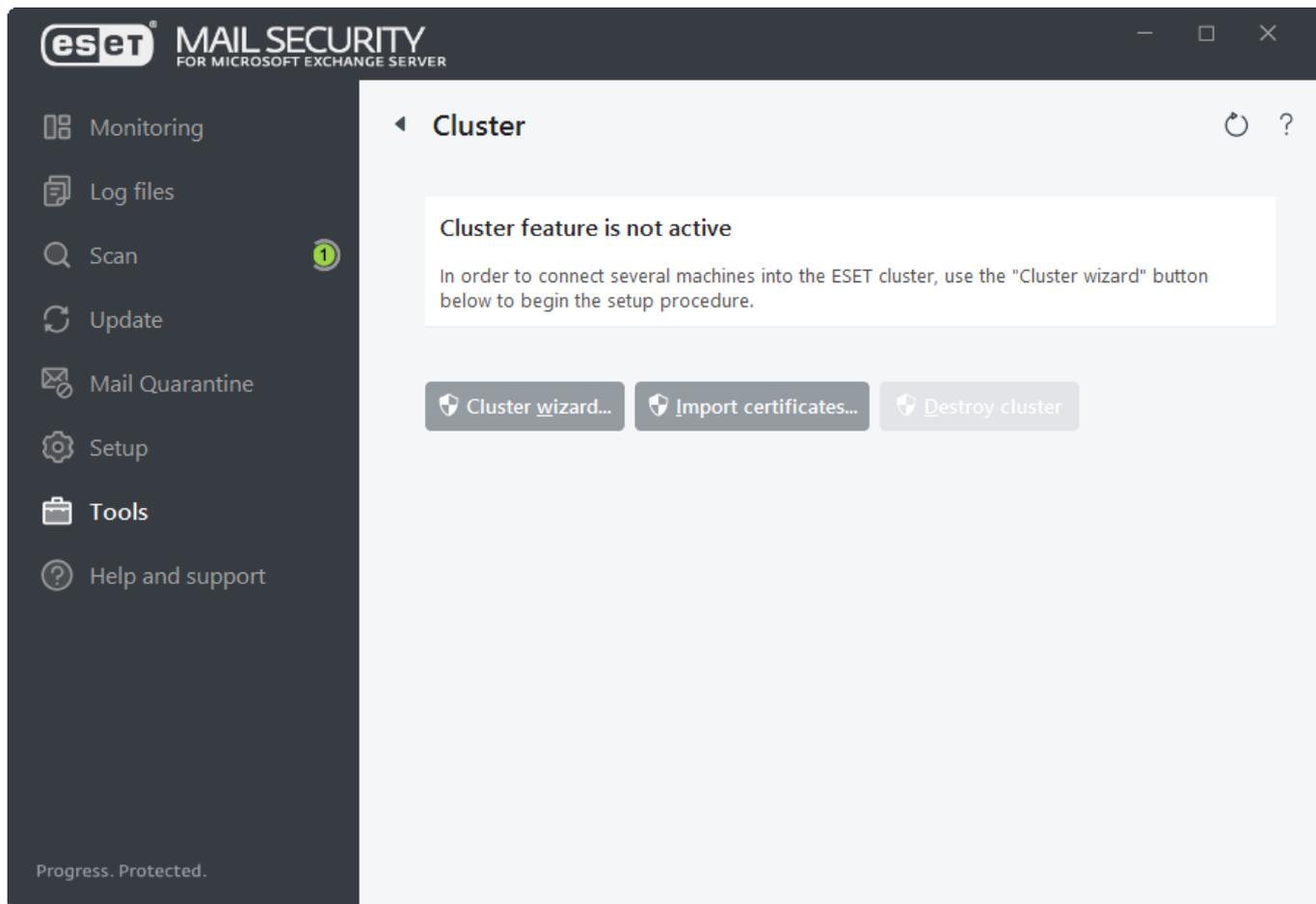
> **i** The creation of ESET Clusters between ESET Mail Security and ESET File Security for Linux is not supported.

When setting up the ESET Cluster, there two ways to add nodes:

- **Autodetect** - If you have an existing Windows Failover Cluster / NLB Cluster, Autodetect will automatically add its member nodes to the ESET Cluster.

- **Browse** - You can add nodes manually by typing in the server names (either members of the same Workgroup or members of the same Domain).

> **i** When releasing an email from quarantine, ESET Mail Security ignores `To:` MIME header because it can be easily spoofed. Instead, it uses the original recipient information from `RCPT TO:` command acquired during the SMTP connection. This ensures that correct email recipient receives the message which is being released from quarantine.

When you have added nodes to your ESET Cluster, the next step is the installation of ESET Mail Security on each node. This is done automatically during ESET Cluster setup. Credentials that are required for remote installation of ESET Mail Security on other cluster nodes:

- **Domain scenario** - Domain administrator credentials.

- **Workgroup scenario** - You need to make sure that all nodes use the same local administrator account credentials.

In an ESET Cluster, you can also use a combination of nodes added automatically as members of an existing Windows Failover Cluster / NLB Cluster and nodes added manually (provided they are in the same Domain).

> ⚠ You cannot to combine domain nodes with workgroup nodes.

Another requirement for the use of an ESET Cluster is that **File and Printer Sharing** must be enabled in Windows Firewall before pushing ESET Mail Security to ESET Cluster nodes.

You can add new nodes to an existing ESET Cluster anytime by running the [Cluster wizard](#).

Import certificates

Certificates are used to provide strong machine to machine authentication when HTTPS is used. There is an independent certificate hierarchy for each ESET Cluster. The hierarchy has one root certificate and a set of node certificates signed by the root certificate. The private key of the root certificate is destroyed after all node certificates are created. When you add a new node to the cluster a new certificate hierarchy is created. Navigate to the folder that contains the certificates (that were generated during Cluster wizard). Select the certificate file and click **Open**.

Destroy cluster

ESET Clusters can be dismantled. Each node will write a record in their event log about the ESET Cluster being destroyed. After that, all ESET firewall rules are removed from the Windows Firewall. Former nodes will be ted to their previous state and can be used again in another ESET Cluster if necessary.

Cluster wizard - Select nodes

The first step when setting up an ESET Cluster is adding nodes. You can either use the **Autodetect** option or **Browse** to add nodes. Alternatively, you can type the server name into the text box and click **Add**.

Autodetect

Automatically adds nodes from an existing Windows Failover Cluster / Network Load Balancing (NLB) Cluster. The server you are using to create the ESET Cluster from needs to be a member of this Windows Failover Cluster / NLB Cluster to automatically add the nodes. The NLB Cluster must have the **Allow remote control** feature enabled in cluster properties for the ESET Cluster to detect the nodes correctly. You can remove unwanted nodes when you have the list of newly added nodes.

Browse

To find and select computers within a Domain or a Workgroup. This method enables the manual addition of nodes to the ESET Cluster. Another way to add nodes is by typing the hostname of the server you want to add and clicking **Add**.

Load

To import list of nodes from file.

To modify **Cluster nodes** in the list, select the node you want to remove and click **Remove**, or to clear the list completely click **Remove all**.

If you already have an existing ESET Cluster, you can add new nodes to it at any time. The steps are the same as described above.

> **i** All nodes that remain in the list must be online and reachable. Localhost is added into the cluster nodes by default.

Cluster wizard - Cluster settings

Define cluster name, and network specifics (if required).

Cluster name

Type a name for your cluster and click Next.

Listening port (default port is 9777)

If you are already using port 9777 in your network environment, specify other port number that is not being used.

Open port in Windows firewall

When selected a rule is created in the Windows Firewall.

Cluster wizard - Cluster setup settings

Define certificate distribution mode and whether to install the product on other nodes or not.

Certificate distribution

- **Automatic remote** - Certificate will be installed automatically.

- **Manual** - Click **Generate** and select the appropriate folder to store the certificates. A root certificate as well as a certificate for each node, including the one (local machine) from which you are setting up the ESET Cluster, will be created. To enroll the certificate on the local machine, click **Yes**.

Product install to other nodes

- **Automatic remote** - ESET Mail Security will be installed automatically on each node (provided their operating systems are the same architecture).

- **Manual** - Manually install ESET Mail Security (for example, when you have different OS architectures on some nodes).

Push license to nodes without activated product

ESET Security automatically activates ESET Solutions installed on nodes without licenses.

> **i** To create an ESET Cluster with a mixed operating system architecture (32 bit and 64 bit), install ESET Mail Security manually. Operating systems in use will be detected during next steps and you will see this information in the log window.

Cluster wizard - Nodes check

After specifying installation details a node check is run. The following information will be displayed in the **Nodes check log**:

- verify that all existing nodes are online

- verify that new nodes are accessible

- node is online

- admin share is accessible

- remote execution is possible

- correct product versions (or no product) are installed

- verify that the new certificates are present

You will see the report once the node check is finished:

Node check log

[2:07:55 PM] Node check started
[2:07:55 PM] PING test:
[2:07:55 PM] OK
[2:07:55 PM] Admininstration share access test:
[2:07:57 PM] OK
[2:07:57 PM] Service manager access test:
[2:08:04 PM] OK
[2:08:04 PM] Checking installed product version and features:
[2:08:06 PM] W2012R2-NODE3: Remote machine has different set of ESET product features installed. Product will be reinstalled.
[2:08:07 PM] W2012R2-NODE2: Install will be performed.
[2:08:08 PM] OK

Cluster wizard - Nodes install

When installing to a remote machine during ESET Cluster initialization, the wizard will attempt to locate the installer in the directory *%ProgramData%\ESET\ESET Security\Installer*. If the installer package is not found there, you will be asked to locate the installer file.

Nodes install and cluster activation   ⃝?

Product install log

Install

< Previous   Finish   Cancel

ⓘ When trying to use the automatic remote installation for a node with different architecture (32-bit versus 64-bit), this will be detected, and you will be prompted to perform manual installation.

Once you have correctly configured the ESET Cluster, it will appear in **Setup** > **Server** page as enabled.

> **i** If an older version of ESET Mail Security is already installed on some nodes, you will be notified that the latest version is required on these machines. Updating ESET Mail Security may cause an automatic restart.

Additionally, you can check its current status from the Cluster status page (**Tools** > **Cluster**).

ESET Shell

eShell (short for ESET Shell) is a command line interface for ESET Mail Security. It is an alternative to the graphical user interface (GUI). eShell includes all the features and options that the GUI normally gives you. eShell lets you configure and administer the whole program without using the GUI.

Apart from all the functions and features that are available in the GUI, it also provides you with the option of using automation by running scripts to configure, modify configuration or perform an action. Also, eShell can be useful for those who prefer to use the command line over the GUI.

> **i** We recommend you open the eShell using Run as Administrator for full functionality. The same applies to executing a single Windows Command Prompt (cmd) command. Open the prompt using **Run as Administrator**. Failing to run the command prompt as Administrator will stop you from running commands due to a lack of permissions.

There are two modes in which eShell can be run:

1. **Interactive mode** - This is useful when you want to work with eShell (not just execute a single command) for tasks such as changing configuration, viewing logs, etc. You can use Interactive mode if you are unfamiliar with all the commands. Interactive mode will make it easier for you when navigating through eShell. It also shows you available commands you can use within a specific context.

2. **Single command / Batch mode** - You can use this mode if you only need to execute a command without entering the Interactive mode of eShell. This can be done from the Windows Command Prompt by typing in `eshell` with the appropriate parameters.

> ✔ `eshell get status or eshell computer set real-time status disabled 1h`

To run certain commands (such as the second example above) in batch/script mode, there are a couple of settings that you need to <u>configure</u> first. Otherwise, you will get an **Access Denied** message. This is for security reasons.

> **i** Settings changes are required to use eShell commands from the Windows Command Prompt. Read more about <u>running batch files</u>.

There are two ways to enter an Interactive mode in eShell:

1. Via **Windows Start menu**: Start > All Programs > ESET > ESET Mail Security > ESET Shell

2. From **Windows Command Prompt** by typing in `eshell` and pressing the Enter key

> ⚠ If you get an error `'eshell' not recognized as an internal or external command`, this is due to new Environment Variables not being loaded by your system after installing ESET Mail Security. Open the new Command Prompt and try starting eShell again. If you are still getting an error or have a <u>Core installation</u> of ESET Mail Security, start eShell using absolute path, for example, `"%PROGRAMFILES%\ESET\ESET Mail Security\eShell.exe"` (you must use `""`for the command to work).

When you run eShell in Interactive mode for the first time, a first run (guide) screen will display.

> **i** If you want to display the first run screen in the future, type in the `guide` command. It shows you some basic examples of using eShell with Syntax, Prefix, Command path, Abbreviated forms, Aliases, etc.

Next time you run eShell, you will see this screen:

| i | Commands are not case-sensitive. You can use uppercase (capital) or lowercase letters; the command will execute regardless. |

Customizing eShell

You can customize eShell in `ui eshell` context. You can configure aliases, colors, language, execution policy for scripts, settings for hidden commands and more.

Usage

Syntax

Commands must be formatted in the correct syntax to function and can be composed of a prefix, context, arguments, options, etc. This is the general syntax used throughout eShell:

[<prefix>] [<command path>] <command> [<arguments>]

> ✓ Example (this activates document protection):
> `SET COMPUTER SCANS DOCUMENT REGISTER ENABLED`

`SET` - a prefix

`COMPUTER SCANS DOCUMENT` - path to a specific command, a context where this command belongs

`REGISTER` - the command itself

`ENABLED` - an argument for the command

Using `?` as an argument for command will display the syntax for that specific command. For example, `STATUS ?` will show you the syntax for `STATUS` command:

SYNTAX:

```
[get] status
```

OPERATIONS:

`get` - Show status of all protection modules

You may notice that `[get]` is in brackets. It designates that the prefix `get` is default for the `status` command. This means that when you execute `status` without specifying any prefix, it will actually use the default prefix (in this case `get status`). Using commands without a prefix saves time when typing. Usually `get` is the default prefix for most commands, but you need to be sure what the default prefix is for a specific command and that it is exactly what you want to execute.

> **i** Commands are not case-sensitive. You can use uppercase (capital) or lowercase letters; the command will execute regardless.

Prefix / Operation

A prefix is an operation. The `GET` prefix will give you information about how a certain feature of ESET Mail Security is configured or show you the status (such as `GET COMPUTER REAL-TIME STATUS` will show you current protection status of the Real-time module). The `SET` prefix will configure functionality or change its status (`SET COMPUTER REAL-TIME STATUS ENABLED` will activate Real-time protection).

These are the prefixes that eShell enables to use. A command may or may not support any of the prefixes:

GET	returns current setting/status
SET	sets value/status
SELECT	selects an item
ADD	adds an item
REMOVE	removes an item
CLEAR	removes all items/files
START	starts an action
STOP	stops an action
PAUSE	pauses an action
RESUME	resumes an action
RESTORE	restores default settings/object/file
SEND	sends an object/file
IMPORT	imports from a file
EXPORT	exports to a file

> **i** Prefixes such as `GET` and `SET` are used with many commands, but some commands (such as `EXIT`) do not use a prefix.

Command path / Context

Commands are placed in contexts which form a tree structure. The top level of the tree is root. When you run eShell, you are at the root level:

```
eShell>
```

You can execute a command from here or type the context name to navigate within the tree. For example, when you type the `TOOLS` context, it will list all commands and sub-contexts available.

```
eShell>tools
ACTIVITY           CLUSTER          DIAGNOSTICS      ECMD
ERA-TARGETS        LIVE-GRID        LOG              NOTIFICATIONS
PRESENTATION       PROXY            QUARANTINE       RUNNING-PROCESSES
SERVER-LIST        STATISTICS       STATUS           SUBMIT-FILE
SUBMIT-SITE        SYSINSPECTOR     SYSTEM-UPDATES   WMI

eShell tools>_
```

Yellow items are commands you can execute and grey items are sub-contexts you can enter. A sub-context contain further commands.

If you need to return back to a higher level, use `..` (two dots).

> ✓ Say you are here:
> `eShell computer real-time>`
> type `..` to go up one level, to:
> `eShell computer>`

If you want to get back to root from `eShell computer real-time>` (which is two levels lower than root), simply type `.. ..` (two dots and two dots separated by space). By doing so, you will get two levels up, which is root in this case. Use backslash `\` to return directly to root from any level no matter how deep within the context tree you are. If you want to get to a specific context in upper levels, simply use the appropriate number of `..` commands to get to the desired level, using space as a separator. For example, if you want to get three levels higher, use `.. .. ..`

The path is relative to the current context. Do not type a path if the command is contained in the current context. For example, to execute `GET COMPUTER REAL-TIME STATUS` enter:

`GET COMPUTER STATUS` - If you are in the root context (command line shows `eShell>`)

`GET STATUS` - If you are in the context `COMPUTER` (command line shows `eShell computer>`)

`.. GET STATUS` - If you are in the context `COMPUTER REAL-TIME` (command line shows `eShell computer real-time>`)

You can use single `.` (dot) instead of two `..` because single dot is an abbreviation of two dots.

Argument

An argument is an action that is performed for a specific command. For example, the command `CLEAN-LEVEL` (located in `COMPUTER REAL-TIME ENGINE`) can be used with the following arguments:

`rigorous` - Always remedy detection

`safe` - Remedy detection if safe, keep otherwise

`normal` - Remedy detection if safe, ask otherwise

`none` - Always ask the end user

Another example is the arguments `ENABLED` or `DISABLED`, which enable or disable a certain feature or functionality.

Abbreviated form / Shortened commands

eShell enable you to shorten contexts, commands and arguments (provided the argument is a switch or an alternative option). You cannot shorten a prefix or argument with concrete values such as a number, name or path. You can use numbers `1` and `0` instead of enabled and disabled arguments.

> ✓ `computer set real-time status enabled     =>        com set real stat 1`
> `computer set real-time status disabled    =>        com set real stat 0`

Examples of the short form:

> ✓ `computer set real-time status enabled      =>        com set real stat en`
> `computer exclusions add detection-excludes object C:\path\file.ext      =>      com excl add det obj C:\path\file.ext`
> `computer exclusions remove detection-excludes 1       =>         com excl rem det 1`

If two commands or contexts start with the same letters (such as `ADVANCED` and `AUTO-EXCLUSIONS`, and you type `A` as shortened context), eShell will not be able to decide which context of these two you want to type. An error message will display and list commands starting with `A` which you can choose from:

`eShell>a`

The following command is not unique: `a`

The following sub-contexts are available in `COMPUTER` context:

`ADVANCED`

`AUTO-EXCLUSIONS`

By adding one or more letter (for example `AD` instead of just `A`) eShell will enter `ADVANCED` sub-context since it is unique now. The same applies to abbreviated commands.

> ℹ When you want to be sure that a command executes the way you need, we recommend that you do not abbreviate commands, arguments, etc. and use the full form. This way, eShell will execute exactly what you need and prevent unwanted mistakes. This is especially true for batch files/scripts.

Automatic completion

This new feature was introduced in eShell 2.0 and is similar to automatic completion in Windows Command Prompt. While Windows Command Prompt completes file paths, eShell completes commands, context and operation names. Argument completion is not supported.

Press Tab to complete or cycle through available variations when typing a command.

Press SHIFT + Tab to cycle backward. Mixing abbreviated forms and automatic completion is not supported. Use either one or the other.

For example, when you type `computer real-time additional` hitting Tab will do nothing. Instead, type `com` and then Tab to complete `computer`, continue typing `real` + Tab, and `add` + Tab, hit Enter. Type `on` + Tab and continue hitting Tab to cycle through all available variations: `on-execute-ah, on-execute-ah-removable, on-write-ah, on-write-archive-default,` etc.

Aliases

An alias is an alternative name that can be used to execute a command (provided that the command has an alias assigned). There are a few default aliases:

`(global) close` - exit

`(global) quit` - exit

`(global) bye` - exit

`warnlog` - tools log events

`virlog` - tools log detections

`(global)` The command can be used anywhere, regardless of the current context. One command can have multiple aliases assigned. For example, the command `EXIT` has aliases `CLOSE`, `QUIT` and `BYE`. When you want to exit eShell, you can use the `EXIT` command or any of its aliases.

The alias `VIRLOG` is an alias for the command `DETECTIONS` located in the `TOOLS LOG` context. This way, the detections command is available from the `ROOT` context, making it easier to access (you do not have to type `TOOLS` and then `LOG` sub-context and run it directly from `ROOT`).

eShell enables you to define your aliases. Command `ALIAS` can be found in `UI ESHELL` context.

Password protected settings

ESET Mail Security settings can be protected by a password. You can set a [password using GUI](#) or eShell using the `set ui access lock-password`.

You must type this password interactively for certain commands (such as changing settings or modifying data). If you plan to work with eShell for a longer period and do not want to type the password repeatedly, you can get eShell to remember the password using the `set password` command (execute from `root`). Your password will then be filled in automatically for each executed command that requires a password. It is remembered until you exit eShell; you must use the `set password` again when you start a new session and want eShell to remember it.

Guide / Help

When you run the GUIDE or HELP command, it will display a "first run" screen explaining how to use eShell. This command is available only from the ROOT context (eShell>).

Command history

eShell keeps a history of previously executed commands. This applies only to the current eShell interactive session. Once you exit eShell, the command history will be dropped. Use your keyboard's Up and Down arrow keys to navigate the history. When you find the command you were looking for, you can execute it again or modify it without typing in the entire command from the beginning.

CLS / Clear screen

The CLS command can be used to clear the screen. It works the same way with Windows Command Prompt or similar command line interfaces.

EXIT / CLOSE / QUIT / BYE

To close or exit eShell, you can use any of these commands (EXIT, CLOSE, QUIT or BYE).

Commands

This section lists a few basic eShell commands with descriptions.

> **i** Commands are not case-sensitive. You can use uppercase (capital) or lowercase letters; the command will execute regardless.

Example commands (contained within the ROOT context):

ABOUT

Lists information about the program. It shows information such as:

- Name of your ESET security product installed and its version number.

- Operating system and basic hardware details.

- Username (including domain), Full computer name (FQDN, if your server is a member of a domain) and Seat name.

- Installed components of your ESET security product, including the version number of each component.

CONTEXT PATH:

root

PASSWORD

To execute password-protected commands, you are prompted to type in a password for security reasons. This applies to commands that disable protection and those that may affect ESET Mail Security configuration. You will

be prompted for a password every time you execute such a command. You can define this password to avoid entering a password every time. It will be remembered by eShell and automatically entered when a password-protected command is executed.

> ℹ Your password only works for the current eShell interactive session. This defined password will be dropped when you exit eShell. When you start eShell again, the password needs to be defined again.

Defined password can also be used when running unsigned batch files or scripts. Make sure to set ESET Shell execution policy to Full access when running unsigned batch files. Here is an example of such a batch file:

```
eshell set password plain <yourpassword> "&" computer set real-time status disabled
```

This concatenated command above defines a password and disables protection.

> ⚠ We recommend that you use signed batch files whenever you can. This way, you will avoid plain text passwords in the batch file (if the method is described above). See Batch files / Scripting (Signed batch files section) for more details.

CONTEXT PATH:

```
root
```

SYNTAX:

```
[get] | restore password

set password [plain <password>]
```

OPERATIONS:

`get` - Show password

`set` - Set or clear password

`restore` - Clear password

ARGUMENTS:

`plain` - Switch to type password as parameter

`password` - Password

> ✔ `set password plain <yourpassword>` - Sets a password which will be used for password-protected commands
> `restore password` - Clears password

> ✔ `get password` - Use this to see whether the password is configured or not (this only shows asterisks `"*"`, it does not list the password itself), when no asterisks are visible, it means that there is no password set
> `set password plain <yourpassword>` - Use this to set a defined password
> `restore password` - This command clears the defined password

STATUS

Shows information about the current Real-time protection status of ESET Mail Security and enables you to pause /

resume protection (similar to main program window).

CONTEXT PATH:

`computer real-time`

SYNTAX:

`[get] status`

`set status enabled | disabled  [ 10m | 30m | 1h | 4h | temporary ]`

`restore status`

OPERATIONS:

`get` - Returns current setting/status

`set` - Sets value/status

`restore` - Restores default settings/object/file

ARGUMENTS:

`enabled` - Enable protection/feature

`disabled` - Disable protection/feature

`10m` - Disable for 10 minutes

`30m` - Disable for 30 minutes

`1h` - Disable for 1 hour

`4h` - Disable for 4 hours

`temporary` - Disable until reboot

> i   You cannot disable all protection features with a single command. Using the `status` command, you can manage protection features and modules one by one. Each protection feature or module has its `status` command.

List of features with `status` command:

Feature	Context and command
Automatic exclusions	`COMPUTER AUTO-EXCLUSIONS STATUS`
Host Intrusion Prevention System (HIPS)	`COMPUTER HIPS STATUS`
Real-time file system protection	`COMPUTER REAL-TIME STATUS`
Device control	`DEVICE STATUS`
Botnet protection	`NETWORK ADVANCED STATUS-BOTNET`
Network attack protection (IDS)	`NETWORK ADVANCED STATUS-IDS`
Network isolation	`NETWORK ADVANCED STATUS-ISOLATION`
ESET Cluster	`TOOLS CLUSTER STATUS`

Feature	Context and command
Diagnostic logging	`TOOLS DIAGNOSTICS STATUS`
Presentation mode	`TOOLS PRESENTATION STATUS`
Anti-Phishing protection	`WEB-AND-EMAIL ANTIPHISHING STATUS`
Email client protection	`WEB-AND-EMAIL MAIL-CLIENT STATUS`
Web access protection	`WEB-AND-EMAIL WEB-ACCESS STATUS`

VIRLOG

This is an alias of the `DETECTIONS` command. It is useful when you need to view information about detected infiltrations.

WARNLOG

This is an alias of the `EVENTS` command. It is useful when you need to view information about various events.

Keyboard shortcuts

The eShell supports keyboard shortcuts (similar to Microsoft Windows *cmd.exe* command prompt). Use certain keys (key combinations) on your keyboard to perform actions in eShell. For example, show the history of commands, repeat part of the history command, move a word or erase a line.

Available shortcuts:

F1 - print characters of the actual history command one by one.

F2, X - repeat part of the history command; up to character X.

F3 - write actual history command.

F4, X - beginning from the current cursor position on the actual command; delete up to character X.

F5 - the same as the UP ARROW.

F7 - show the history of commands.

ALT + F7 - clear command history.

F8 - Move backward through the command history, but only display commands matching the current text at the command prompt.

F9 - run a specific command from the command history.

RIGHT ARROW - the same as F1.

CTRL + HOME - erase line to the left.

CTRL + END - erase line to the right.

CTRL + LEFT ARROW - move one word to the left.

CTRL + RIGHT ARROW - move one word to the right.

79

Batch files / Scripting

You can use eShell as a powerful scripting tool for automation. To use a batch file with eShell, create one with an eShell and command in it.

```
eshell get computer real-time status
```

You can also chain commands, which is sometimes necessary. For instance, if you want to type a specific scheduled task, type the following:

```
eshell select scheduler task 4 "&" get scheduler action
```

Item selection (task number 4 in this case) usually applies only to a currently running eShell instance. If you were to run these two commands one after the other, the second command would fail with the error `"No task selected or selected task no longer exists"`.

The execution policy is set to **Limited Scripting** by default for security reasons. It enables you to use eShell as a monitoring tool, but it will not let you make configuration changes to ESET Mail Security by running a script. If you try executing a script with commands that can affect security, for example, by disabling protection, an **Access Denied** message will be displayed. We recommend you use signed batch files to execute commands that make configuration changes.

To change configuration using a single command entered manually in the Windows Command Prompt, you must grant eShell full access (not recommended). To grant full access, use `ui eshell shell-execution-policy` in the Interactive mode of eShell itself or via the main program window in **Advanced Setup** (**F5**)> **User interface** > ESET Shell.

Signed batch files

eShell enables you to secure common batch files (*.bat*) with a signature. Scripts are signed with the same password that is used for settings protection. To sign a script you need to enable settings protection first. This can be done via the main program window or within eShell using `set ui access lock-password` command. You can start signing batch files when the protection password is set up.

> **i** You must sign all scripts again if you change your settings protection password. Otherwise, the scripts will fail to execute following the password change. The password entered when signing a script must match the settings protection password on the target system.

To sign a batch file, run `sign <script.bat>` from the root context of eShell, where *script.bat* is the path to the script you want to sign. Type and confirm the password that will be used for signing. This password must match your settings protection password. A signature is placed at the end of the batch file in the form of a comment. If this script has already been signed, the signature will be replaced with a new one.

> **i** When you modify a previously signed batch file, it must be signed again.

To execute a signed batch file from a Windows Command Prompt or as a scheduled task, use following command:

```
eshell run <script.bat>
```

Where *script.bat* is the path to the batch file.

```
eshell run d:\myeshellscript.bat
```

ESET LiveGuard Advanced

ESET LiveGuard Advanced provides another layer of security by utilizing advanced ESET Cloud-based technology to detect new, never-before-seen threats. It is a paid service, and while it is similar to ESET LiveGrid®, ESET LiveGuard Advanced gives you the advantage of being protected against possible consequences caused by new threats. If ESET LiveGuard Advanced detects suspicious code or behavior, it prevents further threat activity by temporarily putting it into the ESET LiveGuard Advanced quarantine.

A suspicious sample (file or email message) is automatically submitted to the ESET Cloud, where the ESET LiveGuard Advanced server analyzes the sample using its cutting-edge malware detection engines. While files or emails are in the ESET LiveGuard Advanced quarantine, ESET Mail Security is waiting for the results from ESET LiveGuard Advanced server.

After completing the analysis, your ESET Mail Security receives a report with a summary of the observed sample's behavior. If the sample proves harmless, it is released from the ESET LiveGuard Advanced quarantine; otherwise, it is kept in quarantine. If it is a false positive, and you are sure the file or email is not a threat, you can manually release it from the ESET LiveGuard Advanced quarantine before ESET Mail Security receives the ESET LiveGuard Advanced server results.

ESET LiveGuard Advanced results for samples usually arrive within a few minutes for email messages. However, the default waiting interval is set to 5 minutes. In a rare cases, when ESET LiveGuard Advanced results do not arrive within the interval, the message is released. You can change the interval to your preferred time (anything between 5 to 60 minutes, in 1 minute increments).

ESET LiveGuard Advanced feature is visible in ESET Mail Security regardless of its activation status. If you do not have a license, ESET LiveGuard Advanced is inactive. ESET LiveGuard Advanced license is managed by ESET PROTECT and the activation itself must be performed from ESET PROTECT using a policy.

Once you have ESET LiveGuard Advanced activated, your own ESET LiveGuard Advanced profile will be created on the ESET LiveGuard Advanced server. This profile will store all of the ESET LiveGuard Advanced analysis results of samples submitted by your ESET Mail Security.

To get the ESET LiveGuard Advanced feature working, you must meet the following:

ESET Mail Security managed via ESET PROTECT

ESET Mail Security activated using ESET LiveGuard Advanced license

Enable ESET LiveGuard Advanced in your ESET Mail Security using ESET PROTECT policy

You are then able to take the full advantage of ESET LiveGuard Advanced, as well as, manually submit a sample file for ESET LiveGuard Advanced analysis.

ESET SysInspector

ESET SysInspector is an application that thoroughly inspects your computer, gathers detailed information about system components such as installed drivers and applications, network connections or important registry entries and assesses the risk level of each component.

This information can help determine the cause of suspicious system behavior that may be due to software or hardware incompatibility or malware infection.

Click **Create** and type a short **Comment** describing the log to be created. Wait until the ESET SysInspector log is generated (status will be shown as Created). Log creation may take time, depending on your hardware configuration and system data.

The ESET SysInspector window displays the following information about created logs:

- **Time** - The time of log creation.

- **Comment** - A short comment.

- **User** - The name of the user who created the log.

- **Status** - The status of log creation.

The following actions are available:

- **Show** - Opens the created log. You can also right-click a log and select **Show** from the context menu.

- **Create** - Creates a new log. Type a short comment describing the log to be created and click **Create**. Wait until the ESET SysInspector log is complete (**Status** will be shown as Created).

- **Delete** - Removes selected logs from the list.

After right-clicking one or more selected logs, the following options are available from the context menu:

- **Show** - Opens the selected log in ESET SysInspector (same function as double-clicking a log).

- **Create** - Creates a new log. Type a short comment describing the log to be created and click **Create**. Wait until the ESET SysInspector log is complete (**Status** will be shown as Created).

- **Delete** - Removes selected logs from the list.

- **Delete all** - Deletes all logs.

- **Export** - Exports the log to *.esil* file. Alternatively, choose a *.xml* file or zipped *.xml*.

ESET SysRescue Live

ESET SysRescue Live is a free utility that enables you to create a bootable rescue CD/DVD or USB drive. You can boot an infected computer from your rescue media, scan for malware, and clean infected files.

The main advantage of ESET SysRescue Live is that the ESET Security solution runs independent of the host operating system but has direct access to the disk and file system. It enables it to remove threats that normally could not be deleted (for example, when the operating system is running, etc.).

Scheduler

Scheduler manages and launches scheduled tasks according to defined parameters. You can see a list of all scheduled tasks in the form of a table which shows their parameters such as Task type and name, the launch time and last run when it was performed. You can also create new scheduled tasks by clicking Add task. To edit the configuration of an existing scheduled task click **Edit** button. Revert the list of scheduled tasks to the default settings, click **Default** and than **Revert to default** all changes that have been made will be lost and cannot be undone.

There is a set of pre-defined default tasks:

- Log maintenance

- Regular automatic update (use this task to update frequency)

- Automatic update after dial-up connection

- Automatic update after user login

- Automatic startup file check (after user logs in)

- Automatic startup file check (after successful modules update)

| i | Select the appropriate check boxes to activate or deactivate tasks. |
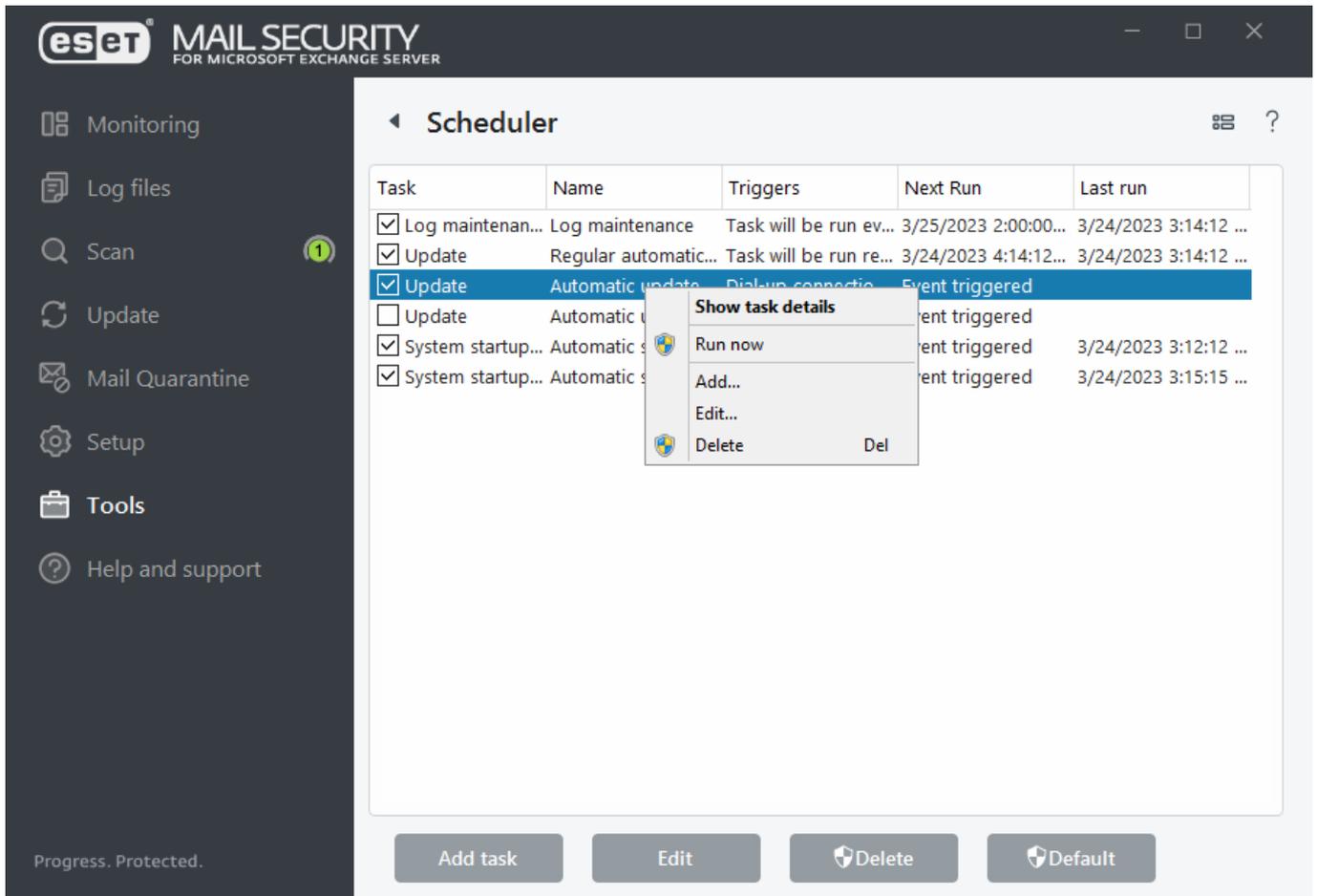
To perform the following actions, right-click a task:

Show task details	Displays detailed information about a scheduled task when you double-click or right-click the scheduled task.
Run now	Runs a selected scheduler task and perform the task immediately.
Add...	Launches a wizard that will help you create a new scheduler task.
Edit...	Edit the configuration of an existing scheduled task (both default and user-defined).
Delete	Deletes an existing task.

Scheduler - Add task

To create a new scheduled task:

1. Click **Add task**.

2. Type a **Task name** and configure your custom scheduled task.

3. Task type - Select the applicable **Task type** from drop-down menu.
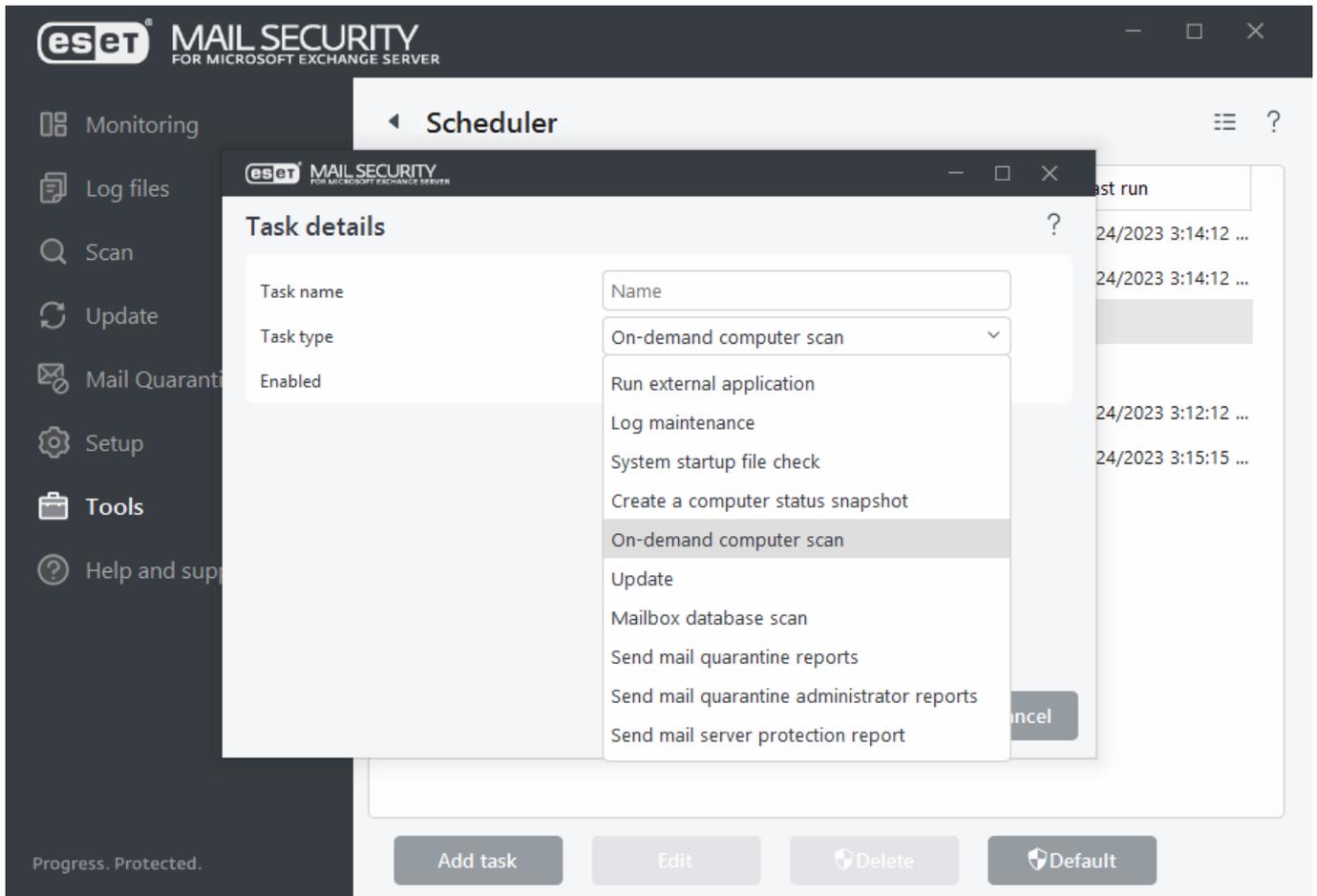
> ℹ To deactivate a task, click the slide bar next to **Enabled**. To activate the task later, use the check box in the Scheduler view.

4. Task execution - Select one of the options to define when you want your task to run. Depending on your choice, you will be prompted to choose a specific time, day, interval or an event.
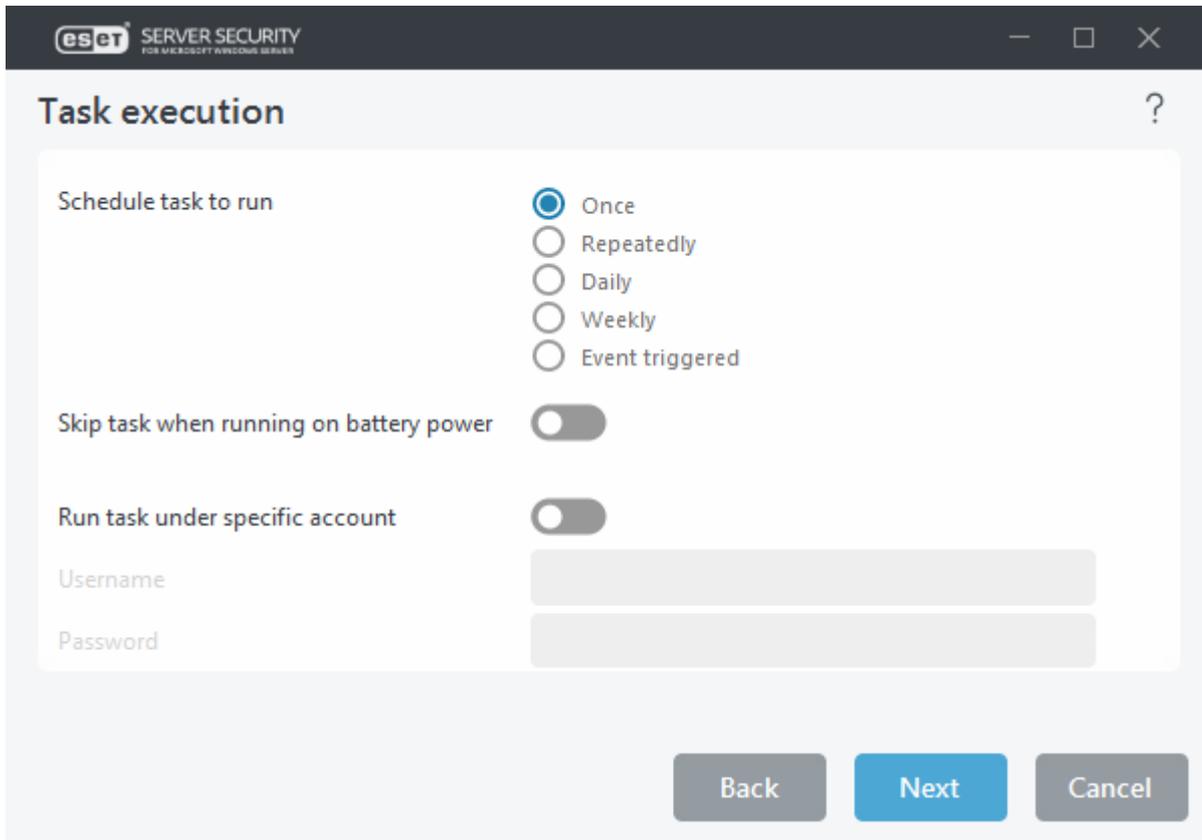
5. Skipped task - If the task could not be run at the pre-defined time, you can specify when it will be performed.
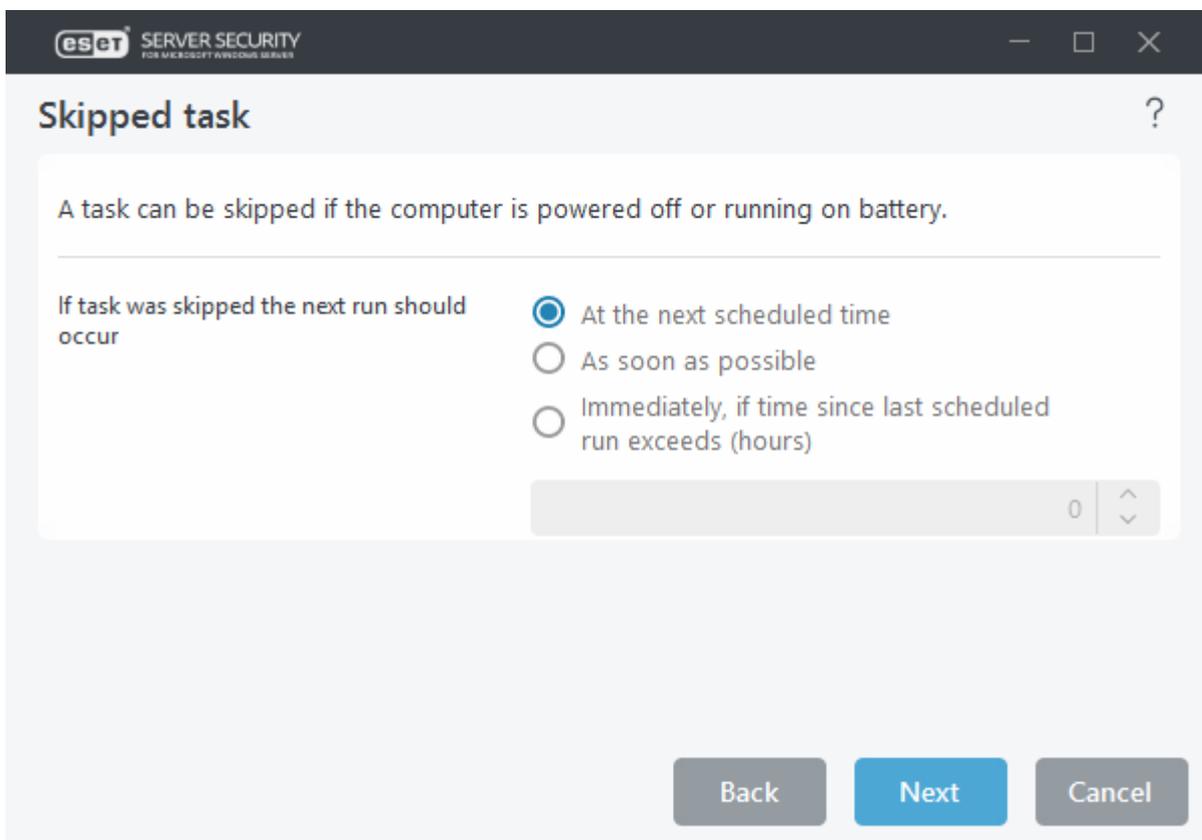
6. Run application - If the task is scheduled to run an external application, choose an executable file from the directory tree.

7. If you need to make changes, click **Back** to return to previous step(s) and modify parameters.

8. Click **Finish** to create the task or apply changes.

The new scheduled task will appear in the Scheduler view.

Task type

The configuration wizard is different for each Task type of a scheduled task. Type **Task name** and select your desired **Task type** from the drop-down menu:

- **Run external application** - Schedules the execution of an external application. You can use specific account to run the scheduled task as (Run task under specific account option).

- **Log maintenance** - Log files also contains leftovers from deleted records. This task optimizes records in log files on a regular basis to work effectively.

- **System startup file check** - Checks files that are allowed to run at system startup or login.

- **Create a computer status snapshot** - Creates an ESET SysInspector computer snapshot - gathers detailed information about system components (for example, drivers, applications) and assesses the risk level of each component.

- **On-demand computer scan** - Scan files and folders stored locally or on a network share (shared storage, such as NAS). Use specific account to run the scheduled task as (Run task under specific account option).

- **Update** - Schedules an update task to perform an update of detection engine and program modules.

- **Mailbox database scan** - Lets you schedule a database scan and choose items that will be scanned. It is basically an On-demand database scan.

> i If you have Mailbox database protection enabled, you can still schedule this task, but the error message Mailbox database scan - Scan interrupted because of an error will be displayed in the Scan section of the main program window. To prevent this, ensure that Mailbox database protection is disabled during the time that Mailbox Database scan is scheduled to run.

- **Send mail quarantine reports** - Schedules a Mail Quarantine report to be sent via email.

- **Send mail quarantine administrator reports** - Schedules a Mail Quarantine report to be sent via email.

- **Send mail server protection report** - Schedules a Mail server protection report.

- **Background scan** - Allows Exchange Server an opportunity to run database background scan if needed.

- **Hyper-V scan** - Schedules a scan of the virtual disks within Hyper-V.

- **Office 365 scan** - Schedules a scan for Office 365 Hybrid environments.

To deactivate a task once it is created, click the switch next to **Enabled**. To activate the task later, click the check box in the Scheduler view. Click **Next** to proceed to the next step.

Task execution

Select one of the following timing options:

- **Once** - The task will be performed only once at specified date and time. To run the task one time only, at a given moment. Specify the start date and time for one-time in **Task execution**.

- **Repeatedly** - The task will be performed at the specified time interval (in minutes). Specify the time at which the task will be executed every day in **Task execution**.

- **Daily** - The task will run repeatedly every day at the specified time.

- **Weekly** - The task will run one or more times a week, on the selected day(s) and time. To run the task repeatedly only in certain days of the week starting with specified day and time. Specify the start time in the Time of task execution. Select the day or days of week on which the task should be run.

- Event triggered - The task will be performed after a specified event.

Skip task when running on battery power - When enabled, the task will not start if the system runs on batteries at the time the task should launch (for example, computers running on UPS).

Run task under specific account - Set username and password of a specific account to run scheduled task **Run external application** or **On-demand computer scan**. Use it to run **On-demand computer scan** if you want to scan network share, for example, NAS or other shared storage.

> **i** Ensure the user account you are using to **Run task under specific account** is allowed to **Log on as a batch job** (SeBatchLogonRight). You can check the Policy Settings using Group Policy Management tool (Security Settings > Local Policies > User Rights Assignment > Log on as a batch job).

Event triggered

When scheduling a task triggered by an event, you can specify the minimum interval between two completions of the task.

Any of the following events can trigger the task:

- Every time the computer starts

- The first time the computer starts each day

- Dial-up connection to the Internet/VPN

- Successful module update

- Successful product update

- User login - The task will deploy when the user logs on to the system. If you log in to your computer several times a day, and choose 24 hours to perform the task only on the first login of the day and then the next day.

- Threat detection

Run application

This task schedules the execution of an external application.

- **Executable file** - Choose an executable file from the directory tree, click browse or type the path manually.

- **Work folder** - Define the external application's working directory. All temporary files of the selected Executable file will be created within this directory.

- **Parameters** - Command line parameters for the application (optional).

Skipped task

If the task could not be run at the pre-defined time, you can specify when it will be performed:

- **At the next scheduled time** - The task will be executed at the specified time (for example, after 24 hours).

- **As soon as possible** - The task will run as soon as possible when the actions that prevent the task from executing are no longer valid.

- **Immediately, if the time since the last run exceeds a specified value** - Time since the last run (hours). After you select this option, your task will always be repeated after the specified amount of time (in hours).

Mail server protection report

The mail server protection report keeps you informed with an overview of ESET Mail Security protection statistics. Statistical reports contain information about the number of scanned emails, detected malware, phishing, and spam for the specified period. The report is generated based on the scheduled task and emailed to selected recipients as an attachment in HTML format. The HTML output presents data in a graph form, shows the long-term average for comparison, and includes traffic information for each protection type, top recipients of malware, phishing, and spam.

Use the scheduler to generate the mail server protection report on a specified date and time, as well as a recurring event. Scheduled reports are delivered to selected email recipients who will be receiving the reports.

Navigate to **Tools** > **Scheduler** and click **Add task** to the wizard.

Type the **Task name**, select **Task type** from the drop-down menu and choose **Mail server protection report task** type.

- **Report name** - Type report name.

- **Time range** - Select one of the options as a period for which the report will be generated.

- **Recipients** - Specify users who will be receiving mail server protection report. Click **Edit** to enter the mailboxes for specific recipients (linked mailboxes are also supported). Specify the report recipient's email address, hit enter to confirm. Repeat to add multiple recipients.

- **Sender address** - Specify an email address which to display as a sender of the mail server protection report

(for example administrator@mydomain.com).

- **Report language** - Choose desired language from the drop-down menu. The report will be generated in the selected language.

Click **Finish**.

Scheduled task overview

This dialog window displays detailed information about a scheduled task when you double-click the task in the **Scheduler view** or right-click the scheduled task and choose **Show task details**.

Submit samples for analysis

The sample submission dialog lets you send a file or site to ESET for analysis. If you find a suspiciously behaving file on your computer or a suspicious site online, submit it to the ESET virus Lab for analysis. If the file turns out to be a malicious application or website, the detection will be added to an upcoming update.

To submit the file by email, compress the file(s) using a program like WinRAR or WinZip, protect the archive with the password `infected` and send it to samples@eset.com. Use a descriptive subject and enclose as much information about the file as possible (for example, the website you downloaded it from).

> i Before submitting a sample to ESET, verify it meets one or both of the following criteria:
> - the file or website is not detected at all
> - the file or website is incorrectly detected as a threat
> - We do not accept your personal files (that you would like to scan for malware by ESET) as samples (ESET Research Lab does not perform on-demand scans for users)
> - Use a descriptive subject line and enclose as much information about the file as possible (for example, a screenshot or the website you downloaded it from)

If at least one of the requirements above is not met, you will not receive a response until further information is supplied.

Select the description that best fits your message from the **Reason for submitting the sample** drop-down menu:

- Suspicious file

- Suspicious site (a website that is infected by malware)

- False positive file (a file that is detected as infected, but it is not)

- False positive site

- Other

File/Site

The path to the file or website you intend to submit.

Contact email

This contact email is sent along with suspicious files to ESET, and may be used to contact you if further information is required for analysis. Type a contact email is optional. You will not get a response from ESET, unless more information is required. This is because our servers receive tens of thousands of files every day, which makes it impossible to reply to all submissions.

Submit anonymously

Use the check box next to **Submit anonymously** to send suspicious file or website without entering your email address.

Suspicious file

Observed signs and symptoms of malware infection

Type a description of the suspicious file behavior observed on your computer.

File origin (URL address or vendor)

Type the file origin (source) and how you encountered this file.

Notes and additional information

Here you can type additional info or a description that will help identify the suspicious file.

> **i** The first parameter - **Observed signs and symptoms of malware infection** - is required, but providing additional information will significantly help our laboratories with the identification process of samples.

Suspicious site

Select one of the following from the What's wrong with the site drop-down menu:

Infected

A website that contains viruses or other malware distributed by various methods.

Phishing

Often used to gain access to sensitive data such as bank account numbers, PIN numbers and more. Read more about this type of attack in the glossary.

Scam

A swindle or a fraudulent website.

Other

Use this option if none of the options above apply to the site you are going to submit.

Notes and additional information

You can type further information or a description that might help analyzing the suspicious website.

False positive file

We request that you submit files that are detected as an infection but are not infected to improve our detection engine and help others to be protected. False positives (FP) may occur when a pattern of a file matches the same pattern contained in a detection engine.

> **i** The first three parameters are required to identify legitimate applications and distinguish them from malicious code. By providing additional information, you will help our laboratories significantly in the identification process and in the processing of samples.

Application name and version

Program title and its version (for example number, alias or code name).

File origin (URL address or vendor)

Type a file origin (source) and note how you encountered this file.

Application's purpose

The general application description, type of application (for example, browser, media player, ...) and its functionality.

Notes and additional information

Here you can add additional information or descriptions that will help while processing the suspicious file.

False positive site

We encourage you to submit sites that are detected as an infected, scam or phishing sites but are not. False positives (FP) may occur when a pattern of a site matches the same pattern contained in a detection engine. Please provide this website to improve our detection engine and help others to be protected.

Notes and additional information

You can add additional information or descriptions that will help while processing the suspicious file.

Other

Use this form if the file cannot be categorized as a Suspicious file or False positive.

Reason for submitting the file

Type a detailed description and the reason for sending the file.

Quarantine

The main function of the quarantine is to safely store infected files. Files should be quarantined if they cannot be cleaned, if it is not safe or advisable to delete them, or if they are being falsely detected by ESET Mail Security. You can choose to quarantine any file. This is advisable if a file behaves suspiciously but is not detected by the malware scanner. Quarantined files can be submitted for analysis to the ESET virus Lab.
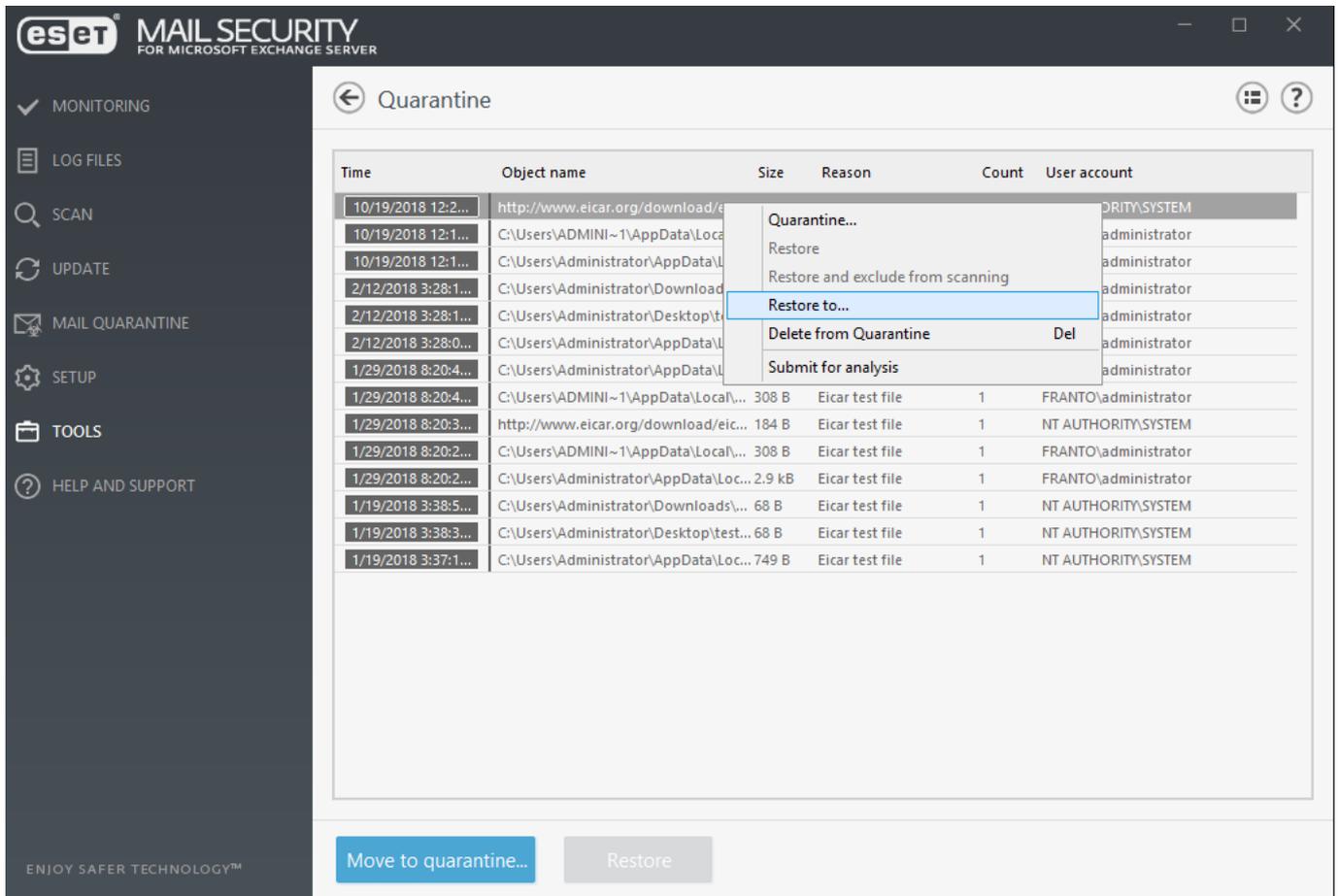
Files stored in the quarantine folder can be viewed in a table that displays: the date and time of quarantine, the path to the original location of the infected file, its size in bytes, reason (for example, object added by user), and number of threats (for example, if it is an archive containing multiple infiltrations).

In the event an email message objects are put into the file quarantine, a path to the mailbox/folder/filename is displayed.

Quarantining files

ESET Mail Security automatically quarantines deleted files (if you have not disabled this option in the alert window). To manually quarantine any suspicious file, click **Quarantine**. Quarantined files will be removed from their original location. The context menu can also be used for this purpose; right-click in the **Quarantine** window and select **Quarantine**.

Restoring from Quarantine

Quarantined files can also be restored to their original location. Use the **Restore** feature, available from the context menu by right-clicking a given file in the quarantine window. If a file is marked as a potentially unwanted application, the **Restore and exclude from scanning** option will be available. The context menu also offers the

Restore to option, which enables you to restore a file to a location other than the one from which it was deleted.

> ⓘ If the program quarantines a harmless file by mistake, exclude the file from scanning after restoring it and send the file to ESET Customer Care.

Submitting a file from the Quarantine

If you have quarantined a suspicious file that was not detected by the program, or if a file was determined to be infected incorrectly (for example, by heuristic analysis of the code) and subsequently quarantined, send the file to the ESET virus Lab. To submit a file from quarantine, right-click the file and select Submit for analysis from the context menu.

Deleting from Quarantine

Right-click a given item and select **Delete from Quarantine**. Or select the applicable item(s) and press **Delete** on your keyboard.

Microsoft 365 mailbox scan wizard

ESET Mail Security supports scanning Microsoft 365 remote mailboxes and public folders like a traditional On-demand mailbox database scan. To activate this feature, register your ESET Mail Security scanner.

Quick links:

- Register your ESET Mail Security scanner

- Unregister your ESET Mail Security scanner

To start using your ESET Mail Security Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan, Register the ESET Mail Security scanner application in Microsoft Azure. The Microsoft 365 mailbox scan setup page shows you registration status, and if already registered, you will see registration details (Tenant ID, Application ID, Object ID and Certificate thumbprint). You can Register or Unregister your ESET Mail Security scanner:

Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan setup

ESET Mail Security Scanner Microsoft Azure application
Status: Not registered

Register
Register the ESET Mail Security Scanner application to Microsoft Azure to activate the Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan.

Tenant ID
n/a

Application ID
n/a

Object ID
n/a

Certificate thumbprint
n/a

Unregister
Unregister the ESET Mail Security Scanner application from Microsoft Azure. This procedure will deactivate the Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan.

After successful registration, Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan will become available in the Scan menu displaying a list of mailboxes (and public folders) that can be selected for scanning.

> Re-register with a different account: If you want to register your ESET Mail Security scanner with a new Microsoft 365 account, you must Unregister the ESET Mail Security scanner you were using with your previous account, and register the new Microsoft 365 administrator account.

You can find your ESET Mail Security scanner registered as an application in Microsoft Azure. Click **Azure Active Directory** > **App registrations**, click **View all applications**, you will find the ESET Mail Security scanner app listed. Click the app to see its details.

Register ESET Mail Security scanner

Use the following process to register the ESET Mail Security scanner app to Microsoft Azure to activate Microsoft 365 mailbox database scan:

1. Click **Register** to begin ESET Mail Security scanner registration, and a registration wizard opens.

2. Copy the code provided, click the **Open authentication page** and enter the code.

3. A web browser with Microsoft's **Pick an account** page opens. If available, click the account you are using, or enter your Microsoft 365 administrator account credentials and click **Sign in**.

4. The ESET Mail Security scanner app requires three types of permissions listed in the acceptance message. Click **Accept** to allow ESET Mail Security scanner to access your Microsoft 365 data.
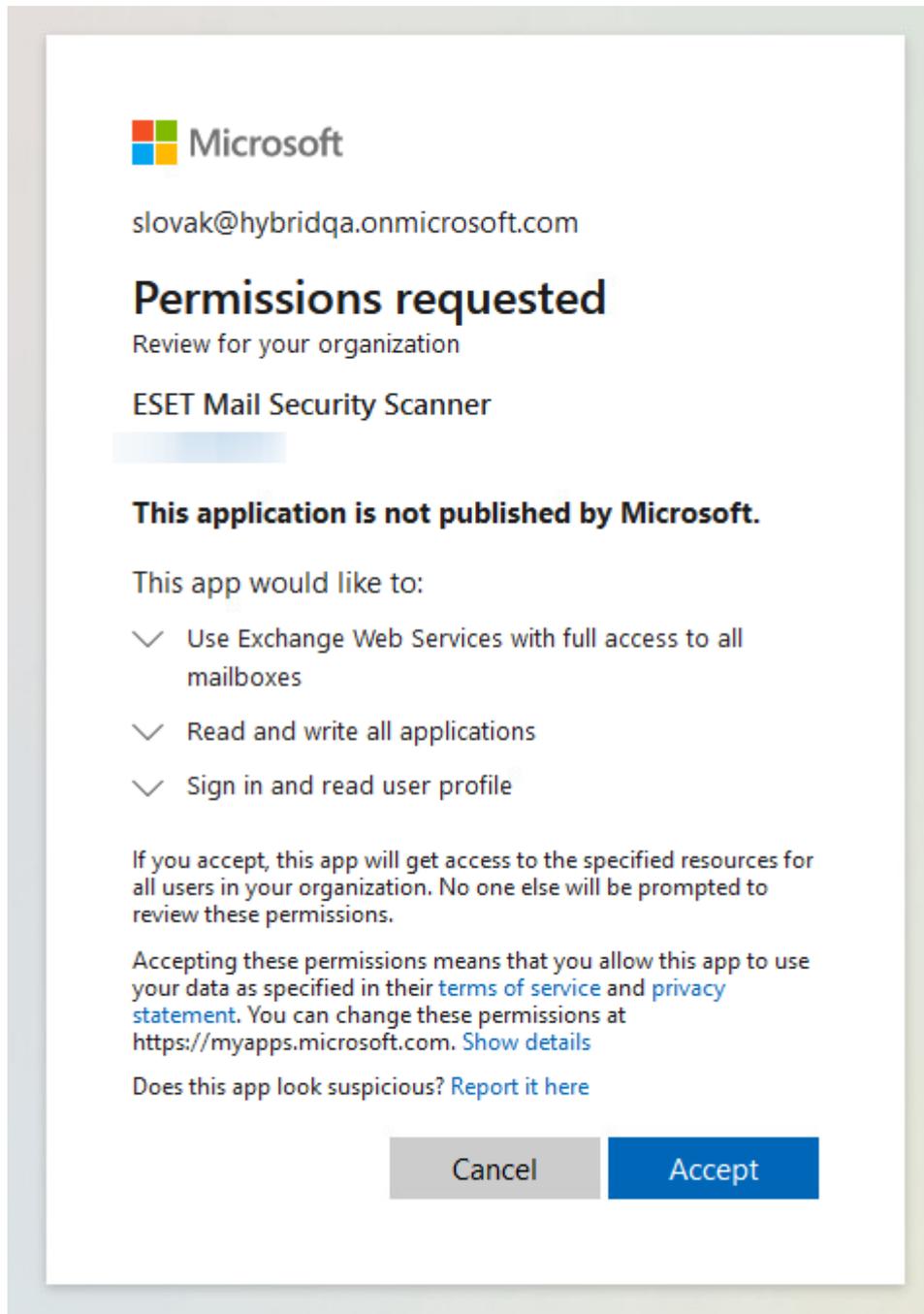
5. Close the web browser and wait for the ESET Mail Security scanner registration to complete. You will see the **Registration was successful** message.
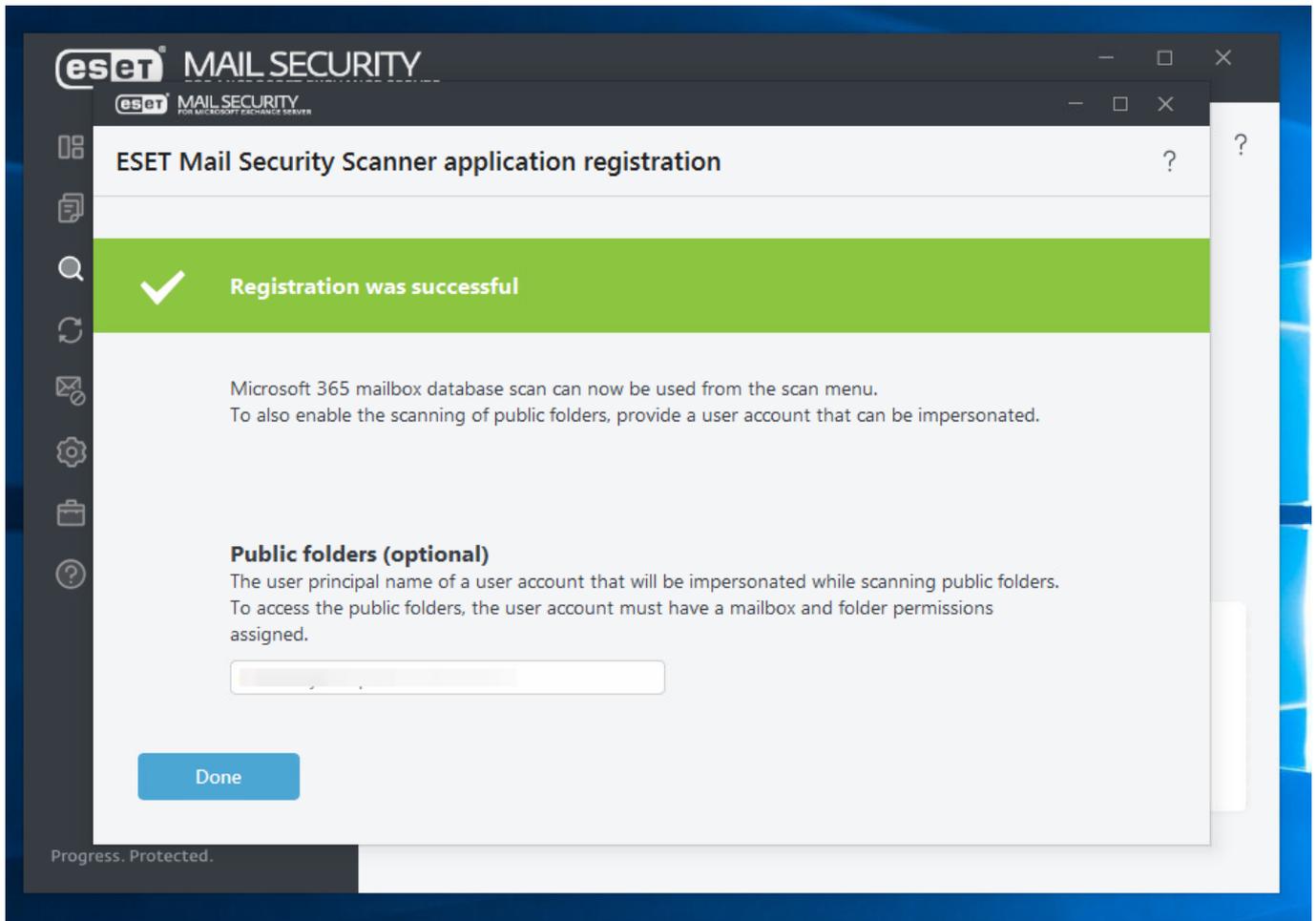
6. **Public folders (optional)**

If you want to scan public folders, provide a principal user account name (password not required) for impersonation. Ensure the configuration of this user account is to have access to all public folders. Click **Done**.

Unregister ESET Mail Security scanner

The unregistration process allows you to remove the certificate and ESET Mail Security scanner app from Microsoft Azure. This process also removes local dependencies and makes the Register option available again.

1. Click **Setup** > **Server** > **Microsoft 365 mailbox scan**, and click **Unregister** to begin the ESET Mail Security scanner removal process. An unregister wizard opens.
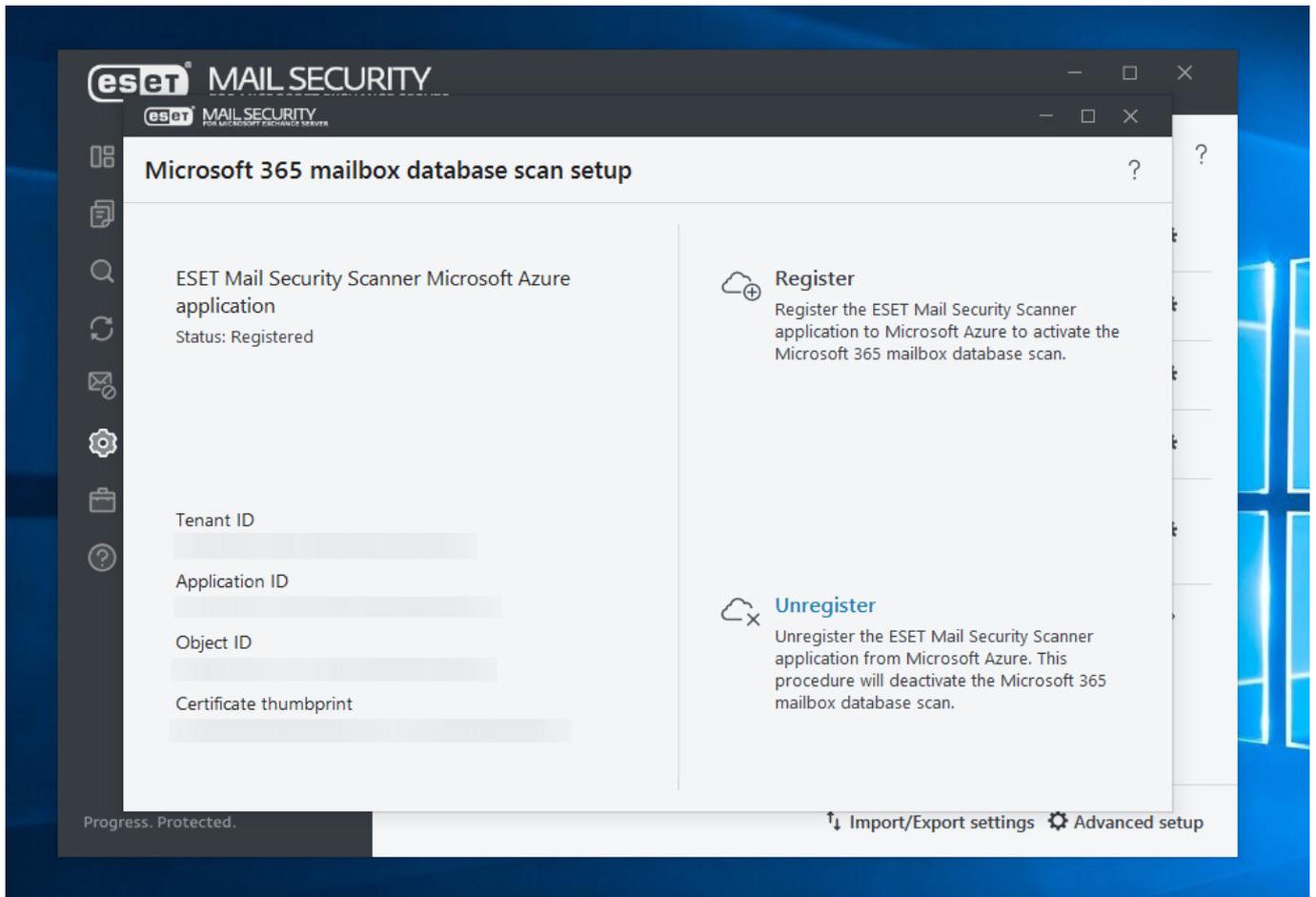
2. Click **Unregister** to confirm you want to remove the ESET Mail Security scanner. Wait for the unregistration from Microsoft Azure to complete.
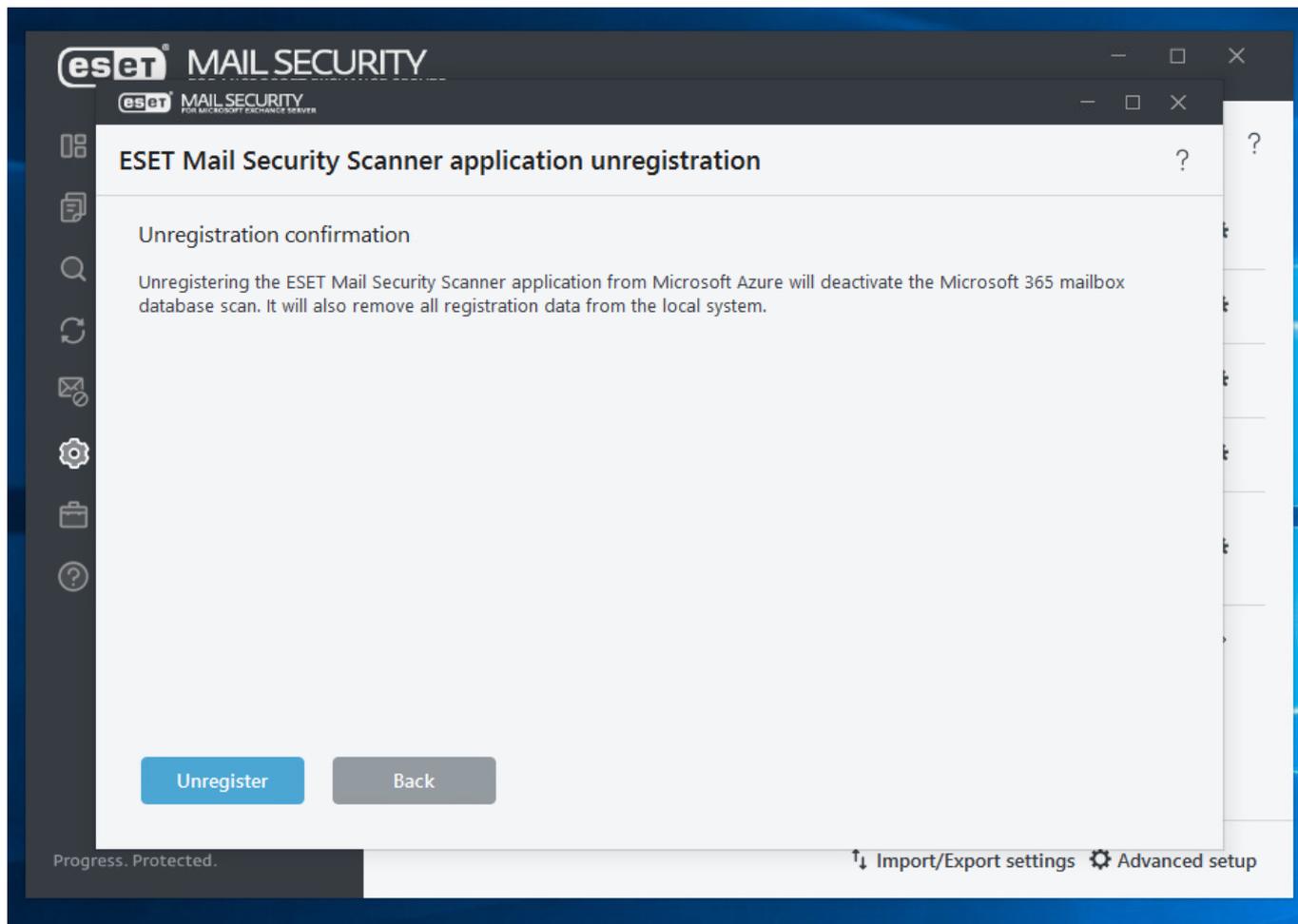
3. If the unregistration process successfully completes, the unregistration wizard will show an **Unregistration was successful** message.

Server protection settings

Server protection settings are the main integration option. Click the toggle to enable or disable the integration of Mailbox database protection, Mail transport protection or DKIM signing to your Exchange Server. When enabled, you can configure detailed settings for each protection type in its respective section. You can also modify Agent priority (you must keep the ESET DKIM Agent priority position as last).

> **i** If you are running Microsoft Exchange Server 2010, you can choose between Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan; only one protection type can be active at a time. If you decide to use On-demand mailbox database scan, you must disable Mailbox database protection. Otherwise, On-demand mailbox database scan will not be available.

ESET Mail Security provides significant protection for your Microsoft Exchange Server using the following features:

- Antivirus and antispyware

- Antispam protection

- Anti-Phishing protection

- Rules

100

- [Mail transport protection (Exchange Server 2010, 2013,2016, 2019)](#)

- [Mailbox database protection (Exchange Server 2010)](#)

- [On-demand mailbox database scan (Exchange Server 2010, 2013, 2016, 2019)](#)

- [Mail quarantine (Mail quarantine type settings)](#)

- [DKIM Signing](#)

Agent priority setup

If required, specify the order in which ESET Mail Security Agents become active after the Microsoft Exchange Server has started. The numeric value defines the priority. Lower numbers denote higher priority. This applies to Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 and later.

Up/Down

Increase or decrease the priority of a selected Agent by moving it up or down in the list. You can change the priority for relevant agents (highlighted in bold).

> ℹ️ We recommend you keep the ESET DKIM Agent priority in last place, at the bottom, to ensure the headers are signed last after any modifications are done by previous agents.

Antivirus and antispyware

You can configure antivirus and antispyware options for your mail server.

> ⚠️ The transport agent provides mail transport protection. It is only available for Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 and later, but your Microsoft Exchange Server must have the Edge Transport Server or Hub Transport Server role. This also applies to a single server installation with multiple Exchange Server roles on one computer (as long as it has the Edge or Hub Transport role).

Mail transport protection

If you disable **Enable antivirus and antispyware mail transport protection**, the ESET Mail Security plugin for the Exchange server will not unload from the Microsoft Exchange server process. It will only pass through the messages without scanning for viruses on the transport layer. Messages will still be scanned for viruses and spam on the database layer, and existing rules will be applied.
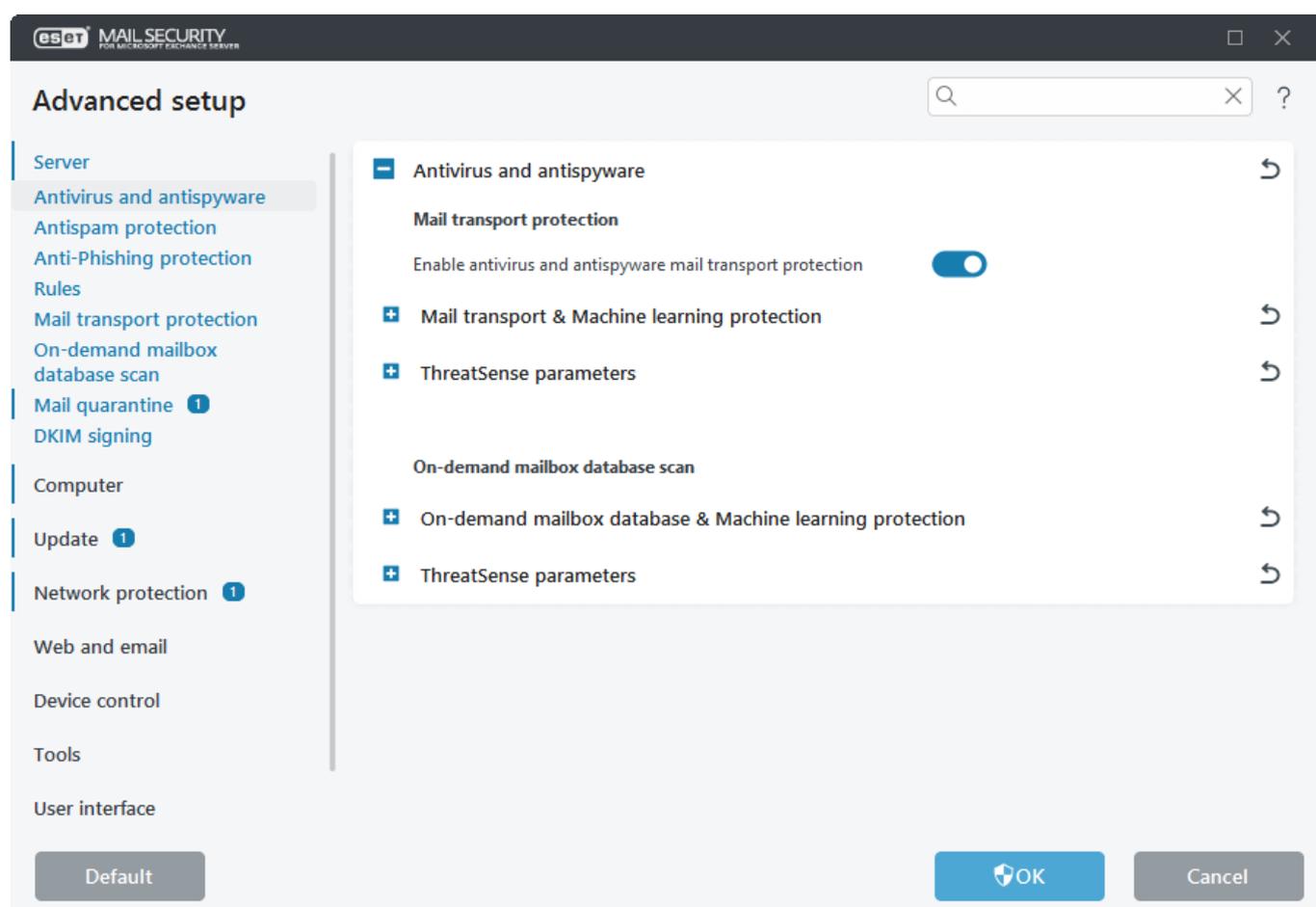
Mailbox database protection

If you disable **Enable antivirus and antispyware mailbox database protection**, the ESET Mail Security plugin for the Exchange server will not be unloaded from the Microsoft Exchange server process. It will only pass through the messages without scanning for viruses on the database layer. Messages will be scanned for viruses and spam on the transport layer, and existing rules will be applied.

On-demand mailbox database scan

The On-demand mailbox database scan is available after you disable **Mailbox database protection** in the Server

section.

[ThreatSense parameters](#)

Modify scan parameters for Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan.

Antispam protection

Your mail server's antispam protection is enabled by default. To turn it off, click the toggle next to **Enable antispam protection**.

> ℹ️ Disabling antispam protection will not change the [protection status](#). Even though the antispam is disabled, the green **You are protected** still displays in the **Monitoring** section of the main program window. Disabled antispam is not considered a reduction in protection level.
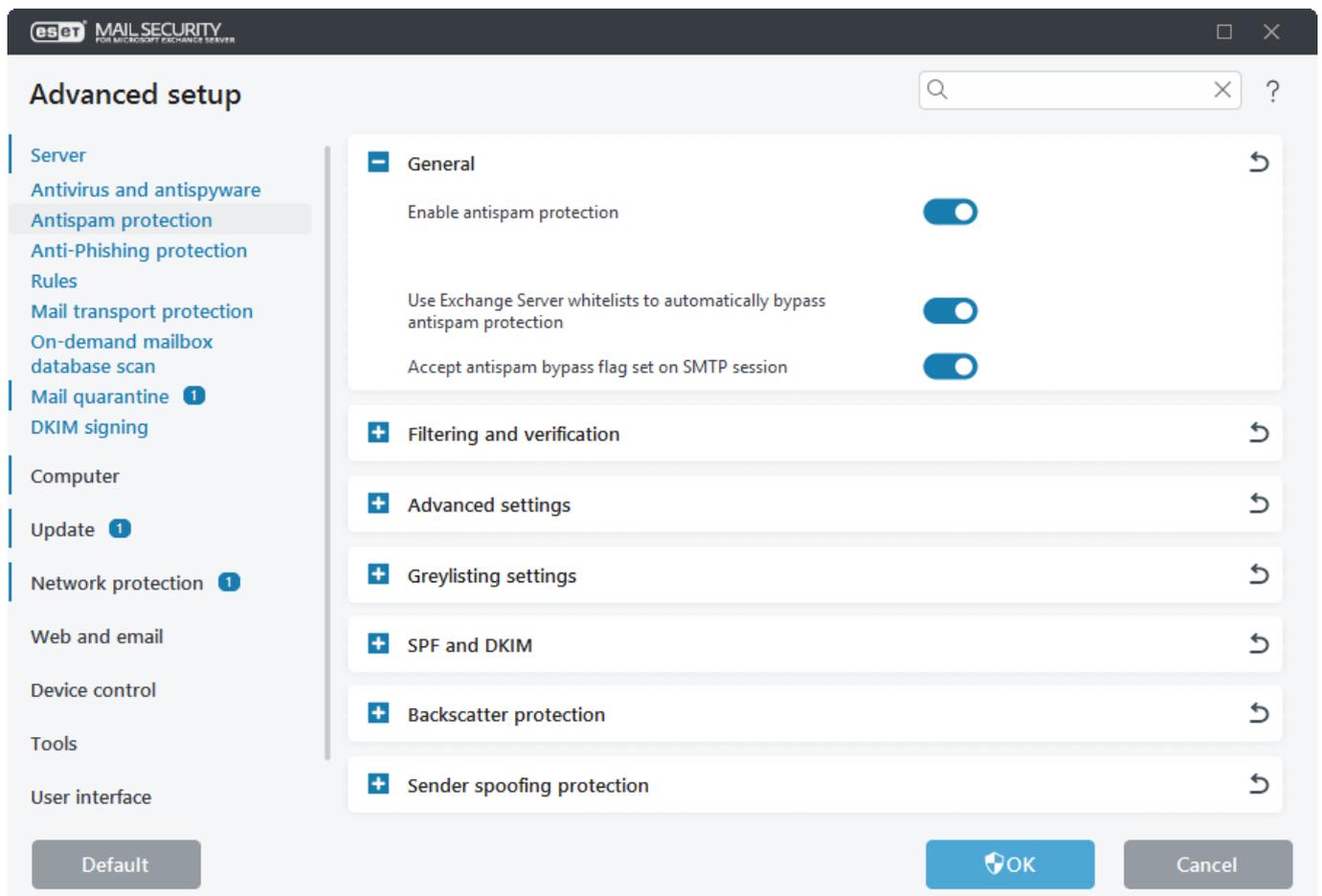
Use Exchange Server whitelists to bypass antispam protection automatically

This feature lets ESET Mail Security use specific Exchange "whitelists." When enabled, the following is taken into consideration:

- The server IP address is on the Exchange Server's Allowed IP list

- The message recipient has the Antispam Bypass flag set on their mailbox

- The message recipient has the sender's address on their Safe Senders List (make sure you have configured

Safe Senders List Synchronization within your Exchange Server environment, including Safelist Aggregation)

If any of the above applies to an incoming message, the Antispam check will be bypassed, the message will not be evaluated for SPAM and will be delivered to the recipient's mailbox.

Accept antispam bypass flag set on SMTP session

This feature is useful when you have authenticated SMTP sessions between Exchange Servers with the antispam bypass setting. For example, when you have an Edge server and a Hub server, there is no need to scan the traffic between the two servers. The **Accept antispam bypass flag set on SMTP session** is enabled by default, but only applies when the antispam bypass flag is configured for the SMTP session on your Exchange Server. If you disable **Accept antispam bypass flag set on SMTP session**, ESET Mail Security will scan the SMTP session for spam regardless of the antispam bypass setting on your Exchange Server.

> **i** You must update the antispam database regularly for the antispam module to provide the best protection. To allow regular updates to the antispam database, ensure ESET Mail Security has access to the correct IP addresses on the necessary ports. For further information on what IPs and ports to enable on your third-party firewall, see our Knowledgebase article.

You will find feature settings in their sections:

- Filtering and verification

- Advanced settings

- Greylisting settings

- SPF and DKIM

- Backscatter protection

- Sender spoofing protection

Filtering and verification

You can configure Approved, Blocked and Ignored lists by specifying criteria such as IP address or range, domain name, etc. To add, modify or remove criteria, click **Edit** for to the list you want to manage.

> **i** IP addresses or Domains included in the **Ignored lists** will not be further tested by Antispam filtering, but other Antispam protection techniques will be applied.
> Ignored lists should contain all internal infrastructure IP addresses / domain names. You can also include IP addresses / domain names of your ISP's or external sending mail servers that are currently blacklisted by one of the RBL or DNSBL (cloud blacklist – ESET's Blackhole List or third-party Blackhole List).
> This allows you to receive emails from sources included in the ignored lists, even though their IP addresses are on the cloud blacklist. Such incoming emails are received and their content is further inspected by other Antispam protection techniques.

Approved IP list	Automatically whitelists emails originating from specified IP addresses. Email content will not be checked.
Blocked IP list	Automatically blocks emails originating from specified IP addresses.

Ignored IP list	List of IP addresses which will be ignored during classification. Email content will be checked. Use Is part of internal infrastructure slider bar if you are whitelisting your network's local IP addresses, see example below.
Blocked Body Domain list	Blocks email messages that contain specified domain in the message body. Only domains with real TLD (top-level domain) are accepted.
Ignored Body Domain list	Specified domains in the message body will be ignored during classification. Only domains with real TLD (top-level domain) are accepted.
Blocked Body IP list	Blocks email messages that contain specified IP address in the message body.
Ignored Body IP list	Specified IP addresses in the message body will be ignored during classification.
Approved Senders list	Whitelists emails originating from a specified sender. Only one sender address or a whole domain is used for verification based on the following priority: 1.SMTP 'MAIL FROM' address 2."Return-Path:" email header field 3."X-Env-Sender:" email header field 4."From:" email header field 5."Sender:" email header field 6."X-Apparently-From:" email header field
Blocked Senders list	Blocks emails originating from a specified sender. All identified sender addresses or whole domains are used for verification: SMTP 'MAIL FROM' address "Return-Path:" email header field "X-Env-Sender:" email header field "From:" email header field "Sender:" email header field "X-Apparently-From:" email header field
Approved Domain to IP list	Whitelists emails originating from IP addresses that are resolved from specified domains in this list. SPF (Sender Policy Framework) records are being recognized when resolving IP addresses.
Blocked Domain to IP list	Blocks emails originating from IP addresses that are resolved from specified domains in this list. SPF records are being recognized when resolving IP addresses.
Ignored Domain to IP list	List of domains that resolves to IP addresses which in turn will not be checked during classification. SPF records are being recognized when resolving IP addresses.
Blocked countries list	Blocks emails from specified countries. Blocking is based on GeoIP. If a spam message is sent from mail server with IP address listed in geolocation database for a country you have selected in the Blocked countries, it will automatically be marked as spam and an action will be taken according to Action to take on spam messages setting under Mail transport protection.

> **i** Body Domain lists accept domains with real TLD (top-level domain) only, according to the official Root Zone Database of TLDs.

If you want to add more entries, click **Enter multiple values** in the **Add** window and choose what separator should be used. It can be Newline, Comma or Semicolon.

> Objective: Exclude your infrastructure's local IP addresses from Antispam protection by adding them into the Ignore IP list
> Navigate to **Advanced setup (F5)** > **Server** > **Antispam protection** > **Filtering and verification**.
> ✔ Click **Edit** next to **Ignored IP list**.
> Click **Add** and specify IP address range of your network infrastructure (IP address range format *1.1.1.1-1.1.1.255*). You can keep adding more ranges (or single IP addresses) to the list, if required.
> Use the slider bar **Is part of internal infrastructure**.

Greylisting and SPF

Specify Domain to IP whitelist or IP whitelist to automatically bypass Greylisting and SPF. You can see Log files in the SMTP protection log. To use these options, you need to enable either Greylisting or SPF. In the case of the SPF, you need to enable **Automatically reject messages if SPF check fails** and/or **Automatically bypass Greylisting if SPF check passes** the setting.

Use antispam lists to automatically bypass Greylisting and SPF

When enabled, Approved and Ignored IP list will be used together with IP and Domain to IP whitelists to automatically bypass Greylisting and SPF.

IP whitelist

You can add IP address, IP address with mask, IP range. You can modify the list by clicking **Add**, **Edit** or **Delete**. Alternatively, you can import your custom list from a file instead of adding every single entry manually, click **Import** and browse for your file that contains entries you want to add to the list. Likewise, if you need to export your existing list to a file, select **Export** from the context menu.

> ℹ️ Whitelists take precedence over blacklists, i.e., if an email contains both whitelisted and blacklisted address, it is whitelisted. Only the last sender address and up to the Maximum number of verified addresses from Received: headers are checked against whitelists. All addresses are checked against local blacklists.

Domain to IP whitelist

This option allows you to specify domains (e.g. domainname.local). To manage the list, use **Add**, **Remove** or **Remove all**. If you want to import your custom list from a file instead of adding every single entry manually, click **Import** and browse for your file that contains entries you want to add to the list. Likewise, if you need to export your existing list to a file, select **Export** from the context menu.

> ℹ️ Greylisting and SPF is evaluated by Mail transport protection and allows you to use IP and Domain to IP whitelists, as well as Approved and Ignored IP list. However, if you are using SPF rules, none of these whitelists are taken into account for rules.

Antispam advanced settings

Configure these settings for message verification by external servers (defined as **RBL** - Realtime Blackhole List and **DNSBL** - DNS Blocklist) according to their predetermined criteria. RBL servers get queried with IP addresses extracted from Received: headers and DNSBL servers get queried with IP addresses and domains extracted from the message body. For details explanation, see articles about RBL and DNSBL.

Maximum number of verified addresses from Received: headers

You can limit the number of IP addresses that are checked by Antispam. This concerns the IP addresses written in Received: from headers. The default value is 0, which means that only the last identified sender's IP address is checked.

Verify sender's address against end-user blacklist

Email messages that are not sent from mail servers (computers that are not listed as mail servers) are verified to

make sure the sender is not on the blacklist. This option is enabled by default. You can disable it if required, but messages not sent from mail servers will not be checked against the blacklist.

> ℹ️ Results of external third-party Blocklists have priority over end-user blacklist for IP addresses in Received: from headers. All IP addresses (up to the specified maximum number of verified addresses) are sent for evaluation by external third-party servers.

Additional RBL servers

Is a list of Realtime Blackhole List (RBL) servers which are queried when analyzing messages.

> ℹ️ When adding Additional RBL servers, enter the server's domain name (for example. sbl.spamhaus.org). It will work with any return codes that are supported by the server.

Alternatively, you can specify a server name with a return code in the format server:response (for example. zen.spamhaus.org:127.0.0.4). When using this format, we recommend that you add each server name and return code separately, so that you will have a complete list. Click **Enter multiple values** in the **Add** window to specify all server names with their return codes. Entries should look like the example below, your actual RBL server host names and return codes may vary:

RBL query execution limit (in seconds)

This option allows you to set a maximum time for RBL queries. RBL responses are only used from those RBL servers which respond in time. If the value is set to "0" no timeout is enforced.

Maximum number of verified addresses against RBL

This option allows you to limit how many IP addresses are queried against the RBL server. Note that the total number of RBL queries will be the number of IP addresses in the Received: headers (up to a maximum of RBL maxcheck IP addresses) multiplied by the number of RBL servers specified in RBL list. If the value is set to "0" an unlimited number of received headers are checked. Note that IPs on the ignored IP list do not count toward the RBL IP address limit.

Additional DNSBL servers

Is a list of DNS Blocklist (DNSBL) servers which are queried with domains and IP addresses extracted from the message body.

> **i** When adding Additional DNSBL servers, enter the server's domain name (for example, dbl.spamhaus.org). It will work with any return codes that are supported by the server.

Add   (?)

Allowed input: server or server:response

dbl.spamhaus.org   (i)

Enter multiple values   OK   Cancel

Alternatively, you can specify a server name with a return code in a form of server:response (for example, zen.spamhaus.org:127.0.0.4). In this case we recommend that you add each server name and return code separately, so that you have a complete list. Click **Enter multiple values** in the **Add** window to specify all server names with their return codes. Entries should look like the example below, your actual DNSBL server host names and return codes may vary:

DNSBL query execution limit (in seconds)

Enable you to set a maximum timeout for all DNSBL queries to complete.

Maximum number of verified addresses against DNSBL

Enable you to limit how many IP addresses are queried against the DNS Blocklist server.

Maximum number of verified domains against DNSBL

Enable you to limit how many domains are queried against the DNS Blocklist server.

Maximum message scan size (kB)

Limits Antispam scan for messages larger than the specified value. Default value 0 means unlimited message size scan. Normally, there is no reason to limit Antispam scan, but if you need to set a limit in certain situations, change the value to required size. When set, Antispam engine will process messages up to the specified size and ignore larger messages.

> **i** The smallest possible limit is 12 kB. If you set the value from 1 to 12, Antispam engine will always read at least 12 kB.

Enable temporary rejecting of undetermined messages

If the Antispam engine is not able to determine whether the message is or is not SPAM, which means the message has some suspicious SPAM characteristics but not enough to be marked as SPAM (for example the first email of a campaign, or an email originating from an IP range with mixed ratings), then this setting (when enabled) allows ESET Mail Security to temporarily reject the message - the same way Greylisting does - and keep rejecting it for a specific time period, until:

- The interval has elapsed and the message is accepted upon the next delivery attempt. This message is left with the initial classification (SPAM or HAM).

- Antispam cloud gathers enough data and is able to properly classify the message before the interval elapses.

The rejected message is not kept by ESET Mail Security as it must be re-sent by the sending mail server in accordance with the SMTP RFC.

Enable submitting of temporary rejected messages for analysis

The message content is automatically sent for further analysis. This helps improve message classification of future email messages.

> ⚠️ It is possible that temporarily rejected messages which are sent for analysis could in fact be HAM. In rare cases, temporarily rejected messages may be used for manual evaluation. Enable this feature only if there are no risks of leaking any potentially sensitive data.

Greylisting settings

The **Enable Greylisting** function activates a feature that protects users from spam using the following technique: The transport agent will send a "temporarily reject" SMTP return value (default is 451/4.7.1) for any received email that is not from a recognized sender. A legitimate server will try to resend the message after a delay. Spam servers will typically not attempt to resend the message, as they usually go through thousands of email addresses and do not waste time resending. Greylisting is an additional layer of antispam protection, and does not have any effect on the spam evaluation capabilities of the antispam module.

When evaluating the message source, the Greylisting method considers the Approved IP list, the Ignored IP list, Safe Senders and the Allow IP lists on the Exchange server and AntispamBypass settings for the recipient mailbox. Emails from these IP addresses/senders lists or emails delivered to a mailbox with the AntispamBypass option enabled will be bypassed by the Greylisting detection method.

Use only domain part of sender address

This feature ignores sender's name in the email address; only the domain is considered.

Synchronize greylisting databases across the ESET cluster

Greylisting database entries are shared in real time between the servers in ESET cluster. When on one of the servers receives a message that is processed by greylisting, this information is broadcast by ESET Mail Security over to the rest of the nodes in ESET cluster.

Time limit for the initial connection denial (min.)

When a message is delivered for the first time and temporarily refused, this parameter defines the time period during which the message will always be refused (measured from the first refusal). After the defined time period has elapsed, the message will be successfully received. The minimum value you can enter is 1 minute.

Unverified connections expiration time (hours)

This parameter defines the minimum time interval for which the triplet data will be stored. A valid server must resend a desired message before this period expires. This value must be greater than the value of **Time limit for the initial connection denial**.

Verified connections expiration time (days)

The minimum number of days for which the triplet information is stored, during which emails from a specific sender will be received without any delay. This value must be greater than the value of **Unverified connections**

expiration time.

SMTP response (for temporarily denied connections)

Specify a **Response code**, **Status code** and **Response message**, which define the SMTP temporary denial response sent to the SMTP server if a message is refused. Below is an example of a SMTP reject response message:

Response code	Status code	Response message
451	4.7.1	Please try again later

> ℹ️ You can also use system variables when defining the SMTP reject response.

> ⚠️ Incorrect syntax in SMTP response codes may lead to the malfunction of Greylisting protection. As a result, spam messages may be delivered to clients or messages may not be delivered at all.

All messages that have been evaluated using the greylisting method are recorded in the SMTP protection log.

SPF and DKIM

Sender Policy Framework (SPF) and DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) are validation methods that check incoming email messages from specific domains are authorized by the owner of that domain. This helps protect recipients from receiving spoofed email messages. ESET Mail Security also uses Domain-based Message Authentication, Reporting and Conformance (DMARC) evaluation to enhance SPF and DKIM.

SPF

An SPF check verifies that an email was sent by a legitimate sender. A DNS lookup for SPF records of the sender's domain is performed to get a list of IP addresses. If any of the IP addresses from SPF records matches the actual IP address of the sender, the result of the SPF check is a **Pass**. If the sender's IP address does not match, the result is a **Fail**. However, not all domains have SPF records specified in DNS. If there are no SPF records present in DNS, the result is **Not available**. A DNS request may timeout occasionally, in which case the result is also **Not available**.

DKIM

DKIM is used by organizations to prevent email message spoofing by adding a digital signature to the headers of outgoing messages according to the DKIM standard. This involves using a private domain key to encrypt your domain's outgoing mail headers and adding a public version of the key to the domain's DNS records. ESET Mail Security can then retrieve the public key to decrypt an incoming header and verify the message comes from your domain and the header has not been changed along the way.

> ℹ️ Exchange Server 2010 and earlier are not fully compatible with DKIM because headers included in digitally signed incoming messages may get modified during DKIM validation.

DMARC

DMARC is built on top of the existing SPF and DKIM mechanisms. You can use Mail Transport protection rules to evaluate **DMARC result** and **Apply DMARC policy** actions.
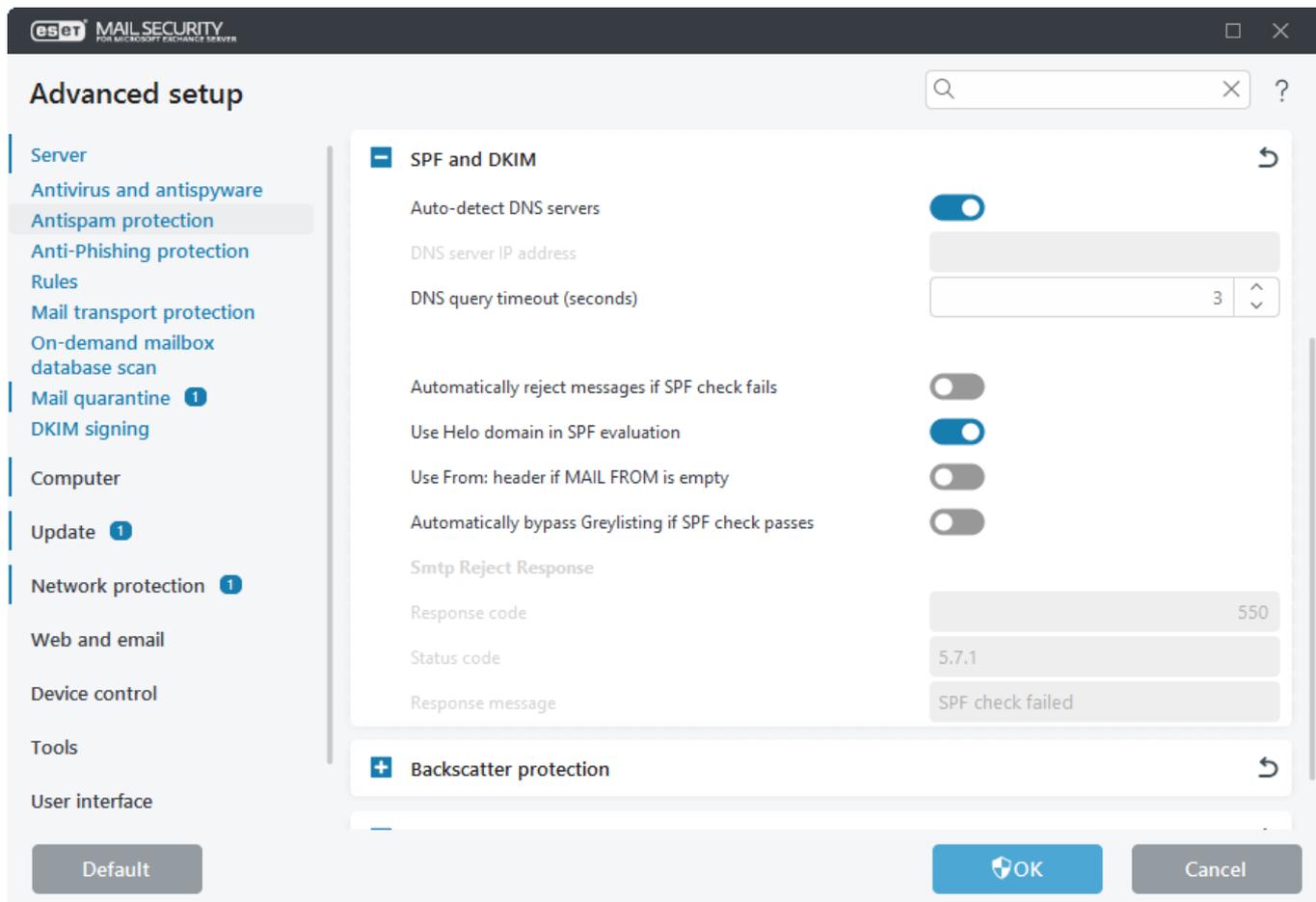
Auto-detect DNS servers

Auto-detect uses your network adapter settings.

DNS server IP address

If you want to use specific DNS servers for SPF and DKIM, type the IP address (in IPv4 or IPv6 format) of the DNS server you want to use.

DNS query timeout (seconds)

Specify a timeout for DNS reply.

Automatically reject messages if SPF check fails

If your SPF check immediately fails, an email message can be rejected before it is downloaded.

> The SPF check is done on the SMTP layer. However, it can be rejected either automatically on the SMTP layer or during rules evaluation.
>
> Rejected messages cannot be logged into the Events log when you use automatic rejection on the SMTP layer. This is because logging is done by rule action and the automatic reject is done directly on the SMTP layer, which happens before rule evaluation. Because the messages will be rejected before rules are evaluated, there is no information to be logged at the time of rule evaluation.
>
> You can log rejected messages only if you reject the messages by a rule action. To reject messages that did not pass SPF check and log such rejected messages, disable **Automatically reject messages if SPF check fails** and create the following rule for **Mail transport protection**:
>
> **Condition**
> - Type: SPF result
> - Operation: is
> - Parameter: Fail
>
> **Actions**
> - Type: Reject message
> - Type: Log to events

Use Helo domain in SPF evaluation

This feature uses the HELO domain for SPF evaluation. If the HELO domain is not specified, the computer hostname is used instead.

Use From: header if MAIL FROM is empty

The header MAIL FROM can be empty, and can also be easily spoofed. When this option is enabled and MAIL FROM is empty, the message is downloaded and the header From: is used instead.

Automatically bypass Greylisting if SPF check passes

There is no reason to use Greylisting for a message if its SPF check result was Pass.

SMTP reject response

You can specify a **Response code**, **Status code** and **Response message**, which define the SMTP temporary denial response sent to the SMTP server if a message is refused. You can type a response message in the following format:

Response code	Status code	Response message
550	5.7.1	SPF check failed

Backscatter protection

Spam backscatter is misdirected bounce messages sent by mail servers and an undesirable side effect of spam. When the recipient's mail server rejects a spam message, a Non-Delivery Report (NDR), also known as a bounce message, is sent to a supposed sender (an email address forged as a sender of the original spam message), not an actual sender of the spam. The email address owner receives an NDR message, even though the owner wasn't involved with the original spam message. This is where **Backscatter protection** comes in. You can prevent spam NDRs being delivered to users' mailboxes within your organization using ESET Mail Security Backscatter protection.

When you **Enable NDR check**, you must specify a **Signature seed** (a string of at least eight characters, something like a passphrase). ESET Mail Security Backscatter protection writes `X-Eset-NDR: <hash>` into the header of

each outgoing email message. The `<hash>` is an encrypted signature that also contains **Signature seed** you have specified.

If a legitimate email message cannot be delivered, your mail server usually receives an NDR, which is checked by ESET Mail Security looking for the `X-Eset-NDR:` `<hash>` in the headers. If the `X-Eset-NDR:` is present and the signature `<hash>` matches, the NDR is delivered to the sender of the legitimate email message indicating the message delivery failed. If the `Eset-NDR:` is not present or signature `<hash>` is incorrect, it is identified as spam backscatter, and the NDR is rejected.

Automatically drop NDR messages if check fails

If your NDR check results in an immediate fail, an email message can be rejected before it is downloaded.

You can see **Backscatter protection** activity in the SMTP protection log.

Sender spoofing protection

Email sender spoofing is common when an attacker forges the sender's name or email address to deceive the recipient. To the email recipient, a spoofed email appears indistinguishable from a genuine one, posing a risk. One type of sender spoofing is called CEO fraud (where the attacker impersonates the CEO).

Employees would not question the emails, allowing the attacker to succeed. This is not exclusive to the CEO. Sender spoofing often impersonates any real sender, usually someone in your organization's Active Directory. A spoofed email message looks very convincing to an unsuspecting recipient, easily gaining trust.

ESET Mail Security provides you with protection against email sender spoofing. Using several methods, sender spoofing protection verifies whether the sender's information is valid.

Sender spoofing protection looks for the domain in the "From:" email header field and Envelope sender, then compares the found domain against the domain lists. If the domain differs, the message is considered valid (not spoofed) and further processed by other ESET Mail Security protection layers. However, if the domain matches a domain on the list, it may be spoofed and requires further verification.

Depending on the setting, further verification is performed: an SPF check, the Envelope IP address is checked against IP lists, or the message is automatically considered spoofed. If the SPF check result is pass, or the Envelope IP address matches an IP address from the list, the message is valid; if not, it is spoofed. Action is taken with the spoofed message.

You can use sender spoofing protection in two ways:

- Enable **Sender spoofing protection**, configure its settings and optionally specify domains and IP lists. The default action with spoofed email messages is **Quarantine message**. To change what action is taken, go to Mail transport protection advanced settings.

- Use Mail transport protection rules: **SPF result - From header** or **Envelope sender and From header comparison result** conditions with an action of your choice. Rules provide you with more options and combinations if you want to achieve specific behavior with spoofed email messages.

When **Sender spoofing protection** is used, or if a rule action type **Log to events** is specified, all messages that have been evaluated by **Sender spoofing protection** are recorded in the Log files. Similarly, you can find spoofed email messages in Mail Quarantine when an action is set to **Quarantine message** in Mail transport protection or defined in rules.

Enable sender spoofing protection

Activate the sender spoofing protection to prevent email attacks that try to mislead the recipients about the message's origin (spoofed sender).

Enable incoming email with my own domain in the sender address

Allow messages that contain your own domain in the "From:" email header or Envelope sender (thus suspected as being spoofed) to be further verified:

- **Only when they pass the SPF check**—This relies on SPF being enabled. If the SPF result is Pass, the message is considered valid and processed for delivery. If the SPF result is fail, the message is spoofed (and an action takes place). Optionally, you can enable the Automatically reject messages if SPF check fails feature.

- **Only when the IP address is on the infrastructure IP list**—Compares the Envelope IP address against the IP lists (a list of your own IP addresses and the Ignored IP list are marked as **Is part of internal infrastructure**). If the IP address is a match, the message is valid and processed for delivery. If the IP address does not match, the message is spoofed (and an action takes place).

- **Never**—If an incoming message contains your own domain in "From:" email header or Envelope sender, it is automatically considered spoofed without being further verified. An action is taken with the message; see Mail transport protection for action options.

Automatically load my own domains from the Accepted domain list

We highly recommend that you have this option enabled to keep the highest level of protection. This way, the domains and IP addresses from your infrastructure are considered during evaluation by sender spoofing protection.

List of my own domains

These domains are considered to be your own. Add domains that will be used during the evaluation, in addition to the automatically loaded domains from your Active Directory. Sender's domain(s) will be compared against the domains in these lists. If the domain does not match, the message is valid. If the domain is a match, further verification is performed according to the **Enable incoming email with my own domain in the sender address** setting.

List of my own IP addresses

IP addresses that are considered credible. Add IP addresses to be used during the evaluation, in addition to the IP addresses on the Ignored IP list marked as **Is part of internal infrastructure**. The sender's Envelope IP address is compared against the IP addresses in these lists. If the Envelope IP address is a match, the message is valid. If the IP address does not match, the message is spoofed, and an action takes place.

Anti-phishing protection

Phishing is an attempt to obtain sensitive information such as usernames, passwords, bank account or credit card details via email or web pages disguised as a trustworthy entity. This activity is usually done for malicious reasons. It is a form of social engineering (manipulating users to obtain confidential information).

ESET Mail Security includes anti-phishing protection which prevents users from accessing web pages known for

phishing. In the case of email messages that may contain links that lead to phishing web pages, ESET Mail Security uses a sophisticated parser that searches the incoming email message's subject and body to identify dangerous links (URLs).

The links are compared against a phishing database. If the evaluation result of evaluation, the email is considered a phishing message and ESET Mail Security manages it according to **Action to take on phishing message** setting for each protection layer (Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan). Rule actions are also executed.

Supported email format standards:

- Plain text

- HTML-only

- MIME

- Multipart MIME (an email that includes both HTML and plain text)

Supported HTML entities:

Phishing messages might contain HTML entities to obfuscate the anti-phishing engine. The anti-phishing protection also parses and translates HTML symbols to find and correctly evaluate obfuscated URLs.

A single character can be represented in different forms. For example, a period can be represented in the following forms:

How links usually appear in the email message to the user	Value	Obfuscated links contained in the message body	Type
http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	.	http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	character
http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	.	http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	entity name
http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	.	http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	entity hexadecimal number
http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	.	http://www.example-phishing-domain.com/Fraud	entity decimal number

To see the anti-phishing mail protection activity, check the **Log files** > Mail server protection log. The log has information about email messages and their phishing links.

Report a phishing site

You can click Report to notify ESET of a phishing or malicious website.

Rules

Rules allow you to manually define email filtering conditions and assign filtered email actions. You can also define different conditions and actions individually for Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan. This is helpful because each protection type uses a slightly different approach when processing messages, especially Mail transport protection.

> ℹ️ The availability of [Mailbox database protection](#), [On-demand mailbox database scan](#) and [Mail transport protection](#) rules on your system depends on the Microsoft Exchange Server version installed on the server with ESET Mail Security.

> ⚠️ Incorrectly defined rules for **On-demand mailbox database scan** can cause irreversible changes to Mailbox databases. Always ensure you have the most recent Mailbox database backups before running On-demand mailbox database scan with rules in place for the first time. We highly recommend you verify the rules run according to your expectations. For verification, define rules with the **Log to events** action only, because any other actions can make changes to your Mailbox databases. When you are satisfied with the verification, you can add destructive rule actions such as **Delete attachment**.

Rules are classified into three levels and are evaluated in this order:

- **Filtering rules** (1)—evaluated before antispam, antivirus and anti-phishing scanning

- **Attachment processing rules** (2)—evaluated during an antivirus scan

- **Result processing rules** (3)—evaluated after antispam, antivirus and anti-phishing scanning

Rules with the same evaluation level are reviewed in the order displayed in the rules window. You can only change the order for same-level rules. When you have multiple filtering rules, you can change the order they are applied in. You cannot change their order by putting **Attachment processing** rules before **Filtering** rules, the **Up/Down** buttons are unavailable. You cannot mix rules of different **Levels**.

The **Hits** column displays the number of times the rule was successfully applied. Deselecting a check box (to the left of each rule name) deactivates the corresponding rule until you select the check box again.

Click **Reset** the counter for the selected rule (displayed in the **Hits** column). Select **View** to view a configuration assigned from ESET PROTECT policy.

Normally, if a rule's conditions are met, rules evaluation stops for further rules with lower priority. However, if required, you can use special Rule action called **Evaluate other rules** to let the evaluation continue.

Rules are checked against a message when it is processed by the Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection or On-demand mailbox database scan. Each protection layer has a separate rule set.

When Mailbox database protection or On-demand mailbox database scan rule conditions are matched, the rule counter may increase by two or more. This is because these protection layers access the body and attachments of a message separately, so rules are applied to each part individually. Mailbox database protection rules are also applied during background scanning (for example, when ESET Mail Security performs a mailbox scan following the download of a new detection engine), which can increase the rule counter (Hits).

Rule wizard

1. Click **Add** (in the middle), and a Rule condition window will appear where you can select condition type, operation and value. Define condition(s) first, then action(s).

You can define multiple conditions. If you do so, all of the conditions must be met for the rule to be applied. All conditions are connected using the logical operator **AND**. Even if most of the conditions are met and one is not, the condition evaluation result is *not met* and the rule's action cannot be taken.

2. Click **Add** (at the bottom) to add a Rule action.

i   You can add multiple actions for one rule.

3. When conditions and actions are defined, type a **Name** for the rule (something that you will recognize). The name will display in the Rules list. Name is a mandatory field, if it is highlighted in red, type a rule name into the text box and click **OK** to create the rule. Red highlighting does not disappear even though you have entered a rule name; it disappears after you click **OK**.

4. If you want to prepare rules and plan to use them later, you can click the toggle next to **Active** to deactivate the rule. To activate the rule, select the check box next to the rule you want to activate.

> **i** If a new rule is added or an existing rule is modified, message rescan will automatically start using the new or modified rules.

See Rule examples to see how you can use rules.

Rule condition

The Rules condition wizard lets you add conditions for a rule. Select the condition **Type** and an **Operation** from the drop-down menu. The list of operations changes depending on what rule type you have chosen. Then select a **Parameter**. Parameter fields will change depending on the rule type and operation.

For example, choose File size > is greater than, and under Parameter specify 10 MB. Using these settings, any file that is larger than 10 MB will be processed using the rule actions you have specified. For this reason, you should specify the action taken when a given rule is triggered if you have not already done so when setting that rule's parameters.

If you want to import your custom list from a file instead of adding entries manually, right-click in the middle of the window and select **Import** from the context menu. Then you can browse for your file (*.xml* or *.txt*, and containing entries delimited by new lines) that you want to add to the list. Likewise, select **Export** from the context menu if you need to export your existing list to a file.

Alternatively, you can specify **Regular expression** by selecting **Operation: matches regular expression** or **does not match regular expression**.

> **i** ESET Mail Security uses std::regex. Refer to ECMAScript syntax for constructing regular expressions. Regular expression syntax is not case sensitive, including search results.

> **!** You can define multiple conditions. If you do so, all conditions must be met for the rule to apply. All conditions are connected using the logical operator **AND**. Even if most conditions are met and only a single one is not, the condition evaluation result is considered *not met* and the rule's action cannot be executed.

The following condition types are available for Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan (some of the options might not display depending on your previously selected conditions):

Condition name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
Subject	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages which contain or do not contain a specific string (or a regular expression) in the subject.
Sender	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages sent by a specific sender.

Condition name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
Envelope sender (SMTP sender)	✓	✗	✗	MAIL FROM envelope attribute used during SMTP connection. Also used for SPF verification.
Sender's IP address	✓	✗	✗	Applies to messages sent from a specific IP address.
Envelop sender's domain / Sender's domain	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages from a sender with a specific domain in their email addresses.
SMTP sender's domain	✓	✗	✗	Applies to messages from a sender with a specific domain in their email addresses.
From header - address	✓	✗	✗	"From:" value contained in message headers. This is the address that is visible to the recipient, but no checks are done to ensure that the sending system is authorized to send on behalf of that address. It is often used for spoofing the sender.
From header - display name	✓	✗	✗	"From:" value contained in message headers. This is the display name that is visible to the recipient, but no checks are done to ensure that the sending system is authorized to send on behalf of that address. It is often used for spoofing the sender.
Recipient	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages sent to a specific recipient.
Recipient's organizational units	✓	✗	✗	Applies to messages sent to a recipient of a specific organizational unit.
Recipient validation result	✓	✗	✗	Applies to messages sent to a recipient validated in Active Directory.
Attachment name	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages containing attachments with a specific name.
Attachment size	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages with an attachment that does not meet a specified size, is within a specified size range, or exceeds a specified size.
Attachment type[1]	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages with a specific file type attached. File types are categorized in groups for easy selection, you can select multiple file types or whole categories. ESET Mail Security detects the actual file type regardless of the file extension. The same applies to the content of an archive.
Message size	✓	✗	✗	Applies to messages with attachments that do not meet a specified size, are within a specified size range or exceed a specified size.
Mailbox	✗	✓	✗	Applies to messages located in a specific mailbox.
Message headers	✓	✓	✗	Applies to messages with specific data present in the message header.

Condition name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
Message body	✓	⬚	✓	Message body is searched for specified phrase. You can use the Strip HTML tags feature to remove HTML tags, attributes and values, and preserve text only. The body text will then be searched.
Internal message	✓	⬚	⬚	Applies depending on whether a message is internal or not internal.
Outgoing message	✓	⬚	⬚	Applies to outgoing messages.
Signed message	✓	⬚	⬚	Applies to signed messages.
Encrypted message	✓	⬚	⬚	Applies to encrypted messages.
Antispam scan result	✓	⬚	⬚	Applies to messages flagged or not flagged as Ham or Spam.
Antivirus scan result	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages flagged as malicious or not malicious.
Anti-Phishing scan result	✓	⬚	✓	Applies to messages which were evaluated as phishing.
Received time	✓	✓	✓	Applies to messages received before or after a specific date, or during a specific date range.
Contains password protected archive	✓	✓	⬚	Applies to messages with archive attachments that are protected by a password.
Contains damaged archive	✓	✓	⬚	Applies to messages with archive attachments that are damaged (most likely unable to open).
Attachment is password protected archive	⬚	⬚	✓	Applies to attachments that are protected by a password.
Attachment is damaged archive	⬚	⬚	✓	Applies to attachments that are damaged (most likely unable to open).
Folder Name	⬚	⬚	✓	Applies to messages located in a specific folder, if the folder does not exist, it will be created. This does not apply to Public folders.
DKIM result	✓	⬚	⬚	Applies to messages that passed or failed verification by DKIM, alternatively if not available.

Condition name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
SPF result	✓	⬜	⬜	Applies to messages that the SPF evaluation result is: • **Pass**—the IP address is authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "+"). • **Fail**—SPF record does not contain the sending server or IP address (SPF qualifier "-"). • **Soft fail**—the IP address may or may not be authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "~"). • **Neutral**—means the domain owner stated in the SPF record that they do not want to assert that the IP address is authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "?"). • **Not available**—SPF result of None means that no records were published by the domain or that no checkable sender domain could be determined from the given identity. You can read RFC 4408 for more details about SPF. If you use SPF result, whitelists within Filtering and verification are not taken into account for rules.
DMARC result	✓	⬜	⬜	Applies to messages that passed or failed verification by SPF, DKIM or both, alternatively if not available.
Has reverse DNS record	✓	⬜	⬜	Applies to messages with sender's domain that has reverse DNS record.
NDR result	✓	⬜	⬜	Applies to messages that failed verification by NDR.
SPF result - From header	✓	⬜	⬜	Applies to messages that the SPF evaluation result is: • **Pass**—the IP address is authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "+"). • **Fail**—SPF record does not contain the sending server or IP address (SPF qualifier "-"). • **Soft fail**—the IP address may or may not be authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "~"). • **Neutral**—means the domain owner stated in the SPF record that they do not want to assert that the IP address is authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "?"). • **Not available**—SPF result of None means that no records were published by the domain or that no checkable sender domain could be determined from the given identity. You can read RFC 4408 for more details about SPF. If you use SPF result, whitelists within Filtering and verification are not taken into account for rules.

Condition name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
Envelope sender and From header comparison result	✓	▯	▯	Compares the domain(s) contained in the "From:" email header field and Envelope sender against the domain lists.
SPF result HELO	✓	▯	▯	Applies to messages that the HELO evaluation result is: • **Pass**—the IP address is authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "+"). • **Fail**—SPF record does not contain the sending server or IP address (SPF qualifier "-"). • **Soft fail**—the IP address may or may not be authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "~"). • **Neutral**—means the domain owner stated in the SPF record that they do not want to assert that the IP address is authorized to send from the domain (SPF qualifier "?"). • **Not available**—SPF result of None means that no records were published by the domain or that no checkable sender domain could be determined from the given identity. You can read RFC 4408 for more details about SPF. If you use SPF result, whitelists within Filtering and verification are not taken into account for rules.

> ℹ [1] The **Attachment type** rule condition has a known limitation where ESET Mail Security detection engine cannot detect extra small text files under 10 bytes in length in ASCII/ANSI encoding.

Condition type has the following **Operations**:

- **String:** is, is not, contains, does not contain, matches, does not match, is in, is not in, in on the list, is not on the list, matches regular expression, does not match regular expression

- **Number:** is less than, is greater than, is between

- **Text:** contains, does not contain, matches, does not match

- **Date-time:** is less than, is greater than, is between

- **Enum:** is, is not, is in, is not in

> ℹ If **Attachment name** or **Attachment type** is Microsoft Office file it is treated by ESET Mail Security as an archive. This means that its content is extracted and each file contained in the Office file archive (for example *.docx*, *.xlsx*, *.xltx*, *.pptx*, *.ppsx*, *.potx*) is scanned separately.

If you disable **Antivirus protection** in the Setup menu or **Advanced setting** (F5) > **Server** > **Antivirus and Antispyware** for **Mail transport and Mailbox database protection** layer, it will affect these rule conditions:

- Attachment name

- Attachment size

- Attachment type

- Antivirus scan result

- Attachment is password protected

- Attachment is damaged archive

- Contains damaged archive

- Contains password protected archive

Rule action

You can add actions for messages and/or attachments that match rule conditions.

> ℹ You can to add multiple actions for one rule.

The following is a list of available actions for Mail transport protection, Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan (some of the options might not show up depending on your selected conditions):

Action name	**Mail transport protection**	**Mailbox database protection**	**On-demand mailbox database scan**	Description
Quarantine message	✓	⬜	⬜	The message will not be delivered to the recipient and will be moved to the mail quarantine. Non-administrator users are to release emails quarantined by this rule (using the web interface or quarantine reports).
Quarantine attachment	✓	✓	✓	Puts the email attachment into file quarantine. The email will be delivered to the recipient with the attachment truncated to zero length.
Delete attachment	✓	✓	✓	Deletes a message attachment. The message will be delivered to the recipient without the attachment.
Reject message	✓	⬜	⬜	Deletes a message. For incoming emails received via SMTP, an NDR (Non-Delivery Report) should be generated by the sending server.
Drop message silently	✓	⬜	⬜	Deletes a message without generating an NDR.
Set SCL value	✓	⬜	⬜	Changes or sets a specific SCL value.

Action name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
Send email notification to administrator	✓	✓	✓	Sends event notifications to a recipient specified in Email notifications. You need to enable the Send event notification by email feature. You can then customize the format of event messages (use the tooltip for suggestions) while creating the rule. Also, you can select verbosity for event messages; however, this depends on the minimum verbosity setting in the Email notifications section.
Send email notification				Sends email notifications to a recipient specified in Email notifications.
Skip Antispam scan	✓	▢	▢	Message will not be scanned by the Antispam engine.
Skip Antivirus scan	✓	✓	✓	Message will not be scanned by the Antivirus engine.
Skip Anti-Phishing scan	✓	▢	✓	Message will not be parsed by the Anti-Phishing protection.
Skip ESET LiveGuard Advanced scan	✓	▢	▢	Message will not be validated by the ESET LiveGuard Advanced protection.
Evaluate other rules	✓	✓	✓	Allows the evaluation of other rules, enabling the user to define multiple sets of conditions and multiple actions to take given the conditions.
Log to events	✓	✓	✓	Writes information about the applied rule to the program log and defines the event message format (use the tooltip for suggestions). If you configure the action type Log to events for Mailbox database protection with the parameter %IPAddress%, the Event column in the Log files will be empty for this specific event. This is because there is no IP address on the Mailbox database protection level. Some options are not available on all protection levels: %IPAddress% - ignored by On-demand mailbox database scan and Mailbox database protection %Mailbox% - ignored by Mail transport protection The following options apply to Attachment processing rules only: %Attname% - ignored by Filtering rules and Result processing rules %Attsize% - ignored by Filtering rules and Result processing rules
Add header field	✓	▢	▢	Adds a custom string to a message header.
Add subject prefix	✓	▢	▢	Adds a prefix to a subject.

Action name	Mail transport protection	Mailbox database protection	On-demand mailbox database scan	Description
Replace attachment with action information	▢	✓	✓	Replaces an attachment with a text file that contains detailed information about an action taken.
Remove header fields	✓	▢	▢	Removes fields from the message header according to specified parameters.
Delete message	▢	✓	✓	Deletes an infected message.
Move message to folder	▢	▢	✓	The message will be moved to the specific folder.
Move message to trash	▢	▢	✓	Puts an email message into the trash folder on the email client's side.
Apply DMARC policy	✓	▢	▢	If a DMARC result condition is met, the email message is handled according to the policy specified in the DMARC DNS record for the sender's domain.

If you disable **Antivirus protection** in the **Setup** menu or **Advanced setting** (F5) > **Server** > **Antivirus and Antispyware** for **Mail transport protection**, it will affect two rule actions:

- Quarantine attachment

- Delete attachment

Rule examples

∧   [Quarantine messages that contain malware or attachment that is password protected, encrypted or damaged](#)

> Objective: Quarantine messages that contain malware or attachment that is password protected, encrypted or damaged
> Create the following rule for **Mail transport protection**:
> **Condition**
> - Type: Antivirus scan result
> - Operation: is not
> - Parameter: Clean
> **Action**
> Type: Quarantine message

∧   [Move messages that failed an SPF check to a Junk folder](#)

Objective: Move messages that failed an SPF check to a Junk folder
Create the following rule for **Mail transport protection**:
Condition
- Type: SPF result
- Operation: is
- Parameter: Fail
Action
- Type: Set SCL value
- Value: 5

Set the value according to the `SCLJunkThreshold` parameter of `Get-OrganizationConfig` cmdlet of your Exchange server. For more details, see the SCL threshold actions article.

⌃ Verify email message suspicious from sender spoofing

Objective: Verify email message suspicious from sender spoofing. If the message contains your own domain in the "From:" email header or Envelope sender, verify by SPF result. If SPF result is neutral, quarantine the message, log to events, and notify the administrator.
Condition
- Type: Envelope sender and From header comparison result
- Operation: is
- Parameter: Match
- Type: SPF result - From header
- Operation: is
- Parameter: Neutral
Action
Type: Quarantine message, Log to events and Send event notification to administrator

⌃ Drop messages from specific senders

Objective: Drop messages from specific senders
Create the following rule for **Mail transport protection**:
Condition
- Type: Sender
- Operation: is / is one of
- Parameter: spammer1@domain.com, spammer2@domain.com
Action
Type: **Drop message silently**

⌃ Blocked IP list

Objective: Quarantine message from an IP address on the Blocked IP list, notify the administrator and log the event.
Details: If an email message arrives from an IP address on the Blocked IP list, <%PM%> will quarantine the message and notify you via email. You can then release the message from quarantine or delete it permanently. Otherwise, <%PM%> would drop the message without an option for action.
Open **Mail transport protection**
Condition
- Type: Sender's IP address
- Operation: is on the list
- List: Blocked IP list
Action
Type: Quarantine message, Log to events and Send event notification to an administrator

127

^ [Customize pre-defined rule](#)

> Objective: Customize pre-defined rule
> Details: Allow archive attachments in messages from specified IP addresses (internal systems, for example) while using the Forbidden archive file attachments rule
> Open the **Mail transport protection** rule set, select **Forbidden archive file attachments** and click **Edit**.
> **Condition**
> - Type: Sender's IP address
> - Operation: is not / is not any
> - Parameter: 1.1.1.2, 1.1.1.50-1.1.1.99

^ [Message body](#)

> Objective: Quarantine messages that contain certain strings in the Message body
> Create the following rule for **Mail transport protection**:
> **Condition**
> - Type: Message body
> - Operation: contains / contains one of, click **Add** type website URL or part of a URL
> **Action**
> Type: Quarantine message

^ [Store messages for non-existent recipients](#)

> Objective: Store messages for non-existent recipients
> Details: If you want to have all messages to non-existent recipients quarantined (regardless of being marked by Antivirus or Antispam protection)
> **Condition**
> - Type: Recipient validation result
> - Operation: is
> - Parameter: Contains invalid recipient
> **Action**
> Type: Quarantine message

Mail transport protection

You can configure detected threat actions on the transport layer for each ESET Mail Security module (Antivirus, Anti-Phishing and Antispam) separately.

Actions to take if cleaning not possible:

- **No action**—Retain infected messages that cannot be cleaned

- **Quarantine message**—Put infected messages into the quarantine mailbox

- **Reject message**—Reject an infected message

- **Drop message silently**—Delete messages without sending NDR (Non-Delivery Report)

> ℹ️ If you select **No action** and have the **Cleaning level** set to **No cleaning** in the [Antivirus and antispyware](#) [ThreatSense parameters](#), then the protection status will change to yellow. It is a security risk and we do not recommend that you use this combination. Change one or the other setting to achieve the best protection.

Action to take with a phishing message:

- **No action**—Keep the messages

- **Quarantine message**—Put messages marked as phishing in the quarantine mailbox

- **Reject message**—Reject messages marked as phishing

- **Drop message silently**—Delete messages without sending an NDR (Non-Delivery Report)

Action to take on spam messages:

- **No action**—Keep the messages

- **Quarantine message**—Put messages marked as spam in the quarantine mailbox

- **Reject message**—Reject messages marked as spam

- **Drop message silently**—Delete messages without sending an NDR (Non-Delivery Report)

Action to take on messages with a spoofed domain:

- **No action**—Keep the messages

- **Quarantine message**—Puts messages marked as spoofed in the quarantine mailbox

- **Reject message**—Reject messages marked as spoofed

- **Drop message silently**—Delete messages without sending an NDR (Non-Delivery Report)
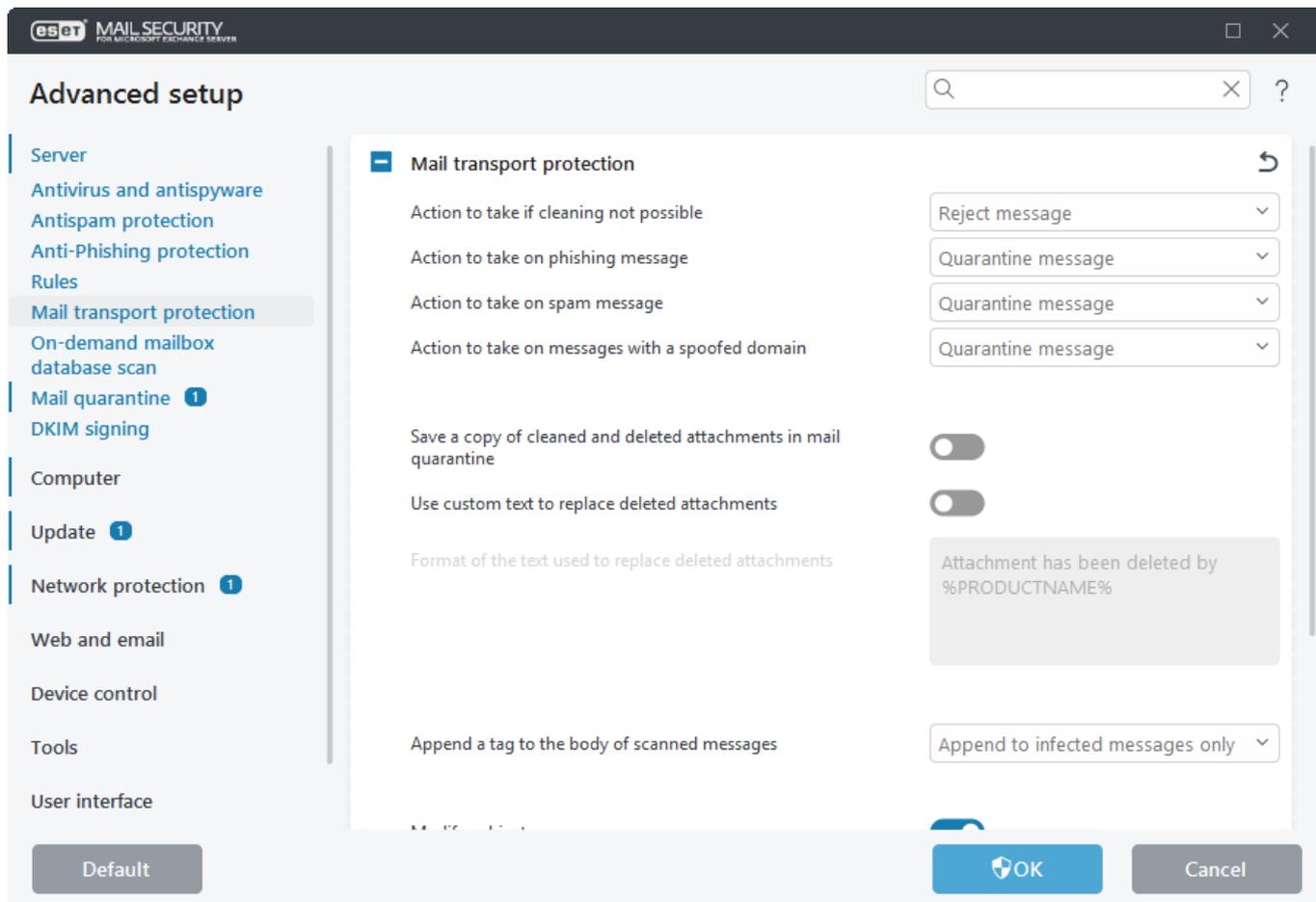
Save a copy of cleaned and deleted attachments in mail quarantine

A copy of the original file attachment will be stored in the mail quarantine.

Use custom text to replace deleted attachments

When enabled, you can specify custom text that replaces deleted attachments.

Format of the text used to replace deleted attachments

Replaces attachments with a text file that contains detailed information about an action taken. If you enable the setting above (**Use custom text**), you can modify the default text with your custom details using variables.

> Use variables when customizing your text that will be a replacement for deleted attachments in an email message.
> %PRODUCTNAME%
> %FILENAME%
> %VIRUSNAME%
> %DETECTIONNAME%
> %FILESIZE%
> ✓ %SENDERADDRESS%
> %FROMADDRESS%
> %DATETIME%
> Attachment %FILENAME%, with the size of %FILESIZE%, has been deleted by %PRODUCTNAME% due to the %DETECTIONNAME%
> The custom text format will have the following visible output:
> Attachment eicar_com.zip, with the size of 184 B, has been deleted by ESET Mail Security due to the Eicar test file.

SMTP Reject Response

You can specify a **Response code**, **Status code** and **Response message** that define the SMTP temporary denial response sent to the SMTP server if a message is refused. You can enter a response message in the following format:

Response code	Status code	Response message
250	2.5.0	Requested mail action okay, completed
451	4.5.1	Requested action aborted:local error in processing
550	5.5.0	Requested action not taken:mailbox unavailable
554	5.6.0	Invalid content

> ℹ️ You can also use system variables when configuring SMTP Reject Responses.

Add notification to the body of scanned messages offers three options:

- **Do not append to messages**—Information will not be added

- **Append to infected messages only**—Affects only infected messages

- **Append to all messages** (does not apply to internal messages)—All messages will be marked

Modify subject

When enabled, you can modify the templates added to the subject of infected messages, spam or phishing messages.

Template added to the subject of infected messages

ESET Mail Security will append a notification tag to the email subject with the value defined in the **Template added to the subject of infected messages** text field (pre-defined default text is `[found threat %VIRUSNAME%]`). This modification can be used to automate infected message filtering by filtering emails with a specific subject, for example using Rules or alternatively on the client side (if supported by the email client) to put those email messages in a separate folder.

Template added to the subject of spam messages

ESET Mail Security will append a notification tag to the email subject with the value defined in the **Template added to the subject of spam messages** text field (pre-defined default text it `[SPAM]`). This modification can be used to automate spam filtering by filtering emails with a specific subject, for example using Rules or alternatively on a client side (if supported by the email client) to put those email messages into a separate folder.

Template added to the subject of phish messages

ESET Mail Security will append a notification tag to the email subject with the value defined in the **Template added to the subject of phish messages** text field (pre-defined default text it `[PHISH]`). This modification can be used to automate spam filtering by filtering emails with a specific subject, for example using Rules or alternatively on a client side (if supported by the email client) to put those email messages into a separate folder.

> ℹ️ You can use system variables when editing text that will be added to the subject.

Mail transport advanced settings

You can customize mail transport protection settings.

Scan also messages received from authenticated or internal connections by

You can choose what scan should be performed on messages from authenticated sources or local servers. Scanning these messages is recommended because it increases protection, and it is necessary if you are using the built-in Microsoft SBS POP3 Connector to fetch email messages from external POP3 servers or mail services (for example, Gmail.com, Outlook.com, Yahoo.com, gmx.dem, etc.). For more information, see POP3 Connector and Antispam.

Choose a protection level from the drop-down menu. We recommend that you use **Antivirus protection** (default setting), especially for internal connections, as it is unlikely that phishing or spam messages will be distributed via your local servers. However, you can increase the protection for Microsoft SBS POP3 Connector by choosing **Antivirus and anti-phishing protection** or even **Antivirus, anti-phishing and antispam protection**.

> **i** This setting turns Antispam protection on/off for authenticated users and internal connections. Emails from non-authenticated connections are always scanned, even when you select **Do not scan**.

> **i** Internal messages from Outlook inside the organization are sent in TNEF format (Transport Neutral Encapsulation Format). Antispam does not support TNEF. Therefore, internal TNEF formatted emails will not be scanned for spam regardless of **Scan also messages received from authenticated or internal connections by** setting.

Remove existing SCL header before the scan

This option is enabled by default. You can disable it your requirement is to keep Spam Confidence Level (SCL) header.

Write scan results to message headers

When enabled, scan results are written into message headers. These message headers start with `X_ESET` making them easy to recognize (for example `X_EsetResult` or `X_ESET_Antispam`).

Mailbox database protection

If **Proactive scanning** is enabled, new inbound messages will be scanned in the same order they are received. If this option is enabled and a user opens a message that has not been scanned yet, this message will be scanned before other messages in the queue.

Background scanning

Allows scanning of all messages to run in the background (scanning runs on the mailbox and public folders store, for example the Exchange database). Microsoft Exchange Server decides whether a background scan will run or not based on various factors such as the current system load, number of active users, etc. Microsoft Exchange Server keeps a record of scanned messages and the virus signature database version used.

If you are opening a message that has not been scanned by the most current virus signature database, Microsoft Exchange Server sends the message to ESET Mail Security to be scanned before opening the message in your email client. You can choose to **Scan only messages with attachments** and filter based on time received using the following Scan time limit options:

- All messages

- Messages received within last year

- Messages received within last 6 months

- Messages received within last 3 months

- Messages received within last months

- Messages received within last week

Since background scanning can affect system load (scanning is performed after each detection engine update), we recommend that you schedule scans to run during non-work hours. Scheduled background scanning can be configured via a special task in the Scheduler/Planner.

When you schedule a Background scanning task you can set the launch time, the number of repetitions and other parameters available in the Scheduler/Planner. After the task has been scheduled, it will appear in the list of scheduled tasks and you can modify its parameters, delete it or temporarily deactivate the task.

Number of scan threads

Number of scan threads can be in range from 1 to 21. You can set the number of independent scan threads which used at same time. More threads on multiprocessor machines can increase the scan rate. For the best program performance we advise using an equal number for ThreatSense scan engines and scan threads.

Scan RTF message bodies

Option activates scanning of RTF message bodies. RTF message bodies may contain macro viruses.

> **i** Plain text email bodies are not scanned by VSAPI.

Actions to take if cleaning not possible:

- **No action**—No changes in message will apply

- **Truncate to zero length**—Attachment will be shortened to zero length

- **Replace content with action information**—Original body will be replaced with action information. Content of attachment will be replaced with action information.

- **Delete message**—Message will be deleted

Action to take on phishing message:

- **No action**—No changes in message will apply

- **Delete message**—Message will be deleted

> **i** Public folders are treated the same way as mailboxes. This means that public folders are scanned as well.

Background scan

This task type allows for database scan via VSAPI in the background. It lets your Exchange Server to run background scan if needed. The scan is triggered by the Exchange Server itself, this means that it is up to the Exchange Server whether the scan will be executed within allowed time.

We recommend you allow this task to run outside of peak hours when your Exchange Server is not busy, for example, at night-time. This is because the database background scan might puts certain amount of load on your system. Also, the time frame should not collide with any backups that might be running on your Exchange Server to prevent performance or availability issues.

> **i** Mailbox database protection must be enabled for the scheduled task to run. This type of protection is only available for Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 operating in the Mailbox Server role.

Timeout (hours)

Specify how many hours is your Exchange Server allowed to run the database background scan from the time this scheduled task is executed. When it reaches the timeout, Exchange will be instructed to stop its background scan.

On-demand mailbox database scan

> **i** If you are running Microsoft Exchange Server 2010, you can choose between Mailbox database protection and **On-demand mailbox database scan**. Only one protection type can be active at a time. If you decide to use **On-demand mailbox database scan** you must disable the integration of **Mailbox database protection** in **Advanced setup** (**F5**) under Server. Otherwise, **On-demand mailbox database scan** will not be available.

Host address—Name or IP address of the server running EWS (Exchange Web Services).

Username—Specify the credentials of a user that has appropriate access to EWS.

User password—Click **Set** next to **User password** and type the password for this user account.

> **!** To scan Public folders, the user account used for On-demand mailbox database scan must have a mailbox. Otherwise, *Failed to load public folders* will be displayed in the Database scan log, along with a more specific message returned by Exchange.

Mailbox access method—Allows you to select your preferred mailbox access method:

- **Impersonation**—Easier and faster setup is **ApplicationImpersonation role** which has to be assigned to the scanning account.

Assign ApplicationImpersonation role to a user

If this option is unavailable, you must specify a **Username**. Click **Assign** to automatically assign the ApplicationImpersonation role to the selected user. Alternatively, you can assign the ApplicationImpersonation role manually to a user account. A new unlimited EWS Throttling Policy is created for the user account. For more information, see Database scan account details.

- **Delegation**—Use this access type if you want to require access rights on individual mailboxes and can provide higher speeds when scanning large amounts of data.

Assign delegated access to a user

If this option is unavailable, you must specify a **Username**. Click **Assign** to automatically grant the selected user full access to all user and shared mailboxes. A new unlimited EWS Throttling Policy is created for the user account. For more information, see Database scan account details.

Use SSL

SSL must be enabled if EWS is set to Require SSL in IIS. If SSL is enabled, the Exchange Server certificate must be imported on the system with ESET Mail Security (if Exchange Server roles are on different servers). Settings for EWS can be found in IIS under Sites/Default website/EWS/SSL Settings.

> **i** Disable **Use SSL** only if you have EWS configured in IIS to not Require SSL.

Ignore server certificate error—If you are using a self-signed certificate, you can ignore the server certificate error.

Client certificate—Must be set only if EWS requires a client certificate. Click **Select** to select a certificate.

Action to take if cleaning not possible—This action field allows you to block infected content.

- **No action**—Take no action on the infected content of the message.

- **Move message to trash**—Is not supported for Public folder items, the Delete object action will be applied instead.

- **Delete object**—Deletes infected content of the message.

- **Delete message**—Delete the entire message, including its infected content.

- **Replace object with action information**—Removes an object and includes information about the object that was removed.

Action to take on a phishing message:

- **No action**—Keep the message even if it is marked as phishing.

- **Move message to trash**—Is not supported for Public folder items, the Delete object action will be applied instead.

- **Delete message**—Delete the entire message, including its infected content.

Number of scan threads

You can specify how many threads ESET Mail Security should use during the database scan. The higher the number, the better the performance. However, an increase in performance uses more resources. Fine-tune this setting to the desired value according to your requirements. The default value is set to 4 scan threads.

> **i** If you configure On-demand mailbox database scan to use too many threads, it may put too much of a load on your system, which might slow down other processes or even the whole system. You may encounter an error message saying, "*Too many concurrent connections opened.*"

Microsoft 365

Visible only if you have a Microsoft 365 hybrid environment.

User account for scanning a public folder

If you want to scan public folders, provide a principal user account name (password not required) for impersonation. Ensure the configuration of this user account is to have access to all public folders.

Mailbox database scan

Running a full email database scan in large environments can result in undesired system loads. To avoid this issue, run a scan on specific databases or mailboxes. Further minimize server system impact by filtering scan targets using message timestamps.

> ⚠ Incorrectly defined [rules](#) for On-demand mailbox database scan can cause irreversible changes to Mailbox databases. Always make sure you have the most recent backup of your Mailbox databases before running On-demand mailbox database scan with rules in place for the first time. Also, we highly recommend that you verify the rules are running according to expectations.
> For verification, define rules with Log to events action only because other actions can change your Mailbox databases. Once verified, you can add destructive rule actions such as **Delete attachment**.

The following item types are scanned in both **Public folders** and in user **Mailboxes**:

- Email

- Post

- Calendar items (meetings/appointments)

- Tasks

- Contacts

- Journal

Use the drop-down list to choose which messages to scan according to their time-stamp. For example, **Scan messages modified within the last week**, you can also choose to **Scan all messages** if required.

To enable or disable message attachment scanning, select the check box next to **Scan only messages with attachments**. Click **Edit** to select the public folder that will be scanned.

Click the ⚙ icon and modify the interval to **Stop scan if it runs longer than (minutes)**, and change to preferred time (anything between 1 to 2880 minutes).
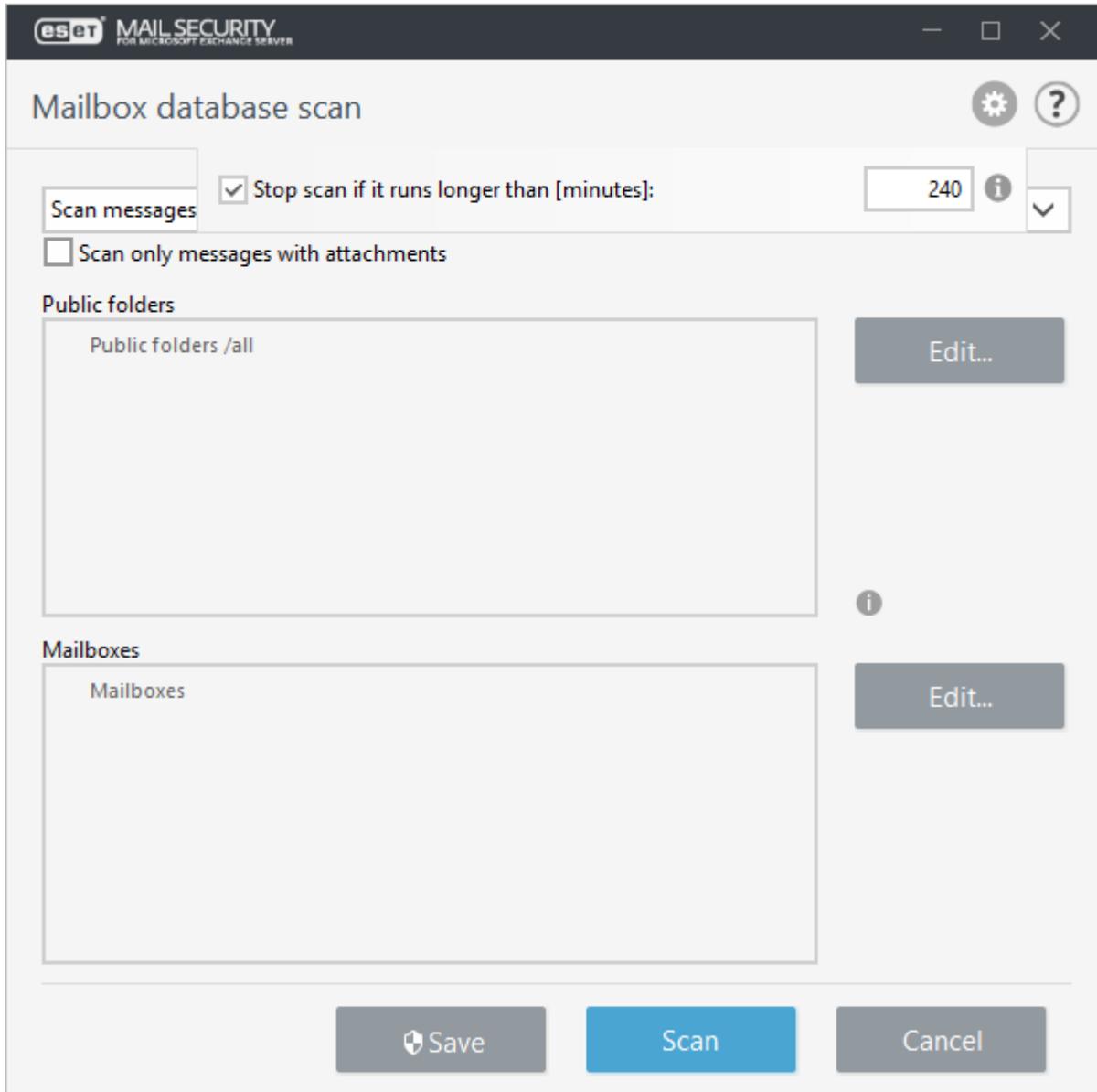
Select the check box(es) next to Server databases and Mailboxes you want to scan. Filter lets you find databases and mailboxes quickly, especially if there are a large number of mailboxes in your Exchange infrastructure.
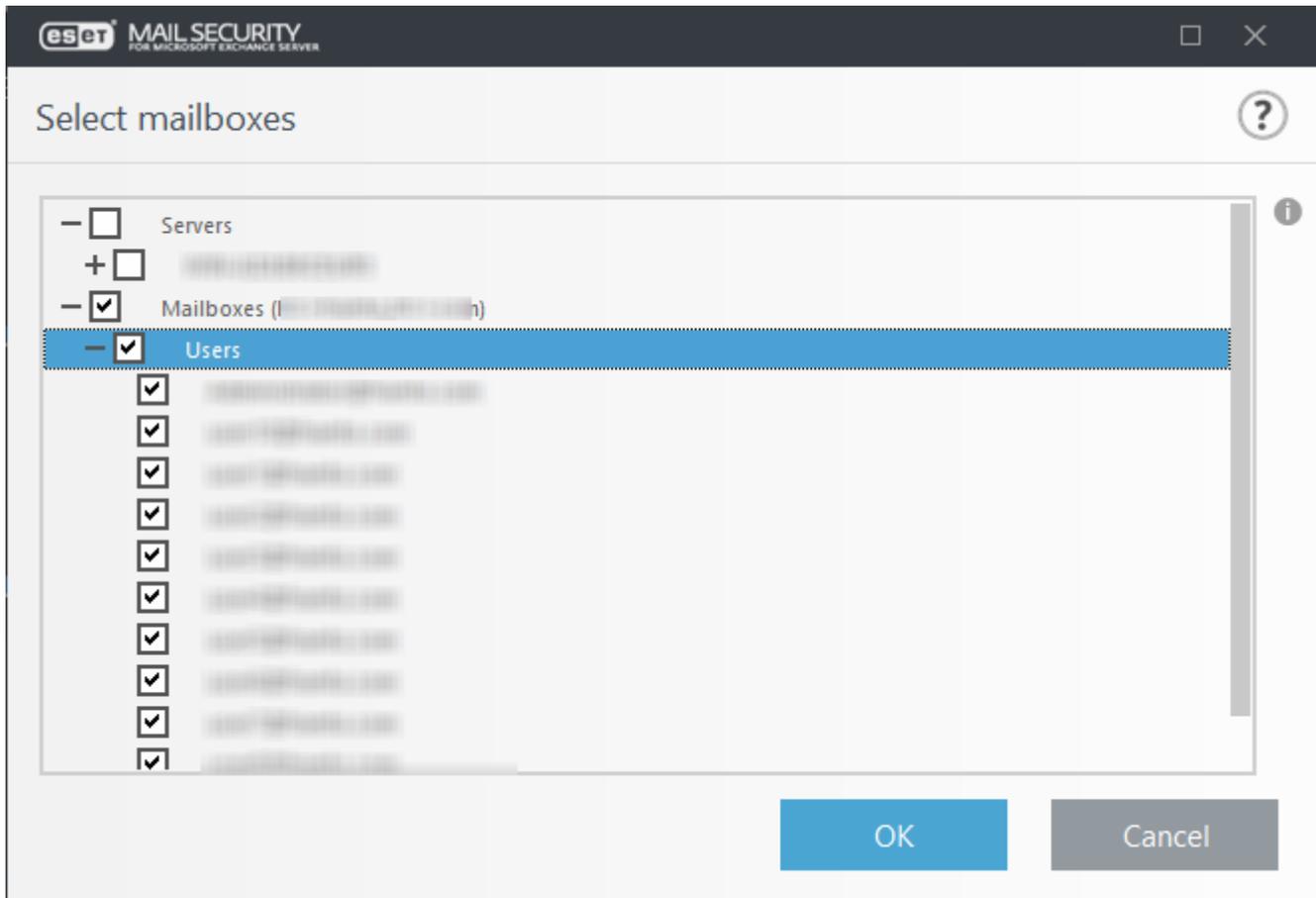
Click **Save** scan targets and parameters to the On-demand scan profile. You can now click **Scan**. If you have not previously specified Database scan account details a pop-up window will open asking for credentials. Otherwise, On-demand mailbox database scan will start.

If you do not see Built-in Administrator mailbox, verify that *UserPrincipalName* attribute is not empty.

> **i** If you are running Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 you can choose between Mailbox database protection and On-demand mailbox database scan, only one protection type can be active at a time. If you decide to use **On-demand mailbox database scan** you will need to disable integration of **Mailbox database protection** in **Advanced setup** > **Server**. Otherwise On-demand mailbox database scan will not be available.

Microsoft 365 mailbox scan

ESET Mail Security provides scanning functionality for Microsoft 365 hybrid environments. It is available and visible in ESET Mail Security only if you have a hybrid Exchange environment (on-premises and cloud). Both routing scenarios are supported through **Exchange Online** or an **on-premises** organization. For more details, see Transport routing in Exchange hybrid deployments.

To activate this feature, register ESET Mail Security scanner.

You can scan Microsoft 365 remote mailboxes and Public folders the same way you would with a traditional On-demand mailbox database scan.

Running a full email database scan in a large environment can result in undesired system loads. To avoid this issue, run a scan on specific databases or mailboxes. To further minimize system impact, use the time filter at the top of the window. For example, instead of using **Scan all messages**, you can select **Scan messages modified within last week**.

We recommend that you configure Microsoft 365. Press the **F5** key and click **Server** > **On-demand mailbox database scan**. Also, see the Database scan account details.

To see the Office 365 mailbox scan activity, check **Log files** > **Mailbox database scan**.

Additional mailbox items

On-demand mailbox database scanner settings let you enable or disable scanning of other mailbox items:

- Scan calendar

- Scan tasks

- Scan contacts

- Scan journal

i	If you experience performance issues, you can disable scanning of these items. Scans will take longer when these items are enabled.

Proxy server

If you use a proxy server between your Exchange Server with CAS role and Exchange Server where ESET Mail Security is installed, specify parameters of your proxy server. This is required because ESET Mail Security connects to Exchange Web Services (EWS) API via HTTP/HTTPS. Otherwise, Quarantine mailbox and Microsoft Exchange quarantine will not work.

Proxy server

Enter IP address or name of the proxy server you use.

Port

Enter port number of the proxy server.

Username, Password

Enter credentials if your proxy server requires authentication.

Database scan account details

This dialog window displays if you still need to specify username and password for the Database scan. Specify the credentials of the user who has access to EWS (Exchange Web Services) in this window and click **OK**. Alternatively, go to **Advanced setup** > **Server** > On-demand mailbox database scan.

1. Type the **User name**, click **Set**, enter the password for this user account and click **OK**.

2. Click the check box next to **Save account information** to save account settings. Otherwise, you will be prompted to type the account information every time you run an On-demand mailbox database scan.
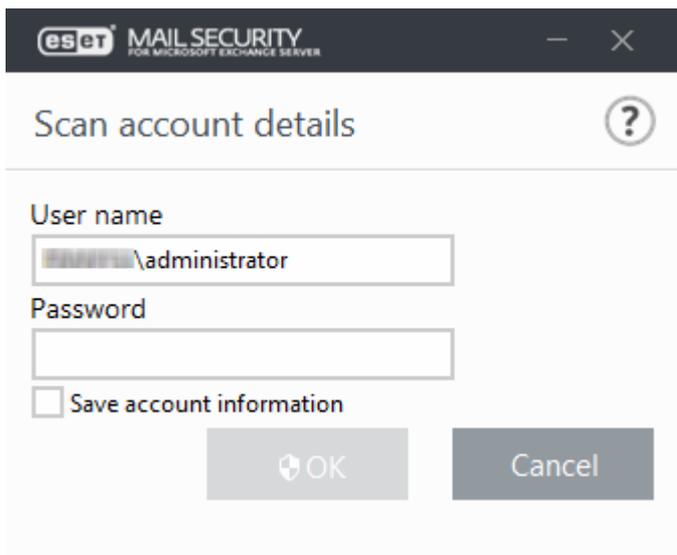
If a user account does not have appropriate access to Exchange Web Services (EWS), you can select **Create ApplicationImpersonation role assignment** to assign this role to the user account. Alternatively, you can assign the **ApplicationImpersonation role** manually.

> Scan accounts must have the **ApplicationImpersonation role** assigned to enable the scan engine to scan user mailboxes within the Exchange mailbox database(s). If you are running Exchange Server 2010 or later version, a new unlimited EWS Throttling Policy is created for the user account.
>
> ⚠ Ensure to configure the EWS Throttling Policy for the scan account to avoid too many operation requests by ESET Mail Security, which might otherwise cause some of the requests to timeout. See [EWS Best Practices](#) and [Understanding Client Throttling Policies](#) articles to learn about the Throttling Policies. Also, see [Change user throttling settings for specific users](#) article for further details and examples.

If you want to assign **ApplicationImpersonation role** to a user account manually and create new EWS Throttling Policy for this account, you can use the following commands (replace `ESET-user` with an actual account name in your system, you can also set limits for the EWS Throttling Policy by replacing `$null` with numbers):

Exchange Server 2010

```
New-ManagementRoleAssignment -Name:ESET-ApplicationImpersonation -
Role:ApplicationImpersonation -User ESET-user
```

This might take a few moments to apply

```
New-ThrottlingPolicy -Name ESET-ThrottlingPolicy -EWSFindCountLimit $null -
EWSFastSearchTimeoutInSeconds $null -EWSMaxConcurrency $null -
EWSPercentTimeInAD $null -EWSPercentTimeInCAS $null -
EWSPercentTimeInMailboxRPC $null

Set-ThrottlingPolicyAssociation -Identity user-ESET -ThrottlingPolicy ESET-
ThrottlingPolicy
```

Exchange Server 2013, 2016 and 2019

```
New-ManagementRoleAssignment -Name:ESET-ApplicationImpersonation -
Role:ApplicationImpersonation -User ESET-user
```

This might take a few moments to apply

```
New-ThrottlingPolicy -Name ESET-ThrottlingPolicy -EWSMaxConcurrency Unlimited -
EwsCutoffBalance Unlimited -EwsMaxBurst Unlimited -EwsRechargeRate Unlimited

Set-ThrottlingPolicyAssociation -Identity ESET-user -ThrottlingPolicy ESET-
ThrottlingPolicy
```

Mail Quarantine types

The Mail Quarantine manager is available for all three quarantine types:

- [Local quarantine](#)

- [Quarantine mailbox](#)

- [Microsoft Exchange quarantine](#)

You can see the Mail Quarantine contents of the in the [Mail Quarantine manager](#). Additionally, you can view the local quarantine in the [Mail Quarantine Web interface](#).

Store messages for non-existent recipients

This setting applies to messages marked to be quarantined by Antivirus protection, Antispam protection or based on Rules. When enabled, messages that were sent to recipients that do not exist in your Active Directory are stored in Mail quarantine. Disable this feature if you do not want to keep these messages in your Mail quarantine. When disabled, messages to unknown recipients will be dropped silently.

See the example if you want to have all messages to non-existent recipients quarantined.

Skip evaluation of rules when releasing emails

If you want to release a message from quarantine, it will not be evaluated by rules. This prevents the message from being put back into quarantine, and the released message will be successfully delivered to the recipient. This feature is only used when the Administrator releases the message. If you disable this feature, or if a user other than the Administrator releases a message, the message will be evaluated by rules.

> **i** If you run a clustered environment and release a message from quarantine, the message will not get quarantined again by the other ESET Mail Security nodes. It is achieved by the synchronization of the rules between the cluster nodes.

Mail signature seed for multi-server environment

You can skip the evaluation of rules when releasing emails in a multi-server environment. Type the same seed value (a string of characters, something like a passphrase) on all servers where you want to establish trust.

Format for attachment envelope

When an email message is released from quarantine, it is attached to a new message (attachment envelope), which is then delivered to the recipient. The recipient receives the original message that is released from mail quarantine as an attachment. You can use the pre-defined envelope format or modify it to your requirements using the available variables.

Use ESET Cluster to store all quarantined messages on one node

If you are using ESET Cluster, this option is available. We recommend that you use this function, because it allows you to keep the Local quarantine file store in one place, the master node.

Master node

Specify which server is the master node of your ESET Cluster. You will then access and manage the Local quarantine on the master node (you can use Mail Quarantine manager from the main program window or Mail Quarantine Web interface).

Local quarantine

The Local quarantine uses your local file system to store quarantined emails and an SQLite database as an index. Stored quarantined email files, as well as database files, are encrypted for security reasons. These files are located under C:\ProgramData\ESET\ESET Mail Security\MailQuarantine (on Windows Server 2012).

> **i** If you want quarantined files stored on a different disk besides the default C: drive, change the Data folder to your preferred path during ESET Mail Security installation.

Local quarantine features:

- Stores SPAM and quarantined email messages in a local file system, not an Exchange mailbox database

- Encrypts and compresses locally stored quarantined email files

- Uses Mail Quarantine Web interface as an alternative to Mail Quarantine manager

- Sends quarantine reports as a scheduled task to a specified email address

- Removes quarantined email files from the quarantine window (after 21 days by default), and stores them in a file system until automatic deletion after a specified number of days

- Automatically deletes old email files (after three days by default); for more information see File storage settings

- Restores removed quarantined email files using eShell (assuming that they've not been deleted from the file system yet).

- Allows you to Inspect quarantined email messages and decide to delete or release them; to view and manage locally quarantined email messages, you can use Mail Quarantine manager from the main program window or Mail Quarantine Web interface.

> **i** The disadvantage of using Local quarantine is that if you run ESET Mail Security on multiple servers with Hub Transport Server roles, you must manage each server's Local quarantine separately. The more mail servers you have, the more quarantines you must manage.

File storage

In this section, you can change settings for File storage used by the local quarantine.

Compress quarantined files

Compressed quarantined files take up less disk space, but if you decide not to compress files, you can click the toggle to disable compression.

Clear old files after (days)

After messages are held for a specified number of days, they are removed from the quarantine window. However, the files will not be deleted from the disk. Because files are not deleted from the file system, you can recover them using eShell.

Clear deleted files after (days)

This setting deletes files from the disk after specified number of days, and you cannot recover them after they have been deleted (unless you have a file system backup solution).

Web interface

The Mail Quarantine Web interface is an alternative to Mail Quarantine manager; however, it is only available for Local quarantine.

> **i** The Mail Quarantine Web interface is not available on a server with the Edge Transport Server role because the Active Directory is not accessible for authentication.

The Mail Quarantine Web interface lets you view the mail quarantine state. It also allows you to manage quarantined email objects. This web interface is accessible via links in quarantine reports or by entering a link into your web browser.

You must authenticate using domain credentials to access the Mail Quarantine Web interface. Edge will automatically authenticate a domain user. However, the web page certificate must be valid, Automatic logon must be enabled in Microsoft Internet Explorer, and you must add the Mail Quarantine website to Local intranet sites.

Any user in the Active Directory can access the Mail Quarantine Web interface but they will only see quarantined items sent to their email address (including the user's aliases). The Administrator can see all quarantined items for all recipients.

> **!** ESET Mail Security is not using IIS to run the Mail Quarantine Web interface. Instead, it uses HTTP server API, including SSL support, to allow data exchange over secure HTTP connections.

Web url

This is the URL where interface of Mail Quarantine will be available. By default, it is the server's FQDN with `/quarantine` (for example, `mailserver.company.com/quarantine`). You can specify your virtual directory instead of the default `/quarantine`. You can change the Web url by editing the value.

The Web value must be specified without a scheme (HTTP, HTTPS) or port number, use only the fqdn/virtualdirectory form. You can also use wildcards instead of FQDN.

After you modify the Web url, you cannot revert to the default by clicking the revert ⤺ icon. Remove the entry and leave the text box blank. Restart your server. When ESET Mail Security starts and finds the Web url is empty, it will automatically fill this field with the default `fqdn/quarantine` value.

> **i** ESET Mail Security supports Web URLs in four different forms:
> Strong wildcard (+/quarantine)
> Explicit (mydomain.com/quarantine)
> IP-bound weak wildcard (192.168.0.0/quarantine)
> Weak wildcard (*/quarantine)
> See the **Host-Specifier Categories** section of UrlPrefix Strings article for more information.

Web and report languages

This feature allows you to set the language of the Mail Quarantine Web interface and Quarantine reports.

HTTPS port

HTTPS port is used for the Web interface. The default port number is 443.

HTTP port

HTTP port is used for releasing emails from quarantine via email reports.

> **!** If you do not have an SSL certificate installed on IIS, configure HTTPS port binding. If you change the port number for HTTPS or HTTP, make sure to add the corresponding port binding in IIS.

Log release action to events

This action is written to [Log files](#) when releasing items from Mail quarantine.

Enable default administrators

By default, the administrator group members are granted admin access to the Mail Quarantine Web interface. Admin access has no restrictions and lets the Admin see quarantined items for all recipients. If you disable this option, only the users listed in Additional access rights (see below) can access the Mail Quarantine Web interface.

Additional access rights

This feature allows users to manage other users' Mail Quarantine. You can make quarantine administrators by granting a user (or group) additional access to another user's (or all group members') Mail Quarantine Web interface to manage quarantined items.

1. Click **Edit** to open the additional access rights window, and click **Add**.

2. Click **Select** and use the Active Directory object selector to choose a user or a group whose members will be granted access to the Mail Quarantine.

3. Select the **Access type** from the drop-down menu:

   • **Administrator**—The user has admin access to the Mail Quarantine Web interface.

   • **Delegated access**—The user (delegate) is allowed to see and manage quarantined messages for another recipient. Specify the Recipient address by typing an email address for a user whose quarantined messages will be managed by the delegate. If a user has aliases in the Active Directory, you can add additional access rights to each alias if desired.

   • **Delegated user or group**—Same as Delegated access, and the user can also use the Active Directory object selector to choose a user or a group whose members' quarantine will be managed.
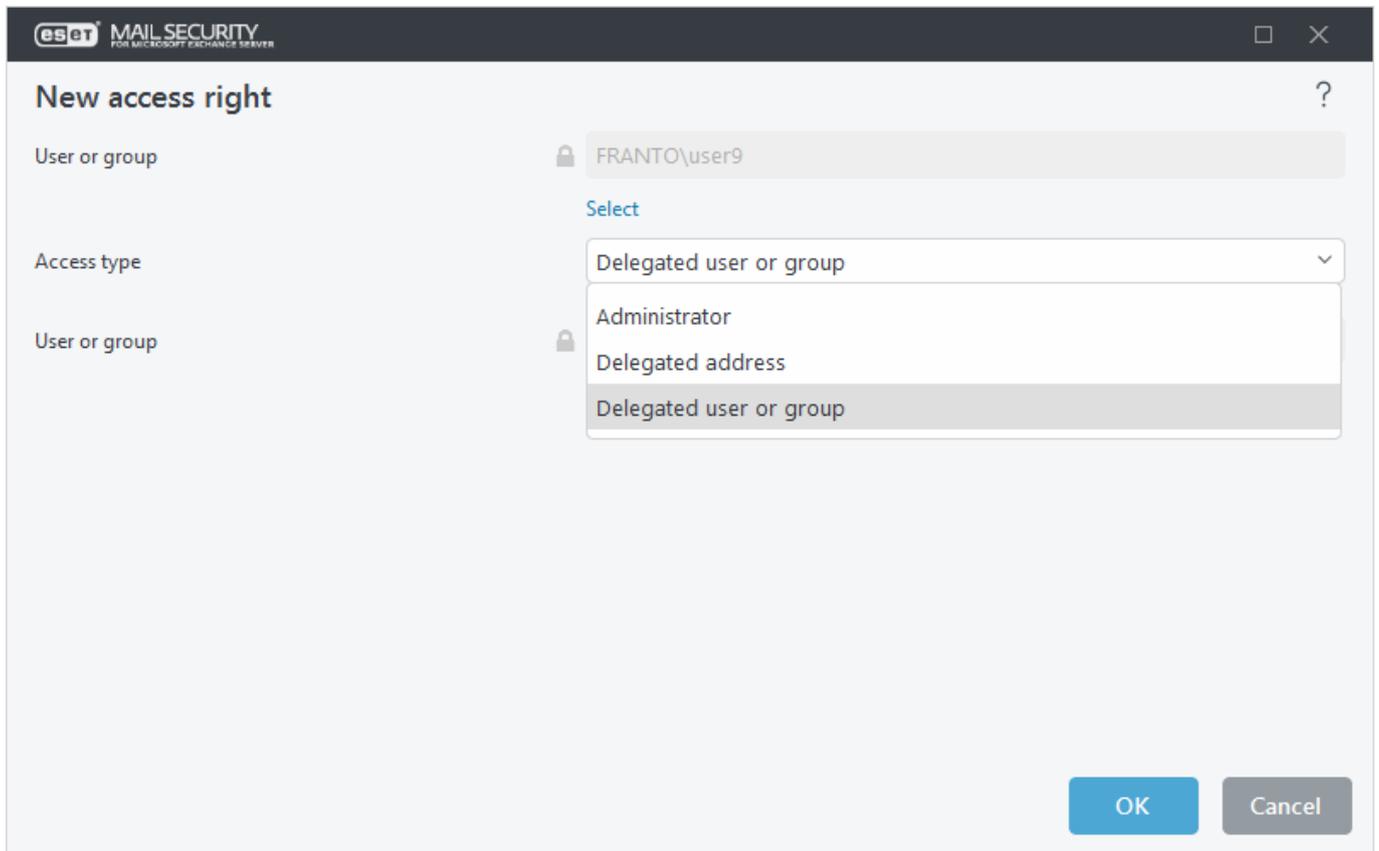
4. Click **Select** and choose a user or group whose member's quarantine will be managed by the delegate selected in Step 2.

An example of users that were granted additional access rights to the Mail Quarantine Web interface:
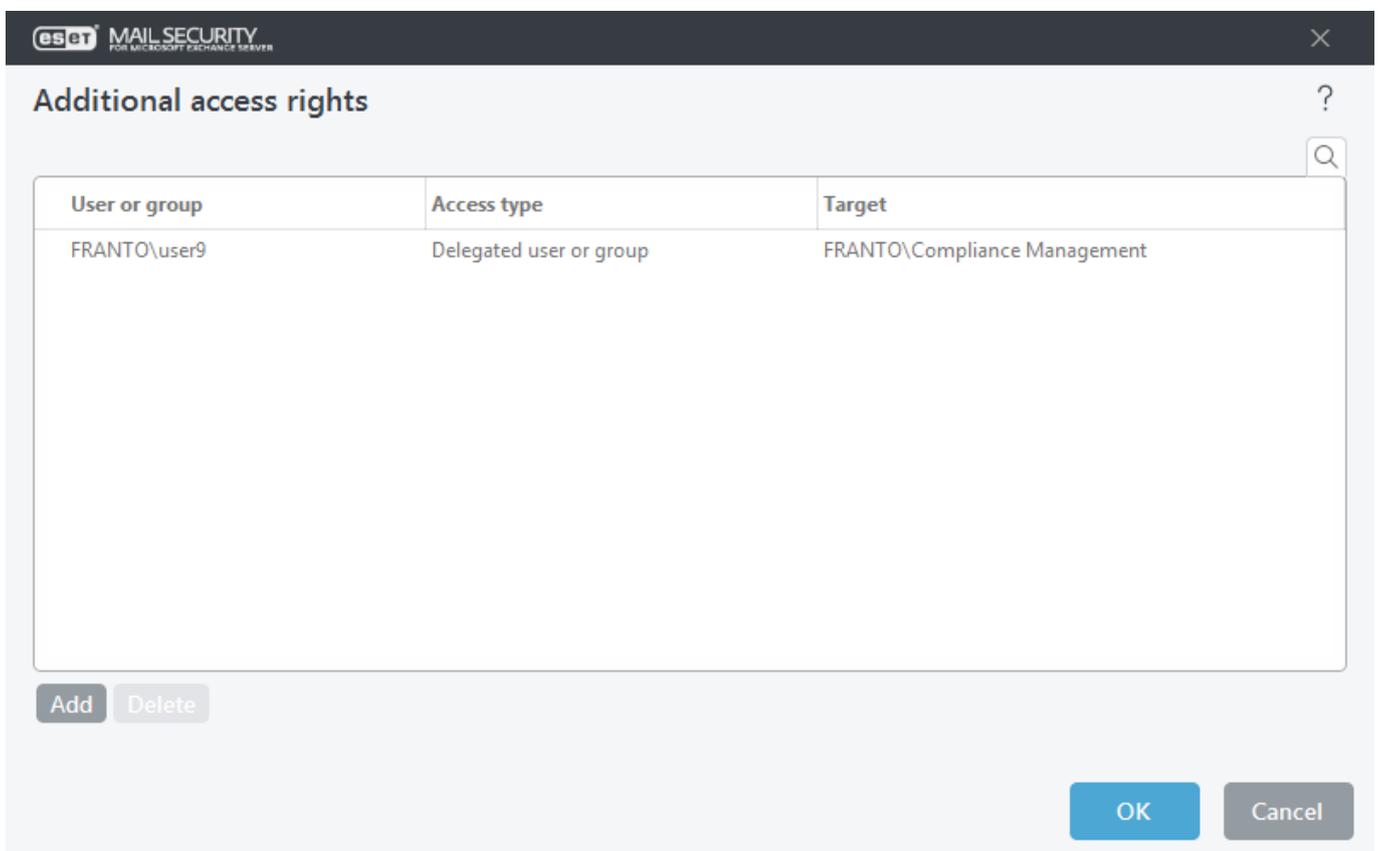
To access the Mail Quarantine web interface, open your web browser and use the URL specified in **Advanced**

setup (**F5**) > **Server** > **Mail quarantine** > **Web interface** > **Web url**.

Release

This feature releases email(s) to the original recipient(s) using the Replay directory and deletes it from quarantine. Click **Submit** to confirm the action.

> ℹ️ When releasing an email from quarantine, ESET Mail Security ignores the To: MIME header because it can be easily spoofed. Instead, it uses the original recipient information from the `RCPT TO:` command acquired during the SMTP connection. This ensures that the correct email recipient receives the message being released from quarantine.

Delete

This feature deletes items from quarantine. Click **Submit** to confirm the action.

When you click **Subject**, a notification window will open with details about the quarantined email, such as type, reason, sender, date, attachments, etc.

Click **Show headers** to review the quarantined email's header.

If desired, click **Release** or **Delete** to take action with a quarantined email message.

> ℹ You must close your browser window to fully log out of the Mail Quarantine Web interface. Otherwise, click **Go to quarantine view** to return to the previous screen.

You must close your browser to complete the sign out process.

Go to quarantine view.

> ⚠ If you are having problems accessing the Mail Quarantine Web interface from your browser or are getting the error HTTP Error 403.4 - Forbidden or similar, check which Quarantine type is selected and make sure it is **Local quarantine** and **Enable web interface** is enabled.

Send Mail Quarantine reports - scheduled task

Mail Quarantine reports are notification emails sent to selected users and administrators to inform them about their email messages that were quarantined by ESET Mail Security. Reports contain links that enables you, as well as users who receive the Mail Quarantine reports, to delete or release (deliver) false positive (FP) email message directly. Delivery of certain messages that were filtered out by rules or put into Mail Quarantine by Antivirus protection is not permitted for regular users.

> ✔ To start sending quarantine reports, create a scheduled task (Tools > Scheduler > Add task) and choose Send mail quarantine reports or Send mail quarantine administrator reports task type. When selecting recipients, linked mailboxes are included in the list of available mailboxes.

The Send mail quarantine reports / Send mail quarantine administrator reports task sends a Mail Quarantine report via email according to the specified scheduled task. This is an example of user Mail Quarantine report:

Mail quarantine report also contains a link to User Mail Quarantine Web interface (open online viewer).

> ℹ️ Send mail quarantine reports task is available only when you are using **Local quarantine**. You will not be able to use it with Quarantine mailbox and MS Exchange quarantine.

Sender address

Specify an email address which to display as a sender of the Mail Quarantine report.

Max count of records in report

You can limit the number of entries per report. Default count is set to 50.

Web URL

This URL will be included in the Mail Quarantine report so that the recipient can simply click the link to access the web interface of Mail Quarantine.

Recipients

Choose users who will be receiving Mail Quarantine reports. Click **Edit** to select the mailboxes for specific recipients (linked mailboxes are also supported).

> **i** Mail quarantine report will only be sent if there are quarantined messages. If the quarantine is empty or there are no new items since the last report, the report will not be sent. When the Mail quarantine report is sent, it will contain only newly added items since the last report (not the whole quarantine content).

> ✓ Objective: Create a scheduled task to send Mail Quarantine reports on a regular basis to yourself as an administrator, or to inform users of their spam messages currently stored in the mail quarantine.
> Navigate to **Tools** > **Scheduler** > **Add task** and open the wizard.
> Type the **Task name** and select **Task type** from the drop-down menu.
> **Send mail quarantine reports** (the report will contain only specific user's spam messages) or **Send mail quarantine administrator reports** (the report will contain all messages, the whole quarantine), click **Next**.
> Select one of the options to define when you want the task run. For example, **Weekly** at **10.00.00 AM** on **Friday**.
> Specify **Sender address** (administrator@mydomain.com).
> Click **Edit** to add **Recipients** from the list. Select the user's mailboxes who will be receiving Mail Quarantine reports.

User Mail Quarantine Web interface

You have been given access to a web interface where you can manage quarantined messages such as spam, sender spoofed or phishing, and messages filtered out by rules that were set by administrator. Normally, you can see only messages that were sent to your email address and were quarantined. However, if you have been delegated to manage other users' quarantined messages, you will also see messages of those users. You can distinguish messages by recipients. Use the search function to filter messages by recipient, for example.

You can choose an action to perform with a messages, or multiple messages, such as **release**, **delete** or **no action**. Availability of actions depend on the access level and rule settings, for example, you might not be able to release or delete certain types of messages.

If you have been assigned administrator access, you will see all quarantined messages for all users and can perform any action.

Managing your quarantined messages:

The Mail Quarantine Web interface allows you to view what has been quarantined. If you have delegated access or even administrator, you will see other quarantined messages as well.

You can change the number of entries per page (page size) in the lower left corner of the window.

If there are too many messages, use the Search feature in the upper bar to search for a specific email or to filter the content by Subject, Sender or Recipient (Recipient is only available for users with delegated or administrator access). Additionally, you can use the check boxes to show only message of a certain type (**spam**, **malware**, **rule**, **phishing** and **sender spoofed**).

To release (deliver) a message that was quarantined as a result of false positive during classification, use radio buttons on the right and select **Release**. To delete a message, select **Delete** action.

You can select multiple messages with the appropriate action at the same time. When your selection is complete, click **Submit**.

Messages marked to be released are then delivered to your mailbox, or to the original recipient's mailbox if you have delegated access and are releasing messages for other user(s). Messages marked to be deleted are removed from the quarantine permanently.

> ℹ️ Both actions, **Release** and **Delete**, are irreversible after you click **Submit**.

The view automatically refreshes when you click Submit, but you can refresh the view manually by using the refresh button on your web browser, or by pressing **F5** key on your keyboard.

> ℹ️ Only spam and sender-spoofed messages can be released. It is not allowed to release malware, phishing and rule-type messages. Ask your administrator for assistance if you need to release such a message.

You do not need to delete quarantined messages regularly, and they are removed automatically after a period of time specified by the administrator.

> ℹ️ You must close your web browser window to log out of the Mail Quarantine Web interface completely. Otherwise, click Go to quarantine view to return to the previous screen.

Quarantine mailbox and Microsoft Exchange quarantine

If you decide not to use Local quarantine, you have two options, either quarantine mailbox or MS Exchange quarantine. Whichever option you choose, you need to create a dedicated user with a mailbox (for example, main_quarantine@company.com), which will then be used to store quarantined email messages. The Mail Quarantine manager will also use this user and mailbox to view and manage items in the quarantine. You will need to specify the account details of this user in the Quarantine manager settings.

> ℹ️ The advantage of using Quarantine mailbox/Microsoft Exchange quarantine over Local quarantine is that mail quarantine items are managed from one place regardless of how many servers with Hub Transport Server role are within the infrastructure. Unlike Local quarantine, Quarantine mailbox / MS Exchange quarantine, SPAM and quarantined email messages are stored within Exchange mailbox database(s). Anyone with access to the quarantine mailbox can manage quarantined messages.

When comparing Quarantine mailbox and MS Exchange quarantine, both options use a dedicated mailbox as an underlying mechanism for storing quarantined messages, but they differ slightly in the way how email messages are delivered to the mailbox. Quarantine mailbox vs MS Exchange quarantine:

Quarantine mailbox

ESET Mail Security creates a separate wrapper email with additional information and the original emails as an attachment and delivers it to the mailbox.

Specify message quarantine address (for example, main_quarantine@company.com).

> ⚠️ We do not recommend you using the Administrator user account as the quarantine mailbox.

MS Exchange quarantine

Microsoft Exchange Server is responsible for delivering the email to the mailbox itself. The mailbox must be set as a Quarantine at the organization level in the Active Directory (by a PowerShell command listed below).

> ℹ️ By default, internal quarantine is not activated within Microsoft Exchange Server. Unless you have it activated, open Exchange Management Shell and type in following command (replace `Name@domain.com` with an actual address of your dedicated mailbox): `Set-ContentFilterConfig -QuarantineMailbox name@domain.com`

ESET Mail Security uses Microsoft Exchange quarantine system (this applies to Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 and later versions). In this case, the Exchange's internal mechanism is used to store potentially infected messages

and SPAM.

Quarantine manager settings

Host address

Will appear automatically if your Exchange Server with Client Access Server (CAS) role is present locally. Alternatively, if the CAS role is not present on the same server with ESET Mail Security installed but it can be found within Active Directory (AD), the host address will appear automatically. If it does not appear, you can type the host name manually. Automatic detection will not work on an Edge Transport Server role. IP address is not supported, you need to use the host name of the CAS server.

Username

Dedicated [quarantine user account](#) you have created for storing quarantined messages (or an account that has access to this mailbox via access delegation). On Edge Transport Server role that is not part of the domain, it is necessary to use the whole email address (for example *main_quarantine@company.com*).

Password

Type password of your quarantine account.

Use SSL

Needs to be enabled if Exchange Web Services (EWS) is set to **Require SSL** in IIS. If SSL is enabled, Exchange Server certificate must be imported on the system with ESET Mail Security (If Exchange Server roles are on different servers). Settings for the EWS can be found in IIS in Sites/Default web site/EWS/SSL Settings.

> **i** Only disable **Use SSL** when Exchange Web Services (EWS) is configured in IIS to not require SSL.

Ignore server certificate errors

Ignores following states: self-signed, wrong name in certificate, wrong usage, expired.

Proxy server

If you use a proxy server between your Exchange Server with CAS role and Exchange Server where ESET Mail Security is installed, specify parameters of your proxy server. This is required because ESET Mail Security connects to Exchange Web Services (EWS) API via HTTP/HTTPS. Otherwise, Quarantine mailbox and Microsoft Exchange quarantine will not work.

Proxy server

Enter IP address or name of the proxy server you use.

Port

Enter port number of the proxy server.

Username, Password

Enter credentials if your proxy server requires authentication.

Quarantine manager account details

This dialog window will display if you have not specified account details (username and password) for your Quarantine manager. Specify credentials for a user with access to the quarantine mailbox and click **OK**. Alternatively, press **F5** to access **Advanced setup** and select **Server** > **Mail Quarantine** > Quarantine manager settings.

Type the **User name** and **Password** for your quarantine mailbox.

Click the check box next to **Save account information** to save account settings for future use when accessing Quarantine manager.

DKIM Signing

DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) signing is a method to secure outbound email messages and make verification easier. This method gives receiving mail servers an accurate way to distinguish genuine messages from spam.

DKIM authentication works the following way:

• Outbound email message headers are signed with DKIM private key

• Receiving mail server checks the DNS DKIM record that contains a public key

• If the signature with the private key in the message headers matches the DNS DKIM record public key, the email is considered genuine and is delivered to the recipient(s)

• If the signature and public key do not match, what happens to the email message depends on the receiving mail server's configuration (it may have specific rules in place, for example ESET Mail Security uses the DKIM result rule condition for this purpose)

To use the ESET Mail Security DKIM Signing feature, ensure you have the DNS DKIM record configured for your domain. For details on creating a DKIM record, see the What is DKIM record and how to create it? article. The article also includes an example of a DKIM record. Also, you can try using an online DKIM Generator to generate DKIM private and public keys.

When done, we suggest you use the [DKIM Record Checker](#) or [MXToolBox](#) to verify that the public DKIM key is present and the syntax is correctly implemented.

Configure DKIM Signing in ESET Mail Security by specifying DKIM domains and a list of email headers to be signed. DKIM signature is added to selected message headers. Each DKIM signature contains information that mail servers can use to verify an email message's authenticity as they pass it to the final destination. If you are using multiple domains for outbound messages, you can configure DKIM Signing for each domain separately.

> **i** Enable **DKIM signing** under **Server** > [Integration](#) in **Advanced setup**. For [Agent priority setup](#), we recommend you keep the ESET DKIM Agent priority in last place, at the bottom, to ensure the headers are signed last after any modifications done by previous agents.

DKIM domains

Define settings for each domain for DKIM signing. Click **Edit** to open the DKIM domains window. Click **Add** to create **New DKIM settings** or Edit to modify existing ones.

- **Domain**—Type in the domain (for example, *domainname.local*)

- **Selector**—Specify a selector for a DKIM signature attribute; it is then is recorded in the DKIM-Signature header field

- **Client certificate**—Click **Select** and choose the client certificate used for DKIM signing
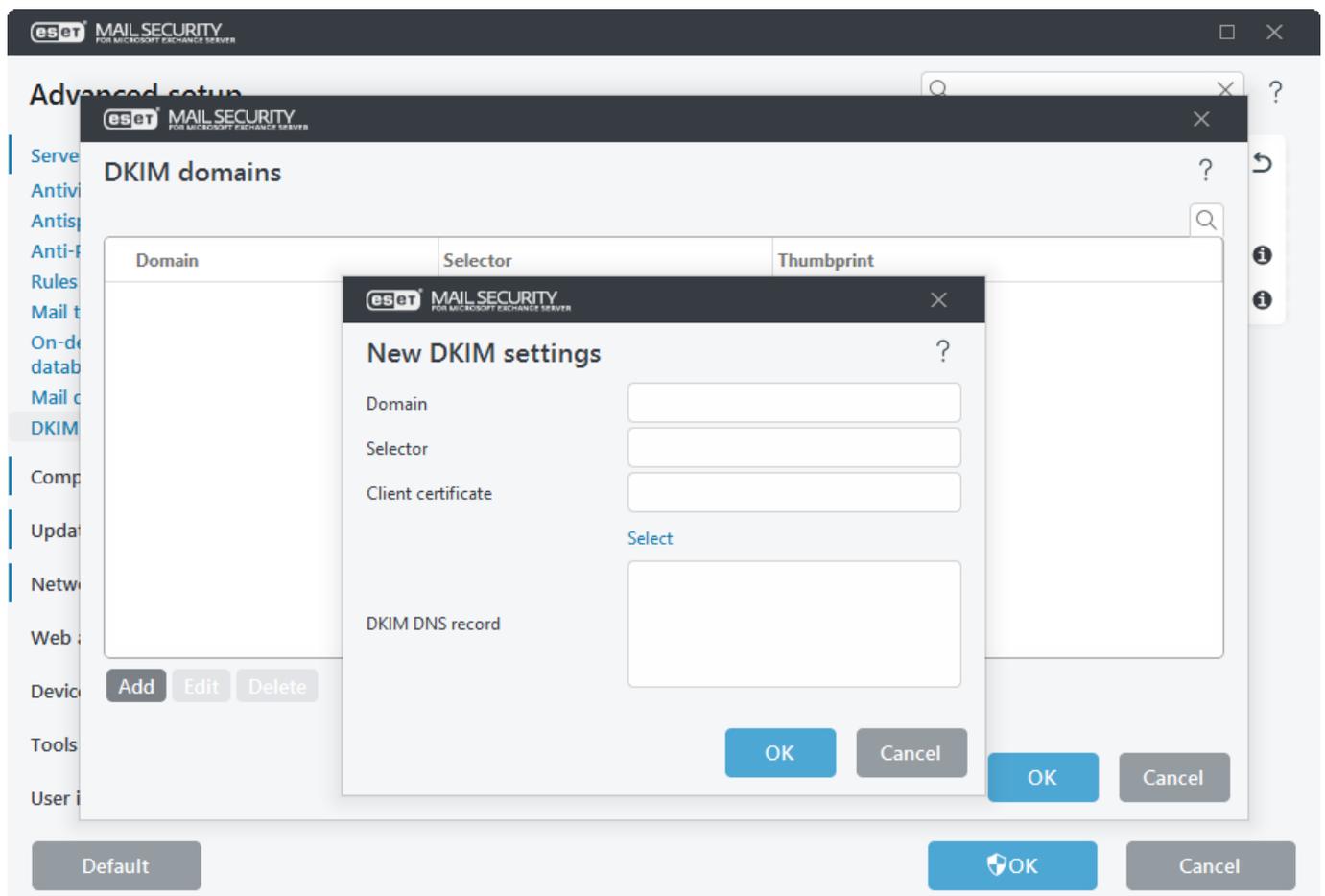
List of email headers to be signed

Click **Edit** to open the List of email headers to be signed window, click **Add** to add new headers or **Edit** to modify

existing headers in the list.
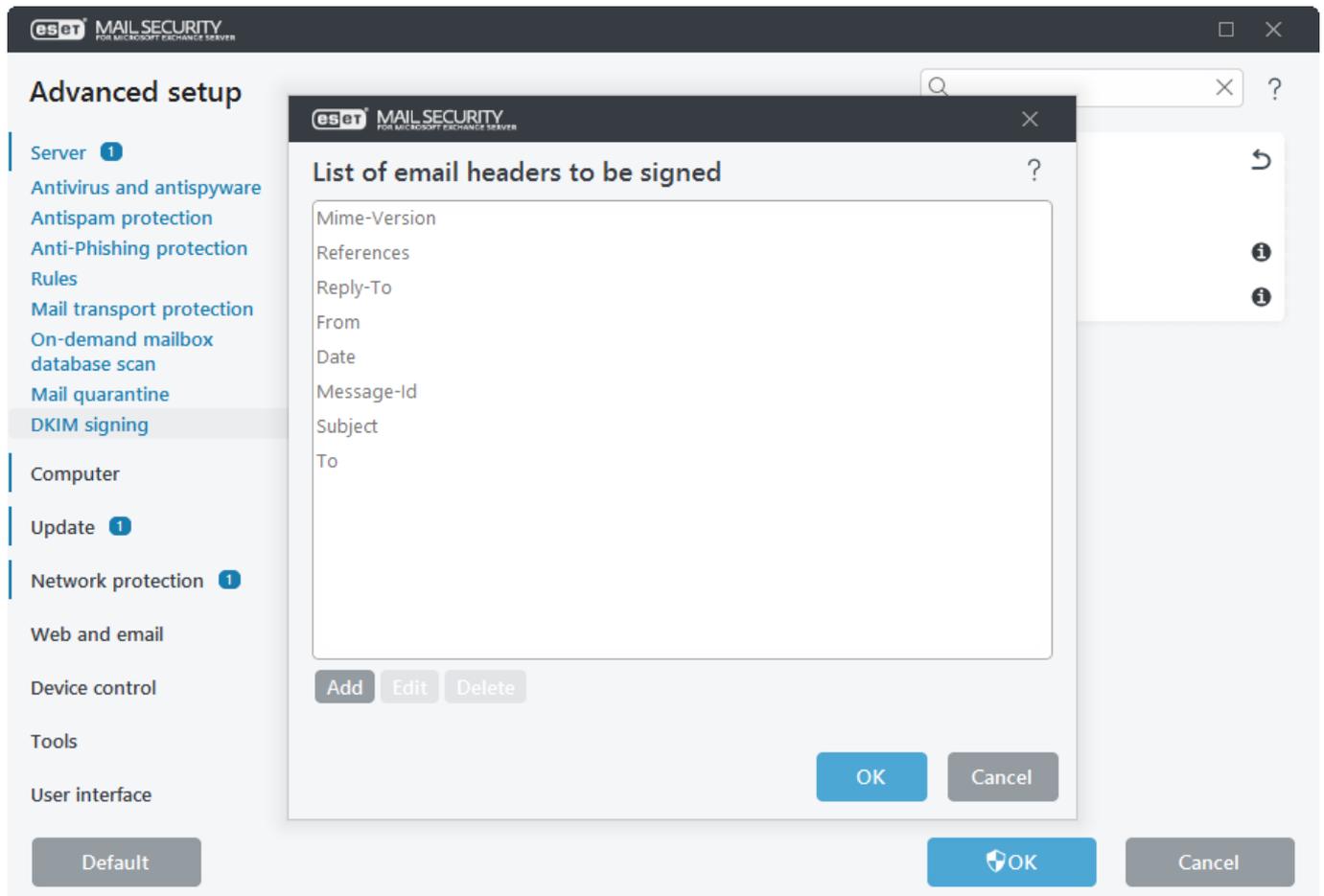
Antivirus test

To verify that real-time protection is detecting viruses, use a test file from eicar.com. This is a harmless file detectable by all antivirus programs created by the EICAR company (European Institute for Computer Antivirus Research).

To test your Antivirus functionality, create a text file that contains the following string:

`X50!P%@AP[4\PZX54(P^)7CC)7}$EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!$H+H*`

For more information and to download test files, visit https://www.eicar.org/download-anti-malware-testfile/

Antispam test

Using a GTUBE (Generic Test for Unsolicited Bulk Email) test string, you can verify that the ESET Mail Security Antispam feature detects incoming spam messages.

To test the Antispam functionality, send an email with the following 68-byte string in the message body:

`XJS*C4JDBQADN1.NSBN3*2IDNEN*GTUBE-STANDARD-ANTI-UBE-TEST-EMAIL*C.34X`

Use the string as is (one line without whitespace or line breaks). You can download suitable email messages in RFC-822 format.

Anti-Phishing test

To test the anti-phishing functionality, send an email with the following link (URL) in the message body or subject:

https://www.amtso.org/check-desktop-phishing-page/

To see anti-phishing mail protection activity, check to **Log files** > Mail server protection log. It will contain information about email messages and the phishing links found.

General settings

You can configure general settings and options based on your needs. The menu on the left includes the following categories:

Computer

Enable or disable detection of potentially unwanted, unsafe, suspicious applications and Anti-Stealth protection. Specify exclusions of processes or files and folders. Configure real-time file system protection, ThreatSense parameters, cloud-based protection (ESET LiveGrid®), malware scans (on-demand computer scans and other scan options), Hyper-V scan and HIPS.

Update

Configure update options such as profiles, detection engine age, snapshots for module rollback, update type, custom update server, connection/proxy server, update mirror, access to update files, HTTP server, user account details for network connection and more.

Network protection

Manage network protection - Known networks, Zones, Network attack protection (IDS), Brute-force attack protection and Botnet protection.

Web and email

Configure Protocol filtering and exclusions (excluded applications and IP addresses), SSL/TLS protocol filtering options, email client protection (integration, email protocols, alerts and notifications), web access protection (HTTP/HTTPS web protocols and URL address management) and email client anti-phishing protection.

Device control

Enable integration and configure device control rules and groups.

Tools configuration

Customize tools, such as ESET CMD, ESET RMM, WMI provider, ESET PROTECT scan targets, Windows Update notifications, Log files, Proxy server, Email notifications, Diagnostics, Cluster and more.

Notifications

Configure notifications to be shown on desktop or sent by email for Application statuses, Desktop notification, Interactive alerts and Forwarding.

[User interface](#)

Configure the main program window, License information, Password protection, eShell execution policy and more.

Computer

Detection engine guards against malicious system attacks by scanning files, emails and network communication. If an object classified as malware is detected, remediation will start. Detection engine can eliminate it by first blocking it and then taking action such as cleaning, deleting or moving to quarantine.

Real-time & Machine learning protection

Advanced machine learning is now a part of the detection engine as an advanced layer of protection, which improves detection based on machine learning. Read more about this type of protection in the [glossary](#). You can configure Reporting and Protection levels of the following categories:

Malware

A computer virus is a malicious code prepended or appended to existing files on your computer. However, the term "virus" is often misused. "Malware" (malicious software) is a more accurate term. Malware detection is performed by the detection engine module combined with the Machine learning component. Read more about these types of applications in the [glossary](#).

Potentially unwanted applications (PUAs)

A Potentially unwanted application is a software with an intent not unequivocally malicious, however; it may install additional unwanted software, change the behavior of the digital device, perform activities not approved or expected by the user or has unclear objectives.

This category includes advertising display software, download wrappers, various browser toolbars, software with misleading behavior, bundleware, trackware, etc. Read more about these types of applications in the [glossary](#).

Potentially suspicious applications

Is a software compressed with [packers](#) or protectors frequently used to deter reverse engineering or to obfuscate the content of the executable (for example, to hide the presence of malware) by proprietary methods of compression and/or encryption.

This category includes: all unknown applications that are compressed with a packer or protector frequently used to compress malware.

Potentially unsafe applications

This classification is given for commercial, legitimate software that might be misused for malicious purposes. An unsafe application refers to legitimate commercial software that has the potential to be misused for malicious purposes.

This category includes: cracking tools, license key generators, hacking tools, remote access or control tools,

password-cracking applications and keyloggers (programs that record each keystroke typed by a user). This option is disabled by default.

Read more about these types of applications in the glossary.

Read the following before modifying a threshold (or level) for category Reporting or Protection:

⌃ Reporting

Reporting is performed by the detection engine and machine learning component. You can set the reporting threshold to better suit your environment and needs. There is not a single correct configuration. Therefore, we recommend that you monitor the behavior within your environment and decide whether a different Reporting setting is more suitable.

Reporting does not take action with objects, it passes information to a respective protection layer, and the protection layer takes action accordingly.

Aggressive	**Reporting configured to maximum sensitivity. More detections are reported. While the Aggressive setting may appear to be the safest, it can often be too sensitive, which might even be counterproductive.**
	ⓘ The aggressive setting may falsely identify objects as malicious, and action will be taken with such objects (depending on Protection settings).
Balanced	This setting is an optimal balance between performance and accuracy of detection rates and the number of falsely reported objects.
Cautious	Reporting configured to minimize falsely identified objects while maintaining a sufficient level of protection. Objects are reported only when the probability is evident and matches malicious behavior.
Off	Reporting is not active. Detections are not found, reported or cleaned.
	ⓘ Malware reporting cannot be deactivated; therefore, the Off setting is not available for Malware.

If you want to Revert settings in this section to their default values, click the "U-turn" arrow next to the section header. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.

⌃ Protection

When an object is reported based on the configuration above and the machine learning results, it is blocked and and action is taken (cleaned, deleted or moved to Quarantine).

Aggressive	**Reported aggressive (or lower) level detections are blocked, and automatic remediation (i.e., cleaning) is started.**
Balanced	Reported balanced (or lower) level detections are blocked, and automatic remediation (i.e., cleaning) is started.
Cautious	Reported cautious level detections are blocked, and automatic remediation (i.e., cleaning) is started.
Off	Reporting is not active, no detections are not found, reported or cleaned.
	ⓘ Malware reporting cannot be deactivated, therefore the Off setting is not available for Malware.

If you want to Revert settings in this section to their default values, click the "U-turn" arrow next the to section header. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.

> ⓘ By default, the above machine learning protection settings apply to On-demand computer scan as well. If required, you can configure **On-demand & Machine learning protection** settings separately. Click the switch icon to disable **Use real-time protection settings** and proceed with configuration.

Machine learning protection

Detection engine guards against malicious system attacks by scanning files, emails and network communication. If an object classified as malware is detected, remediation will start. Detection engine can eliminate it by first blocking it and then taking action such as cleaning, deleting or moving to quarantine.

Real-time & Machine learning protection

Advanced machine learning is now a part of the detection engine as an advanced layer of protection, which improves detection based on machine learning. Read more about this type of protection in the glossary. You can configure Reporting and Protection levels of the following categories:

Malware

A computer virus is a malicious code prepended or appended to existing files on your computer. However, the term "virus" is often misused. "Malware" (malicious software) is a more accurate term. Malware detection is performed by the detection engine module combined with the Machine learning component. Read more about these types of applications in the glossary.

Potentially unwanted applications (PUAs)

A Potentially unwanted application is a software with an intent not unequivocally malicious, however; it may install additional unwanted software, change the behavior of the digital device, perform activities not approved or expected by the user or has unclear objectives.

This category includes advertising display software, download wrappers, various browser toolbars, software with misleading behavior, bundleware, trackware, etc. Read more about these types of applications in the glossary.

Potentially suspicious applications

Is a software compressed with packers or protectors frequently used to deter reverse engineering or to obfuscate the content of the executable (for example, to hide the presence of malware) by proprietary methods of compression and/or encryption.

This category includes: all unknown applications that are compressed with a packer or protector frequently used to compress malware.

Potentially unsafe applications

This classification is given for commercial, legitimate software that might be misused for malicious purposes. An unsafe application refers to legitimate commercial software that has the potential to be misused for malicious purposes.

This category includes: cracking tools, license key generators, hacking tools, remote access or control tools, password-cracking applications and keyloggers (programs that record each keystroke typed by a user). This option is disabled by default.
Read more about these types of applications in the glossary.

Read the following before modifying a threshold (or level) for category Reporting or Protection:

⌃ Reporting

Reporting is performed by the detection engine and machine learning component. You can set the reporting threshold to better suit your environment and needs. There is not a single correct configuration. Therefore, we recommend that you monitor the behavior within your environment and decide whether a different Reporting setting is more suitable.

Reporting does not take action with objects, it passes information to a respective protection layer, and the protection layer takes action accordingly.

Aggressive	Reporting configured to maximum sensitivity. More detections are reported. While the Aggressive setting may appear to be the safest, it can often be too sensitive, which might even be counterproductive.
	i The aggressive setting may falsely identify objects as malicious, and action will be taken with such objects (depending on Protection settings).
Balanced	This setting is an optimal balance between performance and accuracy of detection rates and the number of falsely reported objects.
Cautious	Reporting configured to minimize falsely identified objects while maintaining a sufficient level of protection. Objects are reported only when the probability is evident and matches malicious behavior.
Off	Reporting is not active. Detections are not found, reported or cleaned.
	i Malware reporting cannot be deactivated; therefore, the Off setting is not available for Malware.

If you want to Revert settings in this section to their default values, click the "U-turn" arrow next to the section header. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.

∧ Mail Transport & Machine learning protection

Reporting

Performed by detection engine and the machine learning component. Reporting does not take an action with objects (this is done by respective protection layer).

Protection

Configure parameters in Mail transport protection to affect what action is taken with reported objects. Also, you can configure a custom rule:

> ✔ Core installation example:
> **Objective**: Quarantine messages that contain malware or attachment that is password protected, encrypted or damaged
> Create the following rule for **Mail transport protection**:
> **Condition**
> Type: **Antivirus scan result**
> Operation: **is**
> Parameter: **Infected – not cleaned**
> **Action**
> Type: **Quarantine message**

If you want to Revert settings in this section to their default values, click the "U-turn" arrow next the to section header. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.

Configure Machine learning protection using eShell. The Context name in eShell is **MLP**. Open eShell in interactive mode and navigate to MLP:

```
server av transport mlp
```

See what is the current reporting setting for Suspicious applications:

```
get suspicious-reporting
```

If you want less strict reporting, change the setting to Cautious:

```
set suspicious-reporting cautious
```


Mailbox Database Protection & Machine learning protection

Reporting

Performed by detection engine and the machine learning component. Reporting does not take an action with objects (this is done by respective protection layer).

Protection

Configure parameters in [Mailbox database protection](#) to affect what action is taken with reported objects.

If you want to [Revert](#) settings in this section to their default values, click the "U-turn" arrow next the to section header. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.

Configure Machine learning protection using eShell. The Context name in eShell is **MLP**. Open eShell in interactive mode and navigate to MLP:

```
server av database mlp
```

See what is the current reporting setting for Suspicious applications:

```
get suspicious-reporting
```

If you want less strict reporting, change the setting to Cautious:

```
set suspicious-reporting cautious
```

⌃   [On-demand mailbox database scan & Machine learning protection](#)

Reporting

Performed by detection engine and the machine learning component. Reporting does not take an action with objects (this is done by respective protection layer).

Protection

Configure parameters in [On-demand mailbox database scan](#) to affect what action is taken with reported objects.

If you want to [Revert](#) settings in this section to their default values, click the "U-turn" arrow next the to section header. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.

Configure Machine learning protection using eShell. The Context name in eShell is **MLP**. Open eShell in interactive mode and navigate to MLP:

```
server av on-demand mlp
```

See what is the current reporting setting for Suspicious applications:

```
get suspicious-reporting
```

If you want less strict reporting, change the setting to Cautious:

```
set suspicious-reporting cautious
```

Exclusions

Exclusions enable you to exclude files and folders from scanning. To ensure that all objects are scanned for threats, we recommend only creating exclusions when it is absolutely necessary. Situations where you may need to exclude an object might include scanning large database entries that would slow your server during a scan or software that conflicts with the scan (for example, backup software).

> ⚠️ Not to be confused with [excluded extensions](#), [processes exclusions](#) or [exclusion filter](#).

> ℹ️ A threat within a file will not be detected by the Real-time file system protection module or Computer scan module if that file meets the criteria for exclusion from scanning.

Select the exclusions type and click **Edit** to add a new one or modify existing:

- [Performance exclusions](#) – Exclude files and folders from scanning.

- <u>Detection exclusions</u> – Exclude objects from scanning using specific criteria – path, file hash or detection name.

Performance exclusions

This feature allows you to exclude files and folders from scanning. Performance exclusions are useful to exclude file-level scanning of mission critical applications or when scanning causes abnormal system behavior or decreases performance.

Path

Excludes specific path (file or directory) for this computer. Do not use wildcards – asterisk (*) in the middle of a path. See the following <u>Knowledgebase article</u> for more information.

> **i** To exclude folder contents, do not forget to add the asterisk (*) at the end of the path (*C:\Tools*)*. *C:\Tools* will not be excluded, because from the scanner's perspective, *Tools* can also be a filename.

Comment

Add an optional Comment to easily recognize the exclusion in the future.

> ✓ Path exclusions using an asterisk:
> C:\Tools* – path must end with the backslash (\) and asterisk (*) to indicate that it is a folder and all folder content (files and subfolders) will be excluded
> C:\Tools*.* – the same behavior as C:\Tools* which means, it works recursively
> C:\Tools*.dat – will exclude dat files in the Tools folder
> C:\Tools\sg.dat – will exclude this specific file located in the exact path

> ✓ To exclude all files in a folder, type the path to the folder and use the mask *.*. To exclude doc files only, use the mask *.doc.
> If the name of an executable file has a certain number of characters (and characters vary) and you only know the first one for certain (say "D"), use the following format:
> D????.exe (question marks replace the missing / unknown characters)

> ✓ Use system variables like %PROGRAMFILES% to define scan exclusions.
> To exclude the Program Files folder using this system variable, use the path %PROGRAMFILES%\ (make sure to add the backslash at the end of path when adding to exclusions)
> To exclude all files in a %HOMEDRIVE% subdirectory, use the path %HOMEDRIVE%\Excluded_Directory*.*
> The following variables can be used in the path exclusion form:
> *%ALLUSERSPROFILE%*
> *%COMMONPROGRAMFILES%*
> *%COMMONPROGRAMFILES(X86)%*
> *%COMSPEC%*
> *%HOMEDRIVE%*
> *%HOMEPATH%*
> *%PROGRAMFILES%*
> *%PROGRAMFILES(X86)%*
> *%SystemDrive%*
> *%SystemRoot%*
> *%WINDIR%*
> *%PUBLIC%*
> User-specific system variables (like %TEMP% or %USERPROFILE%) or environment variables (like %PATH%) are not supported.

Detection exclusions

This is another method of excluding objects from scanning, using the detection name, path or its hash. Detection exclusions do not exclude files and folders from scanning (such as performance exclusions). Detection exclusions exclude objects only when they are detected by the detection engine and an appropriate rule is present in the exclusion list.

The easiest way to create a detection-based exclusion is using an existing detection from the **Log files** > Detections. Right-click a log record (detection) and click **Create exclusion**. This will open the exclusion wizard with pre-defined criteria.

To manually create a detection exclusion, click **Edit** > **Add** (or **Edit** when modifying existing) and specify one or more of the following criteria (can be combined):

Path

Excludes specific path (file or directory). You can browse for a specific location/file, or enter the string manually. Do not use wildcards – asterisk (*) in the middle of a path. See the following Knowledgebase article for more information.

> ⓘ To exclude folder contents, do not forget to add the asterisk (*) at the end of the path (C:\Tools*).
> *C:\Tools* will not be excluded, because from the scanner's perspective, *Tools* can also be a filename.

Hash

Excludes a file based on specified hash (SHA1), regardless of the file type, location, name or its extension.

Detection name

Enter a valid detection (threat) name. Creating an exclusion based on the detection name alone may pose a security risk. We recommend you combine the detection name with the Path. This exclusion criteria can be used only for certain types of detections.

Comment

Add an optional **Comment** to easily recognize the exclusion in the future.

ESET PROTECT includes detection exclusions management to create a detection exclusions and apply it to more computers/group(s).

Use wildcards to cover a group of files. A question mark (*?*) represents a single variable character whereas an asterisk (*) represents a variable string of zero or more characters.

> ✓ Path exclusions using an asterisk:
> C:\Tools* – path must end with the backslash (\) and asterisk (*) to indicate that it is a folder and all folder content (files and subfolders) will be excluded
> C:\Tools*.* – the same behavior as C:\Tools*, which means, it works recursively
> C:\Tools*.dat – will exclude dat files in the Tools folder
> C:\Tools\sg.dat – will exclude this specific file located in the exact path

✓ To exclude a threat, enter the valid detection name in the following format:
@NAME=Win32/Adware.Optmedia
@NAME=Win32/TrojanDownloader.Delf.QQI
@NAME=Win32/Bagle.D

✓ To exclude all files in a folder, type the path to the folder and use the mask *.*. To exclude doc files only, use the mask *.doc
If the name of an executable file has a certain number of characters (and characters vary) and you only know the first one for certain (say "D"), use the following format:
D????.exe (question marks replace the missing / unknown characters)

✓ Use system variables like *%PROGRAMFILES%* to define scan exclusions.
To exclude the Program Files folder using this system variable, use the path %PROGRAMFILES%\ (make sure to add the backslash at the end of path when adding to exclusions)
To exclude all files in a %HOMEDRIVE% subdirectory, use the path %HOMEDRIVE%\Excluded_Directory*.*
The following variables can be used in the path exclusion format:
%ALLUSERSPROFILE%
%COMMONPROGRAMFILES%
%COMMONPROGRAMFILES(X86)%
%COMSPEC%
%HOMEDRIVE%
%HOMEPATH%
%PROGRAMFILES%
%PROGRAMFILES(X86)%
%SystemDrive%
%SystemRoot%
%WINDIR%
%PUBLIC%
User-specific system variables (like %TEMP% or %USERPROFILE%) or environment variables (like %PATH%) are not supported.

Create exclusion wizard

The recommended exclusion is pre-selected based on the detection type, but you can further specify exclusion criteria for detections. Click **Change criteria**:

- **Exact files** – Exclude each file by its SHA-1 hash.

- **Detection** – Specify the detection name to exclude each file that contains such detection.

- **Path + Detection** – Specify the detection name and path (including filename) to exclude each file with a detection located in the specified location.

Add an optional **Comment** to easily recognize the exclusion in the future.

Advanced options

Anti-Stealth technology

A sophisticated system that detects dangerous programs, such as rootkits, that can hide from the operating system. These types of programs are usually undetectable using standard techniques.

AMSI

Let Microsoft Antimalware Scan Interface (AMSI) scan PowerShell scripts executed by Windows Script Host.

Automatic exclusions

The developers of server applications and operating systems recommend excluding sets of critical working files and folders from malware scan for most of their products. Malware scan may have a negative influence on a server's performance, which may lead to conflicts and even prevent some applications from running on the server. Exclusions help minimize the risk of potential conflicts and increase the overall performance of the server when running Anti-Malware software. See the complete list of files excluded from scanning for ESET server products.

The automatic exclusions feature is enabled after you activate ESET Mail Security with a valid license and perform the initial update to include the latest modules.

> ℹ️ Automatic exclusions for Microsoft SQL Server database files work for default location. If you have Microsoft SQL Server databases in different locations (other than the default), you have two options. Manually add the exclusions, or have the database files automatically excluded. For the automatic exclusion, ESET Mail Security needs read access to the Microsoft SQL Server instance to find what paths are used for database files. If ESET Mail Security displays an error message about insufficient rights, solve it by granting the NO_AUTHORITY\SYSTEM account **View any definition** permission to each Microsoft SQL Server instance you run on the server with ESET Mail Security.
> For further details, see Knowledgebase article on how to Add permission to get database data locations to generate automatic exclusions for Microsoft SQL Server.

ESET Mail Security identifies critical server applications and server operating system files, and automatically adds them to the list of Exclusions. All automatic exclusions are enabled by default. You can disable/enable each server application exclusions using the slider bar with the following result:

• When enabled, any of its critical files and folders will be added to the list of files excluded from scanning. Every time the server is restarted, the system performs an automatic check of exclusions and updates the list if there were system or application changes (for example when a new server application was installed). This setting ensures the recommended Automatic exclusions are always applied.

• When disabled, automatically excluded files and folders will be removed from the list. Any user-defined exclusions entered manually will not be affected.

The Automatic exclusions for Exchange Servers are based on Microsoft's recommendations. ESET Mail Security applies "Directory/Folder exclusions" only ("Process exclusions" and "File extension exclusions" are not applied). See the following Microsoft Knowledge Base articles for details:

Update on the Exchange Server Antivirus Exclusions

Virus scanning recommendations for Enterprise computers that are running currently supported versions of Windows

File-Level Antivirus Scanning on Exchange 2010

Anti-Virus Software in the Operating System on Exchange Servers (Exchange 2013)

Running Windows antivirus software on Exchange 2016 servers

> **i** There are also Exchange database file exclusions for Active and Passive databases in DAG (Database Availability Group) hosted on local server. List of Automatic exclusions is updated every 30 minutes. If there is a new Exchange database file created, it will automatically get excluded regardless of its state, whether it is Active or Passive.

To identify and generate automatic exclusions, ESET Mail Security uses dedicated application eAutoExclusions.exe, located in the installation folder. No interaction is needed from your side, but you can use command line to list detected server applications on your system by executing eAutoExclusions.exe -servers. To display full syntax, use `eAutoExclusions.exe -?`.

An infiltration is detected

Infiltrations can reach the system from various entry points such as webpages, shared folders, via email or from removable devices (USB, external disks, CDs, DVDs, diskettes, etc.).

Standard behavior

As a general example of how infiltrations are handled by ESET Mail Security, infiltrations can be detected using:

- Real-time file system protection

- Web access protection

- Email client protection

- On-demand computer scan

Each uses the standard cleaning level and will attempt to clean the file and move it to Quarantine or terminate the connection. A notification window is displayed in the notification area at the bottom right corner of the screen. For more information about cleaning levels and behavior, see Cleaning.

Cleaning and deleting

If there is no pre-defined action to take for Real-time file system protection, you will be prompted to select an option in the alert window. Usually the options **Clean**, **Delete** and **No action** are available. Selecting **No action** is not recommended, as this will leave infected files uncleaned. The exception to this is when you are sure that a file is harmless and has been detected by mistake.

Apply cleaning if a file has been attacked by a virus that has attached malicious code to the file. If this is the case, attempt to clean the infected file to restore it to its original state before cleaning. If the file consists exclusively of malicious code, it will be deleted.

If an infected file is "locked" or in use by a system process, it will usually only be deleted after it is released (normally after a system restart).

Multiple threats

If any infected files were not cleaned during Computer scan (or the Cleaning level was set to **No Cleaning**), an alert window prompting you to select actions for those files is displayed.

Select an action individually for each threat in the list or you can use **Select action for all listed threats** and choose one action to take on all the threats in the list, then click **Finish**.

Deleting files in archives

In default cleaning mode, the entire archive will only be deleted if it contains infected files and no clean files. In other words, archives are not deleted if they also contain harmless clean files.

Use caution when performing a Strict cleaning scan, with Strict cleaning enabled an archive will be deleted if it contains at least one infected file regardless of the status of other files in the archive.

Real-time file system protection

Real-time file system protection controls all malware-related events in the system. All files are scanned for malicious code when they are opened, created, or run on your computer. By default, Real-time file system protection launches at system start-up and provides uninterrupted scanning.

In special cases (for example, if there is a conflict with another real-time scanner), real-time protection can be disabled by disengaging **Start Real-time file system protection automatically** in **Advanced setup (F5)** under **Real-time file system protection** > **Basic**.

ESET Mail Security is compatible with machines using Azure File Sync agent with cloud tiering enabled. ESET Mail Security recognizes files with attribute *FILE_ATTRIBUTE_RECALL_ON_DATA_ACCESS*.

Media to scan

By default, all types of media are scanned for potential threats:

- **Local drives** – Controls all system hard drives.

- **Removable media** – Controls CD/DVD's, USB storage, Bluetooth devices, etc.

- **Network drives** – Scans all mapped drives.

We recommend that you use default settings and only modify them in specific cases, such as when scanning certain media significantly slows data transfers.

Scan on

By default, all files are scanned upon opening, creation, or execution. We recommend that you keep these default settings, as they provide the maximum level of real-time protection for your computer:

- **File open** – Scanning when files are opened / accessed.

- **File creation** – Scanning when files are created / modified.

- **File execution** – Scanning when files are executed.

- **Removable media access** – Scanning when accessing removable storage. When removable media that contains a boot sector is inserted in the device, the boot sector is immediately scanned. This option does not enable removable media file scanning. Removable media file scanning is located **Media to scan** > **Removable media**. For Removable media boot sector access to work correctly, keep Boot sectors/UEFI enabled in ThreatSense parameters.

Processes exclusions

Enables you to exclude specific processes. For example, processes of the backup solution, all file operations attributed to such excluded process are ignored and considered safe, thus minimizing the interference with the backup process.

ThreatSense parameters

Real-time file system protection checks all types of media and is triggered by various system events such as accessing a file. Real-time file system protection can be configured to treat newly created files differently than existing files. For example, you can configure Real-time file system protection to more closely monitor newly created files.

To ensure a minimal system footprint when using real-time protection, files that have already been scanned are not scanned repeatedly (unless they have been modified). Files are scanned again immediately after each detection engine database update. This behavior is controlled using **Smart optimization**. If **Smart optimization** is disabled, all files are scanned each time they are accessed.

To modify this setting, press **F5** to open **Advanced setup** and expand **Computer** > **Real-time file system protection**. Click **ThreatSense parameters** > **Other** and select or deselect **Enable Smart optimization**.

Additional ThreatSense parameters

You can modify detailed options of the **Additional ThreatSense parameters for newly created and modified files** or **Additional ThreatSense parameters for executed files**.

ThreatSense parameters

ThreatSense is technology comprised of many complex threat detection methods. This technology is proactive, which means it also provides protection during the early spread of a new threat. It uses a combination of code analysis, code emulation, generic signatures and virus signatures which work in concert to significantly enhance system security. The scanning engine is capable of controlling several data streams simultaneously, maximizing the efficiency and detection rate. ThreatSense technology also successfully eliminates rootkits.

> i For details about automatic startup file check, see Startup scan.

ThreatSense engine setup options allow you to specify several scan parameters:

- File types and extensions that are to be scanned

- The combination of various detection methods

- Levels of cleaning, etc.

To enter the setup window, click **ThreatSense engine parameter** setup in the **Advanced setup** (**F5**) window for any module that uses ThreatSense technology (see below). Different security scenarios may require different configurations. With this in mind, ThreatSense is individually configurable for the following protection modules:

- Mail transport protection

- On-demand mailbox database protection

- Mailbox database protection

- [Hyper-V scan](#)

- [Real-time file system protection](#)

- [Malware scans](#)

- [Idle-state scanning](#)

- [Startup scan](#)

- [Document protection](#)

- [Email client protection](#)

- [Web access protection](#)

ThreatSense parameters are highly optimized for each module, and their modification can significantly influence system operation. For example, changing parameters to always scan runtime packers, or enabling advanced heuristics in the Real-time file system protection module could result in a system slow-down (normally, only newly-created files are scanned using these methods). We recommend that you leave the default ThreatSense parameters unchanged for all modules except Computer scan.

Objects to scan

This section lets you define which computer components and files will be scanned for infiltration.

Operating memory

Scans for threats that attack the operating memory of the system.

Boot sectors/UEFI

Scans boot sectors for the presence of viruses in the MBR (Master Boot Record). In case of a Hyper-V Virtual Machine, its disk MBR is scanned in read - only mode.

WMI database

Scans whole WMI database, searching for references to infected files or malware embedded as data.

System registry

Scans system registry, all keys and subkeys, searching for references to infected files or malware embedded as data.

Email files

The program supports the following extensions: DBX (Outlook Express) and EML.

Archives

The program supports the following extensions: *ARJ, BZ2, CAB, CHM, DBX, GZIP, ISO/BIN/NRG, LHA, MIME, NSIS, RAR, SIS, TAR, TNEF, UUE, WISE, ZIP, ACE*, and many others.

Self-extracting archives

Self-extracting archives (SFX) are archives needing no specialized programs – archives – to decompress themselves.

Runtime packers

After being executed, runtime packers (unlike standard archive types) decompress in memory. In addition to standard static packers (UPX, yoda, ASPack, FSG, etc.), the scanner is able to recognize several additional types of packers through the use of code emulation.

> ℹ For the Mailbox database protection feature, attached email files (for example *.eml files*) are scanned regardless of the setting under **Objects to scan**. This is because Exchange Server parses the attached .eml file before it is submitted for scanning by ESET Mail Security. The VSAPI plug-in gets extracted files from the .eml attachment instead of receiving the original .eml file.

Scan options

Select the methods used when scanning the system for infiltrations. The following options are available:

Heuristics

A heuristic is an algorithm that analyzes the (malicious) activity of programs. The main advantage of this technology is the ability to identify malicious software which did not exist, or was not known by the previous detection engine.

Advanced heuristics/DNA signatures

Advanced heuristics consist of a unique heuristic algorithm developed by ESET, optimized for detecting computer worms and Trojan horses and written in high-level programming languages. The use of advanced heuristics greatly increases the threat detection capabilities of ESET products. Signatures can reliably detect and identify viruses. Utilizing the automatic update system, new signatures are available within a few hours of a threat discovery. The disadvantage of signatures is that they only detect viruses they know (or slightly modified versions of these viruses).

∧ Cleaning

The cleaning settings determine the behavior of the scanner while cleaning infected files. Real-time protection and other protection modules have the following remediation (i.e. cleaning) levels.

Always remedy detection

Attempt to remediate the detection while cleaning objects without any user intervention. System files are an exception. Such objects are left in their original location if the detection cannot be remediated.

Remedy detection if safe, keep otherwise

Attempt to remediate the detection while cleaning objects without any user intervention. If a detection cannot be remediated for system files or archives (with clean and infected files), the reported object is kept in its original location.

Remedy detection if safe, ask otherwise

Attempt to remediate the detection while cleaning objects. In some cases, if ESET Mail Security cannot perform automatic action, you will be prompted to choose an action (delete or ignore). This setting is recommended in most cases.

Always ask the end-user

No automatic action will be attempted by ESET Mail Security. You will be prompted to choose an action.

∧ Exclusions

An extension is the part of a filename delimited by a period. An extension defines the type and content of a file. This section of the ThreatSense parameter setup lets you define the types of files to exclude from scan.

Other

When configuring ThreatSense engine parameters setup for a On-demand computer scan, the following options in **Other** section are also available:

Scan alternate data streams (ADS)

Alternate data streams used by the NTFS file system are file and folder associations which are invisible to ordinary scanning techniques. Many infiltrations try to avoid detection by disguising themselves as alternate data streams.

Run background scans with low priority

Each scanning sequence consumes a certain amount of system resources. If you work with programs that place a high load on system resources, you can activate low priority background scanning and save resources for your applications.

Log all objects

If this option is selected, the log file will show all the scanned files, even those not infected.

Enable Smart optimization

With Smart Optimization enabled, the optimal settings are used to ensure the most efficient scanning level, while simultaneously maintaining the highest scanning speeds. The various protection modules scan intelligently, making use of different scanning methods and applying them to specific file types. If Smart Optimization is disabled, only the user-defined settings in the ThreatSense core of the specific modules are applied when performing a scan.

Preserve last access timestamp

Select this option to keep the original access time of scanned files instead of updating them (for example, for use with data backup systems).

∧ Limits

174

The Limits section allows you to specify the maximum size of objects and levels of nested archives to be scanned:

Default object settings

Enable to use default settings (no limits). ESET Mail Security will be ignoring your custom settings.

Maximum object size

Defines the maximum size of objects to be scanned. The given protection module will then scan only objects smaller than the size specified. This option should only be changed by advanced users who may have specific reasons for excluding larger objects from scanning. Default value: unlimited.

Maximum scan time for object (sec.)

Defines the maximum time value for scanning of an object. If a user-defined value has been entered here, the protection module will stop scanning an object when that time has elapsed, regardless of whether the scan has finished. Default value: unlimited.

Archive scan setup

To modify archive scan settings, deselect **Default archive scan settings**.

Archive nesting level

Specifies the maximum depth of archive scanning. Default value: 10. For objects detected by Mailbox transport protection, actual nesting level is +1 because archive attachment in an email is considered first level.

> ✓ If you have nesting level set to 3, an archive file with nesting level 3 will only be scanned on a transport layer up to its actual level 2. Therefore, if you want to have archives scanned by Mailbox transport protection up to level 3, set the value for **Archive nesting level** to 4.

Maximum size of file in archive

This option allows you to specify the maximum file size for files contained in archives (when they are extracted) that are to be scanned. Default value: unlimited.

> ℹ We do not recommend changing the default values; under normal circumstances, there should be no reason to modify them.

Additional ThreatSense parameters

Additional ThreatSense parameters for newly created and modified files

The probability of infection in newly-created or modified files is comparatively higher than in existing files. For this reason, the program checks these files with additional scanning parameters. Along with common signature-based scanning methods, advanced heuristics, which can detect new threats before module update is released, are also used. In addition to newly-created files, scanning is performed on self-extracting files (.sfx) and runtime packers (internally compressed executable files).

By default, archives are scanned up to the 10th nesting level and are checked regardless of their actual size. To modify archive scan settings, disable **Default archive scan settings**.

Additional ThreatSense parameters for executed files

By default, Advanced heuristics is used when files are executed. When enabled, we strongly recommend keeping Smart optimization and ESET LiveGrid® enabled to mitigate impact on system performance.

File extenstions excluded from scanning

An extension is the part of a filename delimited by a period. The extension defines the type of a file. Normally, all files are scanned. However, if you need to exclude files with a specific extension, ThreatSense parameter setup lets you exclude files from scanning based on their extension. Excluding may be useful if scanning of certain file types prevents an application from running properly.

✓ To add a new extension to the list, click **Add**. Type the extension into the text field (for example tmp) and click **OK**. When you select **Enter multiple values**, you can add multiple file extensions delimited by lines, commas or semicolons (for example, choose **Semicolon** from the drop-down menu as a separator, and type `edb;eml;tmp`).
You can use a special symbol ? (question mark). The question mark represents any symbol (for example `?db`).

ⓘ To display the extension (file type) for all files in a Windows operating system, deselect **Hide extensions for known file types** under **Control Panel** > **Folder Options** > **View**.

Processes exclusions

The Processes exclusions feature allows you to exclude application processes from Anti-Malware On-access scanning only. Due to the critical role of dedicated servers (application server, storage server, etc.) regular backups are mandatory to guarantee timely recovery from an incident of any kind.

To improve backup speed, process integrity and service availability, some techniques that are known to conflict with file-level malware protection are used during backup. Similar problems can occur when attempting live migrations of virtual machines.

The only effective way to avoid both situations is to deactivate Anti-Malware software. By excluding specific process (for example those of the backup solution) all file operations attributed to such excluded process are ignored and considered safe, thus minimizing interference with the backup process. We recommend that you use caution when creating exclusions – a backup tool that has been excluded can access infected files without triggering an alert which is why extended permissions are only allowed in the real-time protection module.

Processes exclusions help minimize the risk of potential conflicts and improve the performance of excluded applications, which in turn has a positive effect on the overall performance and stability of the operating system. The exclusion of a process / application is an exclusion of its executable file (*.exe*).

You can add executable files into the list of excluded processes via **Advanced setup** (**F5**) > **Computer** > **Real-time file system protection** > **Basic** > **Processes exclusions** or using the list of running processes from the main menu **Tools** > **Running processes**.

This feature was designed to exclude backup tools. Excluding the backup tool's process from scanning not only ensures system stability, but it also does not affect backup performance as the backup is not slowed down while it is running.

✓ Click **Edit** to open the **Processes exclusions** management window, where you can **Add** exclusions and browse for executable file (for example Backup-tool.exe), which will be excluded from scanning.
As soon as the *.exe* file is added to the exclusions, activity of this process is not monitored by ESET Mail Security and no scanning is run on any file operations performed by this process.

⚠ If you do not use browse function when selecting process executable, you need to manually enter a full path to the executable. Otherwise, the exclusion will not work correctly and HIPS may report errors.

Add exclusion

Select process executable (*.exe):

📄 C:\Program Files\Backup Tool\Backup-tool.exe	✕

OK **Cancel**
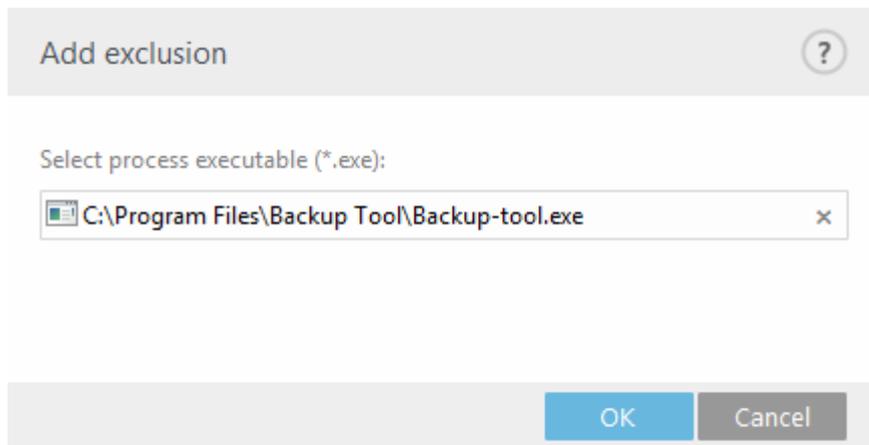
You can also **Edit** existing processes or **Delete** them from exclusions.

> ℹ️ Web access protection does not take into account this exclusion, so if you exclude the executable file of your web browser, downloaded files are still scanned. This way an infiltration can still be detected. This scenario is an example only, and we do not recommend that you create exclusions for web browsers.

Cloud-based protection

ESET LiveGrid® is an advanced early warning system comprised of several cloud-based technologies. It helps detect emerging threats based on reputation and improves scanning performance by means of whitelisting. New threat information is streamed in real-time to the cloud, which enables the ESET Malware Research Lab to provide timely response and consistent protection at all times. Users can check the reputation of running processes and files directly from the program's interface or contextual menu with additional information available from ESET LiveGrid®.

When installing ESET Mail Security, select one of the following options:

- You can decide not to enable ESET LiveGrid®. Your software will not lose any functionality, but in some cases ESET Mail Security may respond slower to new threats than detection engine database update.

- You can configure ESET LiveGrid® to submit anonymous information about new threats and where the new threatening code was detected. This file can be sent to ESET for detailed analysis. Studying these threats will help ESET update its threat detection capabilities.

ESET LiveGrid® will collect information about your computer related to newly-detected threats. This information may include a sample or copy of the file in which the threat appeared, the path to that file, the filename, the date and time, the process by which the threat appeared on your computer and information about your computer's operating system.

By default, ESET Mail Security is configured to submit suspicious files to the ESET Virus Lab for analysis. Files with certain extensions such as .docx or .xlsx are always excluded. You can also add other extensions if there are specific files that you or your organization want to avoid sending.

Enable ESET LiveGrid® reputation system (recommended)

The ESET LiveGrid® reputation system improves the efficiency of ESET anti-malware solutions by comparing scanned files to a database of whitelisted and blacklisted items in the cloud.

Enable ESET LiveGrid® feedback system

Data will be sent to the ESET Research Lab for further analysis.

Submit crash reports and diagnostic data

Submit data such as crash reports, modules or memory dumps.

Submit anonymous statistics

Allow ESET to collect information about newly detected threats such as the threat name, date and time of detection, detection method and associated metadata, scanned files (hash, filename, origin of the file, telemetry), blocked and suspicious URL's, product version and configuration, including information about your system.

Contact email (optional)

Your contact email can be included with any suspicious files and may be used to contact you if further information is required for analysis. Please note that you will not receive a response from ESET unless more information is needed.

⌃ [Submission of samples](#)

Automatic submission of infected samples
This will submit all infected samples to ESET for analysis and to improve future detection.
- All infected samples
- All samples except documents
- Do not submit

Automatic submission of suspicious samples
Suspicious samples resembling threats, and/or samples with unusual characteristics or behavior are submitted to ESET for analysis.
- **Executable**—Includes executable files: .exe, .dll, .sys
- **Archives**—Includes archive file types: .zip, .rar, .7z, .arch, .arj, .bzip2, .gzip, .ace, .arc, .cab
- **Scripts**—Includes script file types: .bat, .cmd, .hta, .js, .vbs, .js, .ps1
- **Other**—Includes file types: .jar, .reg, .msi, .swf, .lnk
- **Possible Spam emails**—Improves global detection of spam.
- **Documents**—Includes Microsoft Office documents or PDFs with active content.

Exclusions
Click [Edit](#) option next to Exclusions in ESET LiveGrid® allows you to configure how threats are submitted to ESET Virus Labs for analysis.

Maximum size of samples (MB)
Define the maximum size of samples submitted automatically.

ESET LiveGuard Advanced

To enable [ESET LiveGuard Advanced](#) service on a client machine using ESET PROTECT Web Console. In the ESET PROTECT Web Console [create a new policy](#) or edit an existing one and assign it on machines where you want to use the ESET LiveGuard Advanced.

Exclusion filter

The Exclusion filter allows you to exclude certain files/folders from submission (for example, it may be useful to exclude files that may carry confidential information, such as documents or spreadsheets).

The files listed will never be sent to ESET labs for analysis, even if they contain suspicious code.

The most common file types are excluded by default (*.doc*). You can add to the list of excluded files if desired.

If you have used ESET LiveGrid® before and have disabled it, there may still be data packages to send. Even after deactivating, such packages will be sent to ESET. After all current information is sent, no further packages will be created.

If you find a suspicious file, you can submit it for analysis to our ThreatLabs. If it is a malicious application, its detection will be added to the next detection module update.

Malware scans

This section provides options to select scanning parameters.

> ℹ️ This scan profile selector applies to **On-demand scan** and Hyper-V scan.

Selected profile

A specific set of parameters used by the On-demand scanner. You can use one of the pre-defined scan profile or create a new profile. The scan profiles use different ThreatSense engine parameters.

List of profiles

To create a new one, click **Edit**. Type name for profile and click **Add**. New profile will be displayed in the **Selected profile** drop-down menu that lists existing scan profiles.

Scan targets

To scan a specific target, click **Edit** and choose an option from drop-down menu or selecting specific targets from the folder (tree) structure.

ThreatSense parameters

Modify scan parameters for the On-demand computer scanner.

On-Demand & Machine learning protection

Reporting is performed by detection engine and the machine learning component.

Profile manager

The Scan profile drop-down menu lets you select pre-defined scan profiles.

- Smart scan

- Context menu scan

- In-depth scan

- My profile (applies to Hyper-V scan, Update profiles)

To help you create a scan profile to fit your needs, see the ThreatSense engine parameters setup section for a description of each parameter of the scan setup.

Profile manager is used in three places within ESET Mail Security.

On-demand computer scan

Your preferred scan parameters can be saved for future scanning. We recommend that you create a different profile (with various scan targets, scan methods and other parameters) for each regularly used scan.

Update

The profile editor allows users to create new update profiles. It is only necessary to create custom update profiles if your computer uses multiple means to connect to update servers.

Hyper-V scan

Create a new profile, select **Edit** next to **List of profiles**. New profile will be displayed in the **Selected profile** drop-down menu that lists existing scan profiles.

Profile targets

You can specify what will be scanned for infiltrations. Choose objects (memory, boot sectors and UEFI, drives, files and folders or network) from the tree structure that lists all available targets on your system. Click the gear icon in the top-left corner to access the **Scan targets** and **Scan profile** drop-down menus.

| i | This scan profile selector applies to On-demand scan and Hyper-V scan. |

Operating memory	**Scans all processes and data currently used by operating memory.**
Boot sectors/UEFI	Scans Boot sectors and UEFI for the presence of malware. Read more about the UEFI scanner in the glossary.
WMI database	Scans the whole Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) database, all namespaces, all class instances, and all properties. Searches for references to infected files or malware embedded as data.
System registry	Scans the whole system registry, all keys, and subkeys. Searches for references to infected files or malware embedded as data. When cleaning the detections, the reference remains in the registry to make sure no important data will be lost.

To quickly navigate to a scan target or add a target folder or file(s), enter the target directory in the blank field

below the folder list.

The **Scan targets** drop-down menu enables you to select pre-defined scan targets:

By profile settings	Selects targets set in the selected scan profile.
Removable media	Selects diskettes, USB storage devices, CD/DVD.
Local drives	Selects all system hard drives.
Network drives	Selects all mapped network drives.
Shared Folders	Selects all folders on the local server that are shared.
Custom selection	Clears all selections. Ones cleared, you can make your custom selection.

To quickly navigate to a scan target (file or folder) to include it for scanning, enter its path into the text field below the tree structure. The path entry is case sensitive.

The **Scan profile** drop-down menu enables you to select pre-defined scan profiles:

- Smart scan

- Context menu scan

- In-depth scan

181

- Computer scan

These scan profiles use different [ThreatSense engine parameters](#).

Scan without cleaning

If you are only interested in scanning the system without additional cleaning actions, select **Scan without cleaning**. This is useful when you only want to obtain an overview whether there are infected items and get details about these infections, if there are any. You can choose from three cleaning levels by clicking **Setup** > **ThreatSense parameters** > **Cleaning**. Information about scanning is saved to a scan log.

Ignore exclusions

When you select Ignore exclusions, it lets you perform a scan while ignoring [exclusions](#) that otherwise apply.

Scan targets

If you only want to scan a specific target, you can use the **Custom scan** and select an option from the **Scan targets** drop-down menu or select specific targets from the folder (tree) structure.

Scan targets profile selector applies to:

- [On-demand scan](#)

- [Hyper-V scan](#)

To quickly navigate to a scan target or to add a new target file or folder, enter its name in the blank field below the folder list. This is only possible if no targets are selected in the tree structure and the **Scan targets** menu is set to **No selection**.

Operating memory	Scans all processes and data currently used by operating memory.
Boot sectors/UEFI	Scans Boot sectors and UEFI for the presence of malware. Read more about the UEFI scanner in the [glossary](#).
WMI database	Scans the whole Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) database, all namespaces, all class instances, and all properties. Searches for references to infected files or malware embedded as data.
System registry	Scans the whole system registry, all keys, and subkeys. Searches for references to infected files or malware embedded as data. When cleaning the detections, the reference remains in the registry to make sure no important data will be lost.

The **Scan targets** drop-down menu allows you to select pre-defined scan targets.

By profile settings	Selects targets set in the selected scan profile.
Removable media	Selects diskettes, USB storage devices, CD/DVD.
Local drives	Selects all system hard drives.
Network drives	Selects all mapped network drives.
Shared Folders	Selects all folders on the local server that are shared.
Custom selection	Clears all selections. Ones cleared, you can make your custom selection.

You can choose a profile from the [Scan profile](#) drop-down menu to scan chosen targets. The default profile is

Smart scan. There are two more pre-defined scan profiles: In-depth scan and **Context menu scan**. These scan profiles use different ThreatSense engine parameters.

The **Custom scan** window:
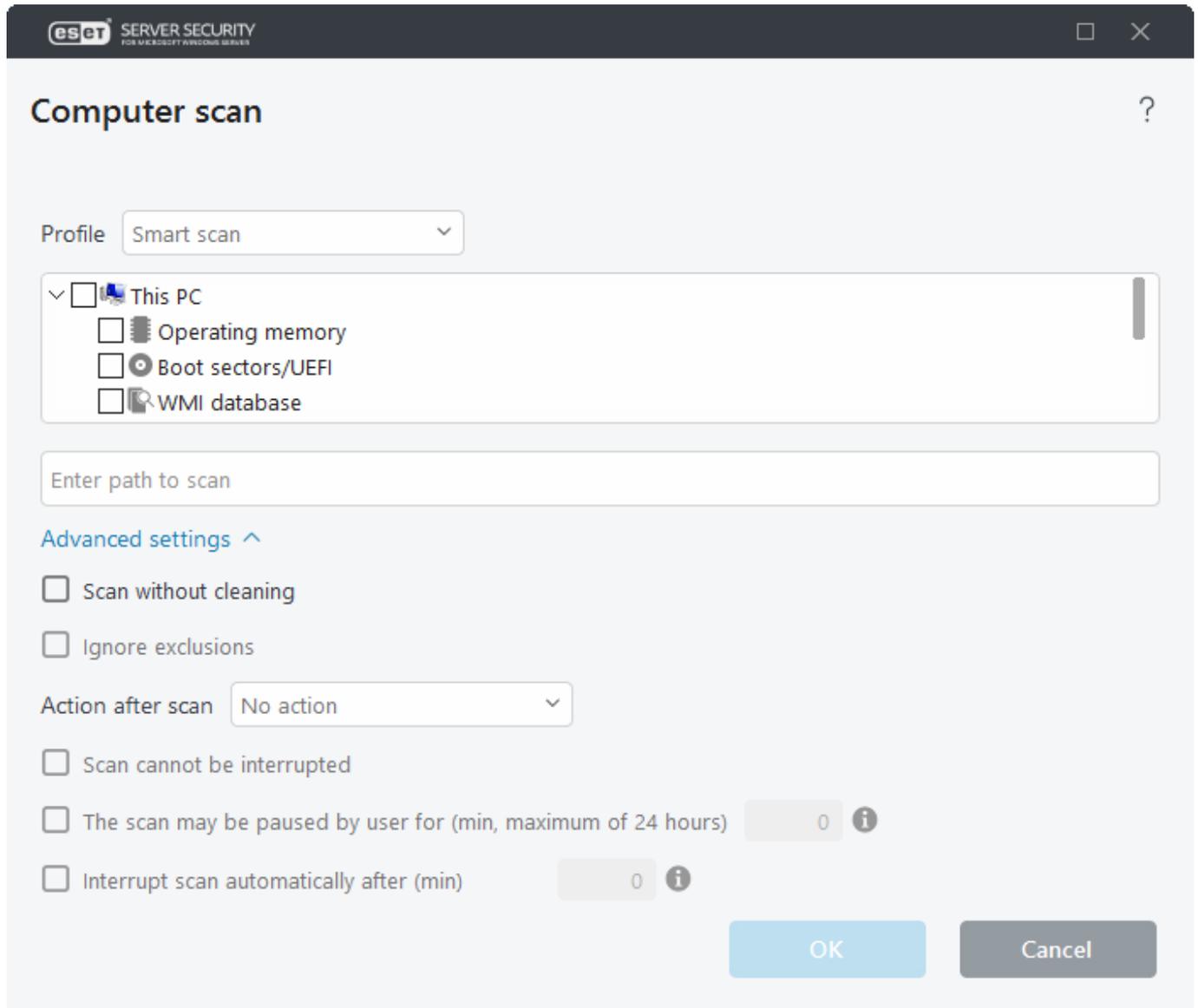
Scan without cleaning - If you are only interested in scanning the system without additional cleaning actions, select Scan without cleaning. This is useful when you only want to obtain an overview whether there are infected items and get details about these infections, if there are any. You can choose from three cleaning levels by clicking Setup > ThreatSense parameters > Cleaning. Information about scanning is saved to a scan log.

Ignore exclusions - You can perform a scan while ignoring exclusions that otherwise apply.

Action after Scan - Choose action to take after the scan finishes from the drop-down menu.

Scan cannot be interrupted - To deny non-privileged users the ability to stop actions taken after scanning.

The scan may be paused by user for (min) - Enable the limited user to pause the computer scan for the specified time limit.

Interrupt scan automatically after (min) - To cancel the scan if it takes longer than the specified time limit.

Scan as Administrator - It enables you to execute the scan under the Administrator account. Click this if the current user does not have privileges to access the appropriate files to be scanned. Note that this button is not available if the current user cannot call UAC operations as Administrator.

Idle-state scan

When the computer is in idle state, a silent computer scan is performed on all local drives. **Idle-state detection** will run when your computer is in the following states:

- Turned off screen or screen saver

- Computer lock

- User logoff

Run even if computer is powered from battery

By default, the Idle-state scanner will not run when the computer (notebook) is operating on battery power.

Enable logging

To record a computer scan output in the Log files section (from the main program window click Log files and select log type Computer scan from the drop-down menu).

ThreatSense parameters

Modify scan parameters for the Idle-state scanner.

Startup scan

By default, the automatic startup file check will be performed on system start (user logon) and after a successful module update. This scan is controlled by the Scheduler configuration and tasks.

Startup scan options are a part of the **System startup file check** scheduler task.

To modify Startup scan settings, navigate to **Tools** > **Scheduler**, select one of the tasks named **Automatic startup file check** (user logon or module update) and click **Edit**. Click through the wizard and in the last step, you can modify detailed options of the Automatic startup file check.

Automatic startup file check

When creating a System startup file check scheduled task, you have several options to adjust the following parameters:

The **Scan target** drop-down menu specifies the scan depth for files run at system startup. Files are arranged in ascending order according to the following criteria:

- All registered files (most files scanned)

- Rarely used files

- Commonly used files

- Frequently used files

- Only the most frequently used files (least files scanned)

Two specific Scan target groups are also included:

Files run before user logon

Contains files from locations that may be accessed without the user being logged in (includes almost all startup locations such as services, browser helper objects, winlogon notify, Windows scheduler entries, known dll's, etc.).

Files run after user logon

Contains files from locations that may only be accessed after a user has logged in (includes files that are only run by a specific user, typically files in *HKEY_CURRENT_USER\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run*).

Lists of files to be scanned are fixed for each aforementioned group.
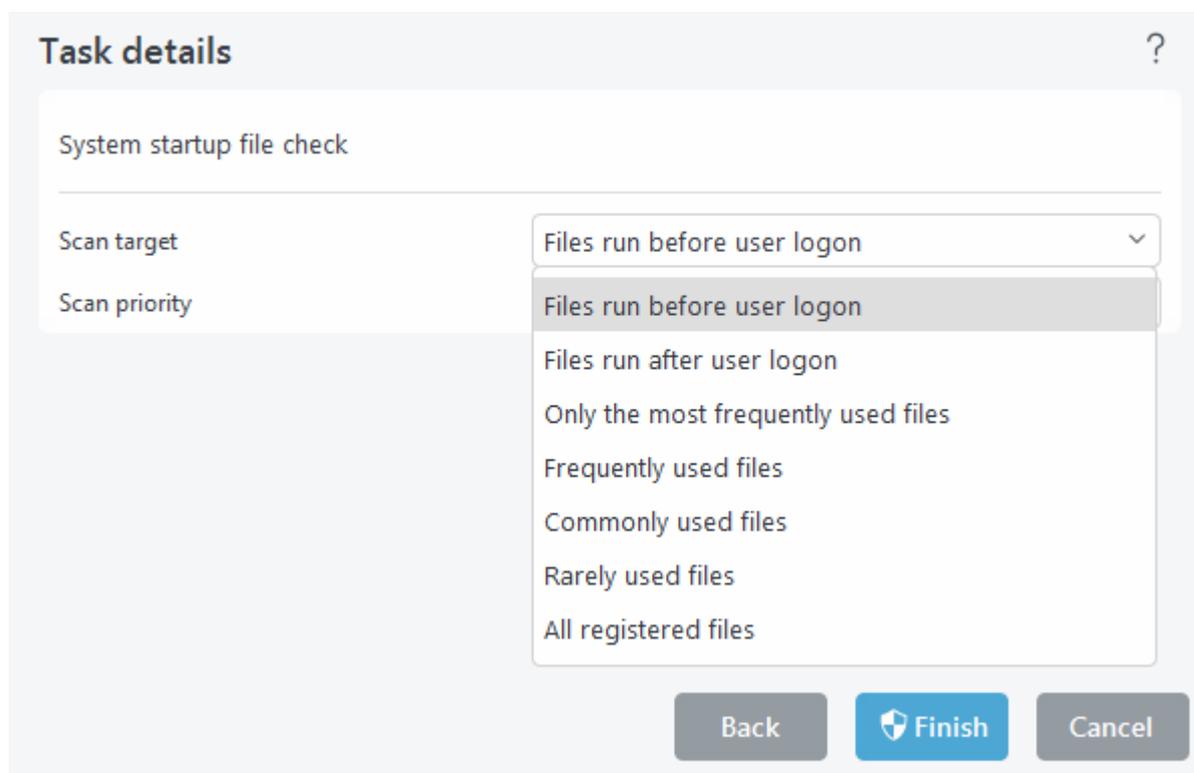
Scan priority

The level of priority used to determine when a scan will start:

- **Normal** – at an average system load,

- **Lower** – at a low system load,

- **Lowest** – when the system load is the lowest possible,

- **When idle** – the task will be performed only when the system is idle.

Removable media

ESET Mail Security provides automatic removable media (CD/DVD/USB) scanning. This module allows you to scan inserted media. This may be useful if the computer administrator wants to prevent the users from using removable media with unsolicited content.

When removable media is inserted, the following dialog will shown:

- **Scan now**—This will trigger a scan of removable media.

- **Do not scan**—Removable media will not be scanned.

- **Setup**—Opens Advanced setup.

- **Always use the selected option**—When selected, the same action will be performed when removable media is inserted another time.

In addition, ESET Mail Security features Device control, which enables you to define rules for external devices on a given computer.

To access settings for removable media scan, open **Advanced setup (F5)** > **Notifications** > **Interactive alerts** > **Edit**. If the **Ask user** is not selected, choose the action performed when a removable media is inserted into the computer:

- **Do not scan**—No action will be performed and the **New device** detected window will be closed.

- **Automatic device scan**—An on-demand computer scan of the inserted removable media device will be performed.

- **Forced device scan**—A computer scan of the inserted removable media device will be performed and cannot be canceled.

- **Show scan options**—Opens the **Interactive alerts** setup section.

Document protection

The Document protection feature scans Microsoft Office documents before they are opened, as well as files downloaded automatically by Internet Explorer such as Microsoft ActiveX elements. Document protection provides a layer of protection in addition to Real-time file system protection, and can be disabled to enhance performance on systems that are not exposed to a high volume of Microsoft Office documents.

Integrate into system

This option enhances the protection of Microsoft Office documents (not required under normal circumstances).

ThreatSense parameters

Modify parameters for the Document protection.

> i This feature is activated by applications that use the Microsoft Antivirus API (for example, Microsoft Office 2000 and later, or Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 and later).

Hyper-V scan

The current version of the Hyper-V scan supports scanning of the online or offline virtual system in Hyper-V. Supported types of scanning according to hosted Windows Hyper-V system and the state of the virtual system are shown here:

Virtual systems with Hyper-V feature	Online VM	Offline VM
Windows Server 2022 Hyper-V	read-only	read-only/cleaning
Windows Server 2019 Hyper-V	read-only	read-only/cleaning
Windows Server 2016 Hyper-V	read-only	read-only/cleaning
Windows Server 2012 R2 Hyper-V	read-only	read-only/cleaning
Windows Server 2012 Hyper-V	read-only	read-only/cleaning

Hardware requirements

The server should have no performance issues running Virtual Machines. Scanning activity primarily uses CPU resources. To scan online VMs, free disk space is required. Disk space must be at least double the space used by checkpoints/snapshots and virtual disks.

Specific limitations

- Scanning on RAID storage, Spanned Volumes and Dynamic Disks are not supported due to the nature of Dynamic Disks. Therefore, we recommend you avoid using the Dynamic Disk type in your VMs.

- Scanning is always performed on the current VM and does not affect checkpoints or snapshots.

- Hyper-V running on a host in a cluster is currently not supported by ESET Mail Security.

> **i** While ESET Security supports the scan of virtual disk MBRs, read-only scanning is the only method supported for these targets. This setting can be changed in **Advanced setup** (**F5**) > **Computer** > **Hyper-V scan** > ThreatSense parameters > **Boot sectors**.

Virtual Machine to be scanned is "offline" – switched Off state

ESET Mail Security uses Hyper-V Management to detect and to connect to virtual disks. This way, ESET Mail Security has the same access to the virtual disk content when accessing data and files on any generic drive.

Virtual Machine to be scanned is "online" – Running, Paused, Saved state

ESET Mail Security uses Hyper-V Management to detect virtual disks. An actual connection to these disks is not possible. Therefore, ESET Mail Security creates a checkpoint/snapshot of the Virtual Machine, then connects to the checkpoint/snapshot. After the scan is completed, the checkpoint/snapshot is deleted. This means that read-only scan can be performed because the running Virtual Machine(s) are unaffected by scan activity.

Enable up to one minute for ESET Mail Security to create a snapshot or checkpoint during scanning. It would help if you considered this when running a Hyper-V scan on a larger number of Virtual Machines.

Naming convention

The module of Hyper-V Scan uses the following naming convention:

`VirtualMachineName\DiskX\VolumeY`

Where X is the number of disks and Y is the number of volumes. For example:

```
Computer\Disk0\Volume1
```

The number suffix is added based on the detection order and is identical to the order seen in the Disk Manager of the VM. This naming convention is used in the tree-structured drop-down menu of targets to be scanned in the progress bar and log files.

Executing a scan

- On-demand click **Hyper-V Scan** to view a list of Virtual Machines and volumes available for scanning. Select the Virtual Machine(s), disk(s) or volume(s) you want to scan and click **Scan**.

- To create a scheduler task.

- Via ESET PROTECT as a Client Task called Server Scan.

- Hyper-V scan can be managed and started via eShell.

You can execute several Hyper-V scans simultaneously. You will receive a notification with a link to log files when a scan is complete.

Possible issues

- When executing the scan of an online Virtual Machine, a checkpoint/snapshot of the specific Virtual Machine has to be created. While creating a checkpoint/snapshot, some generic actions of the Virtual Machine might be limited or disabled.

- If an offline Virtual Machine is being scanned, it cannot be turned on until the scan is finished.

- Hyper-V Manager enables you to name two different Virtual Machines identically, which presents an issue when trying to differentiate the machines while reviewing the scan logs.

To create a new profile, select **Edit** next to **List of profiles**, enter your own **Profile name** and then click **Add**. New profile will be displayed in the **Selected profile** drop-down menu that lists existing scan profiles.

The **Scan targets** for **Hyper-V** drop-down menu allows you to select pre-defined scan targets:

By profile settings	Selects targets set in the selected scan profile.
All virtual machines	Selects all virtual machines.
Powered on virtual machines	Selects all online VMs.
Powered off virtual machines	Selects all offline VMs.
No selection	Clears all selections.

Click the ⚙ gear icon, modify the interval to **Stop scan if it runs longer than (minutes)**, and change to preferred time (anything between 1 to 2880 minutes).

Click **Scan** to execute the scan using the custom parameters that you have set. After all scans are finished, check **Log files** > Hyper-V scan.

[Hyper-V & Machine learning protection](#)

Reporting is performed by detection engine and the machine learning component.

[ThreatSense parameters](#)

To modify scan parameters for Hyper-V scan.

HIPS

Host-based Intrusion Prevention System (HIPS) protects your system from malware and unwanted activity attempting to negatively affect your computer. HIPS utilizes advanced behavioral analysis coupled with the detection capabilities of network filtering to monitor running processes, files and registry keys. HIPS is separate from Real-time file system protection and is not a firewall; it only monitors processes running within the operating system.

> ⚠️ Changes to HIPS settings should only be made by an experienced user. Incorrect configuration of HIPS settings can lead to system instability.

Enable Self-Defense

ESET Mail Security has built-in Self-defense technology that prevents malicious software from corrupting or disabling your malware protection, so you can be sure your system is protected at all times. Changes to the Enable HIPS and Enable SD (Self-Defense) settings take effect after the Windows operating system is restarted. Disabling the entire HIPS system will also require a computer restart.

Enable Protected Service

Microsoft has introduced a concept of protected services with Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2. It prevents a service against malware attacks. Kernel of ESET Mail Security is running as a protected service by default. This feature is available on Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 and newer server operating systems.

Enable Advanced Memory Scanner

Works in combination with Exploit Blocker to strengthen protection against malware that has been designed to evade detection by Antimalware products through the use of obfuscation or encryption. Advanced Memory Scanner is enabled by default. Read more about this type of protection in the [glossary](#).

Enable Exploit Blocker

Is designed to fortify commonly exploited application types such as web browsers, PDF readers, email clients and Microsoft Office components. Exploit Blocker is enabled by default. Read more about this type of protection in the [glossary](#).

Enable Ransomware shield

To use this functionality enable HIPS and ESET Live Grid. Read more about Ransomware in the [glossary](#).

Filtering mode

You can choose one of the following filtering modes:

• **Automatic mode** – Operations are enabled with the exception of those blocked by pre-defined rules that protect your system. Everything is allowed except actions denied by rule.

• **Smart mode** – The user will only be notified about very suspicious events.

• **Interactive mode** – The user will be prompted to confirm operations. Allow / deny access, Create rule, Temporarily remember this action.

• **Policy-based mode** – Operations are blocked. Accepts only user/pre-defined rules.

• **Learning mode** – Operations are enabled and a rule is created after each operation. Rules created in this mode can be viewed in the Rule editor, but their priority is lower than the priority of rules created manually or rules created in automatic mode. When you select Learning mode from the HIPS Filtering mode drop-down menu, the Learning mode will end at setting will become available. Select the duration for which you want to engage learning mode (the maximum duration is 14 days). When the specified duration has passed, you will be prompted to edit the rules created by HIPS while it was in learning mode. You can also choose a different filtering mode, or postpone the decision and continue using learning mode.

Rules

Rules determine which applications will be granted access to which files, parts of registry or other applications. The HIPS system monitors events inside the operating system and reacts accordingly based on rules similar to the rules used by the personal firewall. Click Edit to open the HIPS rule management window. If the default action for a rule is set to **Ask**, a dialog window will be displayed each time that the rule is triggered. You can choose to **Block** or **Allow** the operation. If you do not choose an action in the given time, a new action is selected based on the rules.

The dialog window allows you to create a rule based on any new action that HIPS detects and then define the conditions under which to **Allow** or **Block** that action. Click **Details** to see further information. Rules created like this are considered equal to rules created manually, so a rule created from a dialog window can be less specific than the rule that triggered that dialog window. This means that after creating such a rule, the same operation can trigger the same window.
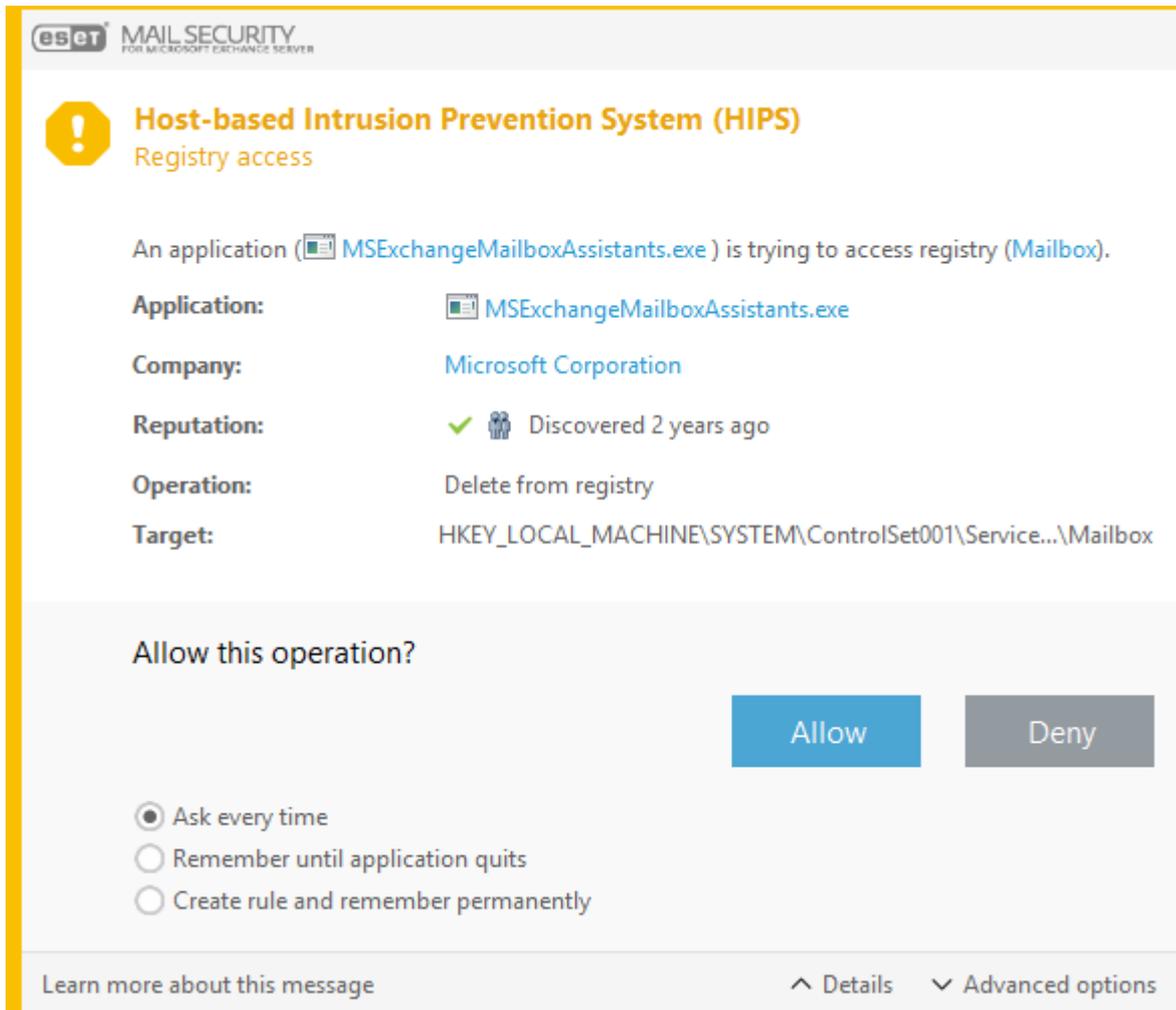
Ask every time

Dialog window will be displayed each time that the rule is triggered. You can choose to **Deny** or **Allow** the operation.

Remember until application quits

Choosing an action **Deny** or **Allow** will create a temporary HIPS rule that will be used until the application in question is closed. Also, if you change filtering mode, modify rules, or when HIPS module is updated, and if you restart the system, temporary rules will be deleted.

Create rule and remember permanently

Create a new HIPS rule. You can later modify this rule in the HIPS rule management section.

HIPS rule settings

This window gives you an overview of existing HIPS rules.

Rule	User-defined or automatically chosen rule name.
Enabled	Deactivate this switch if you want to keep the rule in the list but do not want to use it.
Action	The rule specifies an action – Allow, Block or Ask – that should be performed if the conditions are right.

Rule	User-defined or automatically chosen rule name.
Sources	The rule will be used only if the event is triggered by an application(s).
Targets	The rule will be used only if the operation is related to a specific file, application or registry entry.
Log severity	If you activate this option, information about this rule will be written to the HIPS log.
Notify	A small window appears in the Windows notification area if an event is triggered.

Create a new rule, click **Add** new HIPS rules or **Edit** selected entries.

Rule name

User-defined or automatically chosen rule name.

Action

The rule specifies an action **Allow**, **Block** or **Ask** that should be performed if the conditions are right.

Operations affecting

You must select the type of operation for which the rule will be applied. The rule will be used only for this type of operation and for the selected target. The rule consists of parts that describe the conditions triggering this rule.

Source applications

The rule will be used only if the event is triggered by this application(s). Select **Specific applications** from drop-down menu and click **Add** to add new files or folders or you can select **All applications** from the drop-down menu to add all applications.

> **i** Some operations of specific rules pre-defined by HIPS cannot be blocked and are allowed by default. In addition, not all system operations are monitored by HIPS. HIPS monitors operations that may be considered unsafe.

Descriptions of important operations:

File operations

Delete file	Application is asking for permission to delete the target file.
Write to file	Application is asking for permission to write to the target file.
Direct access to disk	Application is trying to read from or write to the disk in a non-standard way that will circumvent common Windows procedures. This may result in files being modified without the application of corresponding rules. This operation may be caused by malware trying to evade detection, backup software trying to make an exact copy of a disk, or a partition manager trying to reorganize disk volumes.
Install global hook	Refers to calling the SetWindowsHookEx function from the MSDN library.
Load driver	Installation and loading of drivers onto the system.

The rule will only be used if the operation is related to this target. Select **Specific files** from the drop-down menu and click **Add** to add new files or folders. Alternatively, you can select **All files** from the drop-down menu to add all applications.

Application operations

Debug another application	Attaching a debugger to the process. While debugging an application, many details of its behavior can be viewed and modified and its data can be accessed.
Intercept events from another application	The source application is attempting to catch events targeted at a specific application (for example a keylogger trying to capture browser events).
Terminate/suspend another application	Suspending, resuming or terminating a process (can be accessed directly from Process Explorer or the Processes window).
Start new application	Starting of new applications or processes.
Modify state of another application	The source application is attempting to write into the target applications' memory or run code on its behalf. This functionality may be useful to protect an essential application by configuring it as a target application in a rule blocking the use of this operation.

The rule will only be used if the operation is related to this target. Select **Specific applications** from the drop-down menu and click **Add** to add new files or folders. Alternatively, you can select **All applications** from the drop-down menu to add all applications.

Registry operations

Modify startup settings	Any changes in settings that define which applications will be run at Windows startup. These can be found, for example, by searching for the Run key in the Windows Registry.
Delete from registry	Deleting a registry key or its value.
Rename registry key	Renaming registry keys.
Modify registry	Creating new values of registry keys, changing existing values, moving data in the database tree or setting user or group rights for registry keys.

The rule will only be used if the operation is related to this target. Select **Specific entries** from the drop-down menu and click **Add** to add new files or folders. Alternatively, you can select **All entries** from the drop-down menu to add all applications.

> ℹ️ You can use wildcards with certain restrictions when entering a target. Instead of a specific key the * (asterisk) symbol can be used in registry paths. For example *HKEY_USERS*\\software can mean HKEY_USER\\.default\\software* but not
> *HKEY_USERS\\S-1-2-21-2928335913-73762274-491795397-7895\\.default\\software.*
> *HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\\system\\ControlSet** is not a valid registry key path. A registry key path containing *** defines "this path, or any path on any level after that symbol". This is the only way of using wildcards for file targets. First, the specific part of a path will be evaluated, then the path following the wildcard symbol (*).

> ⚠️ You may receive a notification if you create an overly generic rule.

HIPS advanced settings

The following options are useful for debugging and analyzing an application's behavior:

Drivers always allowed to load

Selected drivers are always allowed to load regardless of configured filtering mode, unless explicitly blocked by user rule. Drivers shown in this list will always be allowed to load regardless of HIPS filtering mode, unless

explicitly blocked by user rule. You can **Add** new driver, **Edit** or **Delete** selected driver from the list.

> ℹ️ Click **Reset** if you do not want drivers that you have added manually to be included. This can be useful if you have added several drivers and you cannot delete them from the list manually.

Log all blocked operations

All blocked operations will be written to the HIPS log. Use this feature only when troubleshooting or requested by ESET Technical Support, as it might generate a huge log file and slow down the system.

Notify when changes occur in Startup applications

Displays a desktop notification each time an application is added to or removed from system startup.

Update configuration

This section specifies update source information like the update servers being used and authentication data for these servers.

> ℹ️ For updates to be downloaded properly, it is essential that you fill in all update parameters correctly. If you use a firewall, ensure that your ESET program is allowed to communicate with the internet (for example, HTTP communication).

⌃ Basic

Select default update profile

Choose existing or create new profile that will be applied by default for updates.

Automatic profile switching

Assign an update profile according to Known networks in Firewall. Automatic profile switching allows to change the profile for specific network depending on the setting in Scheduler. Check help pages for more information

Configure update notifications

Click **Edit** to select what application notifications are displayed. You can choose if the notifications Show on a desktop or Forward to email.

Clear update cache

If you experience problems with an update, click **Clear** to clear the temporary update cache.

Product updates

Auto-updates

Enabled by default. Use the slider to disable auto-updates if you need to stop the ESET Mail Security from being updated temporarily. We recommend that you keep this setting enabled to ensure your ESET Mail Security has the latest Program Component Updates (PCU), and micro Program Component Updates (µPCU) applied when a new update is available.

> **i** The updates are applied after the next server restart.

Outdated detection engine alerts

Set maximum detection engine age automatically /

Maximum detection engine age (days)

Use the slider to disable automatic detection engine age and set the maximum time manually (in days) after which the detection engine age will be reported as out of date. The default value is 7.

Module Rollback

If you suspect that a new update of detection engine and/or program modules may be unstable or corrupt, you can rollback to the previous version and disable updates for a set period of time. Alternatively, you can enable previously disabled updates if you had postponed them indefinitely. ESET Mail Security records snapshots of detection engine and program modules for use with the [Rollback](#) feature. To create detection engine snapshots, leave **Create snapshots of modules** enabled.

Number of locally stored snapshots

Defines the number of previous module snapshots stored.

Rollback to previous modules

Click [Rollback](#) to revert program modules to previous
[Profiles](#)
version and temporarily disable updates.

To create a custom update profile, select **Edit** next to **List of profiles**. Type your own **Profile name** and click **Add**. Select profile to edit and modify parameters for module updates types or create an **Update mirror**.

⌃ [Updates](#)

Select the type of update to use from the drop-down menu:

• **Regular update**—By default, the Update type is set to Regular update to ensure that update files will automatically be downloaded from the ESET server with the least network traffic.

• **Pre-release update**—Are updates that have gone through thorough internal testing and will be available to the general public soon. You can benefit from enabling pre-release updates by having access to the most recent detection methods and fixes. However, pre-release updates might not be stable enough at all times and SHOULD NOT be used on production servers and workstations where maximum availability and stability is required.

• **Delayed update**—Allows updating from special update servers providing new versions of virus databases with a delay of at least X hours (that is, databases tested in a real environment and therefore considered as stable).

Enable update delivery optimization

When enabled, update files are downloaded from CDN (content delivery network). Disabling this setting may cause download interruptions and slowdowns when dedicated ESET update servers are overloaded. Disabling is useful when a firewall is limited to access ESET update server IP addresses only or a connection to CDN services is not working.

Ask before downloading update

When a new update is available, you will be prompted before downloading it.

Ask if an update file size is greater than (KB)

If the update file size is greater than the value specified in the field, a notification will be displayed.

Modules updates

Module updates are set to **Choose automatically** by default. The update server is the location where updates are stored. If you use an ESET server, we recommend that you leave the default option selected.

When using a local HTTP server – also known as a Mirror – the update server should be set as follows: http://computer_name_or_its_IP_address:2221
When using a local HTTP server with SSL – the update server should be set as follows: https://computer_name_or_its_IP_address:2221
When using a local shared folder – the update server should be set as follows: \\computer_name_or_its_IP_address\shared_folder

Enable more frequent updates of detection signatures

Detection engine will be updated in shorter intervals. Disabling this option may negatively impact detection rate.

Allow module updates from removable media

Update from removable media if contains created mirror. When **Automatic** selected, updates will run in the background. If you want to show update dialogs select **Always ask**.

Product updates

Pausing auto-updates for specific update profiles temporarily disables automatic product updates, for example while connected to the internet using other networks or metered connections. Keep this setting enabled to have constant access to the latest features and the highest possible protection.

> **i** In some cases, a server restart may be required for the updates to take place.
>
> Connection options

Proxy Server

To access the proxy server setup options for a given update profile, click the Proxy mode and select one of the three following options:

• **Do not use proxy server**—No proxy server will be used by ESET Mail Security when performing updates.

• **Use global proxy server settings**—Proxy server configuration specified in the Advanced setup (F5) > Tools > Proxy server will be used.

• **Connection through a proxy server**—Use this option if:

> A proxy server should be used to update ESET Mail Security that is different from the proxy server specified in the global settings (Tools > Proxy server). If so, the settings should be specified here: Proxy server address, communication Port (3128 by default), plus Username and Password for the proxy server if required.

The proxy server settings were not set globally, but ESET Mail Security will connect to a proxy server for updates.

Your computer is connected to the internet via a proxy server. The settings are taken from Internet Explorer during program installation, but if they are subsequently changed (for example, if you change your ISP), check that the HTTP proxy settings listed in this window are correct. Otherwise the program will not be able to connect to the update servers.

> **i** Authentication data such as **Username** and **Password** is intended for accessing the proxy server. Complete these fields only if a Username and Password are required. Please note that these fields are not for your Username/Password for ESET Mail Security, and should only be completed if you know you need a password to access the internet via a proxy server.

Use direct connection if proxy is not available

If a product is configured to utilize HTTP Proxy and the proxy is unreachable, the product will bypass the proxy and communicate directly with ESET servers.

Windows shares

When updating from a local server running Windows, authentication for each network connection is required by default.

Connect to LAN as

To configure your account, select one of the following options:

• **System account (default)**—Use the system account for authentication. Typically, no authentication process takes place if there is no authentication data supplied in the main update setup section.

• **Current user**—Select this option to ensure that the program authenticates using the currently logged-in user account. The drawback of this solution is that the program is not able to connect to the update server if no user is currently logged in.

• **Specified user**—Select this option to use a specific user account for authentication. Use this method when the default system account connection fails. Be aware that the specified user account must have access to the update files directory on the local server. If the user does not have access, the program will not be able to establish a connection or download updates.

> **⚠** When either **Current user** or **Specified user** is selected, an error may occur when changing the identity of the program to the desired user. We recommend entering the LAN authentication data in the main update setup section. In this update setup section, the authentication data should be entered as follows: domain_name\user (if it is a workgroup, enter workgroup_name\name) and password. When updating from the HTTP version of the local server, no authentication is required.

Disconnect from server after update

To force a disconnect if a connection to the server remains active even after updates have been downloaded.

^ Update mirror

Configuration options for the local Mirror server are located in the **Advanced setup** (F5) in the **Update** > **Profiles** > Update Mirror tab.

Update rollback

If you suspect that a new detection engine update or program modules may be unstable or corrupt, you can roll back to the previous version and temporarily disable updates. Alternatively, you can enable previously disabled

updates if you had postponed them indefinitely.

ESET Mail Security records snapshots of the detection engine and program modules for use with the rollback feature. To create virus database snapshots, keep **Create snapshots of modules** enabled.

When **Create snapshots of modules** enabled, the first snapshot is created during the first update. The next one is created after 48 hours.

The **Number of locally stored snapshots** field defines the number of stored detection engine snapshots.

> ℹ️ When the maximum number of snapshots is reached (for example, three), the oldest snapshot is replaced with a new snapshot every 48 hours. ESET Mail Security rolls back detection engine and program module update versions to the oldest snapshot.

Click **Rollback**, you have to select a time interval from the drop-down menu that represents the period of time that the detection engine database and program module updates will be paused.
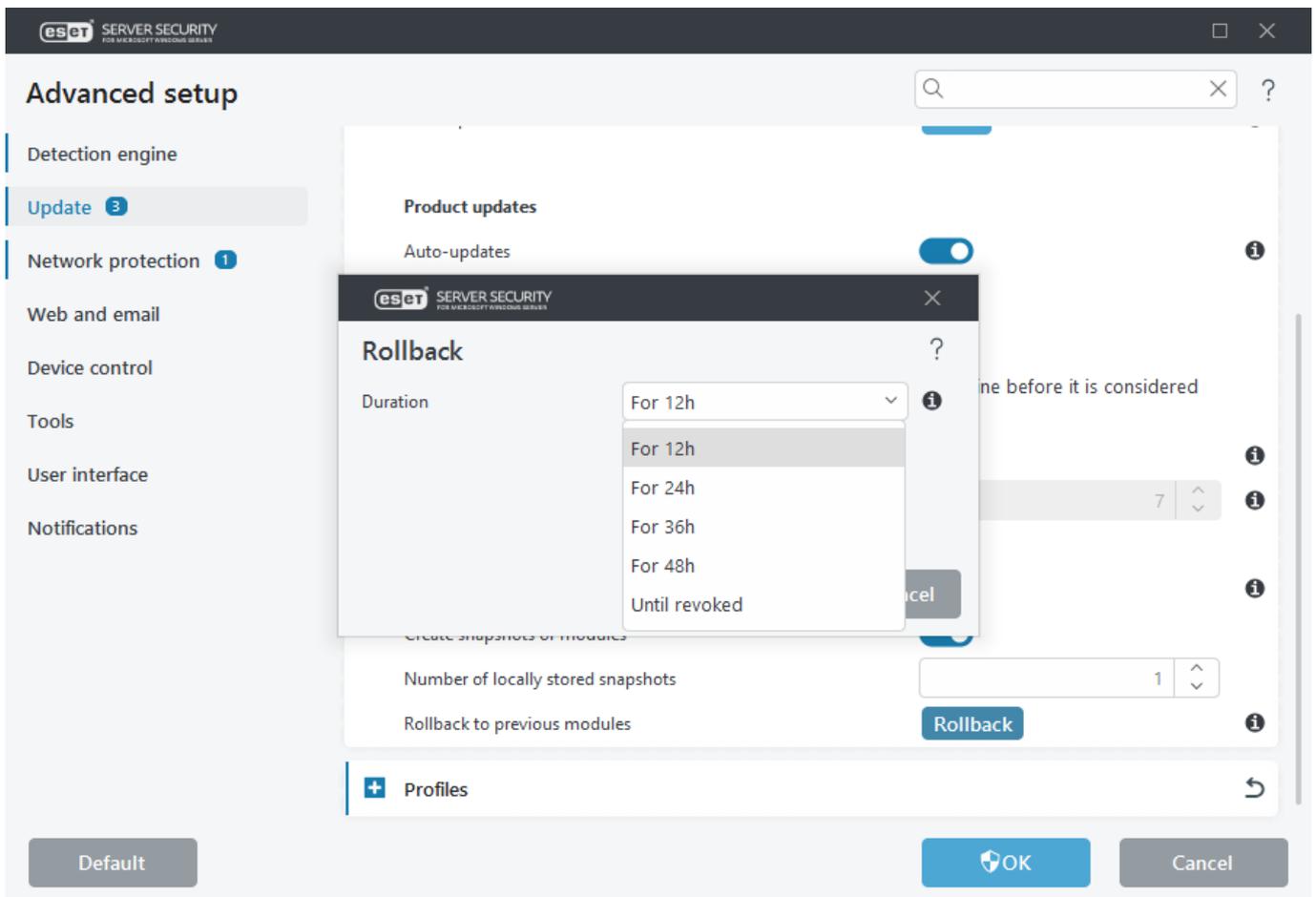
Select **Until revoked** to postpone regular updates indefinitely until you restore update functionality manually. Since it represents a potential security risk, we recommend not selecting this option.

If a rollback is performed, the **Rollback** button changes to **Allow updates**. Updates are not allowed for the time interval selected from the **Suspend updates** drop-down menu.

The detection engine database version is downgraded to the oldest available and stored as a snapshot in the local computer file system.

Scheduled Task - Update

If you want to update the program from two update servers, then it is necessary to create two different update profiles. If the first one fails to download update files, then the program automatically switches to the alternative one. This is suitable, for example, for notebooks that normally update from a local LAN update server, but their owners often connect to the internet using other networks. Therefore, if the first profile fails, the second one will automatically download update files from the ESET update servers.

> ✓ The steps below will walk you through a task to edit existing **Regular automatic update**.
> 1. In the main **Scheduler** screen, select task **Update** with name **Regular automatic update** and click **Edit** the configuration wizard will be open.
> 2. Set the scheduler task to run, select one of the following timing options to define when you want the scheduled task to run.
> 3. If you want to prevent the task from being executed when the system is running on battery power (for example UPS), click the switch next to **Skip task when running on battery power**.
> 4. Select update profile to use for update. Select an action to perform if the scheduled task execution fails for any reason.
> 5. Click **Finish** to apply the task.

Update mirror

ESET Mail Security allows you to create copies of update files that can be used to update other workstations on the network. The use of a "mirror" - a copy of the update files in the LAN environment is convenient because the update files do not need to be downloaded from the vendor update server repeatedly by each workstation. Updates are downloaded to the local mirror server and then distributed to all workstations to avoid the risk of network traffic overload.

Updating client workstations from a Mirror optimizes network load balance and saves internet connection bandwidth.

> ℹ️ To minimize internet traffic on networks where ESET PROTECT is used to manage many clients, we recommend using ESET Bridge rather than configuring a client as a mirror. ESET Bridge can be installed with ESET PROTECT using the All-in-one installer or as a standalone component. For more information and differences between ESET Bridge, Apache HTTP Proxy, Mirror Tool, and direct connectivity, see ESET PROTECT Online Help page.

⌃ Update mirror

Create update mirror
Activates mirror configuration options.
Access to update files
Enable HTTP server
If enabled, update files can be accessed through HTTP, no credentials are required.
Storage folder
Click **Edit** to browse for a folder on the local computer or shared network folder. If authorization for the specified folder is required, authentication data must be entered in the Username and Password fields.
Click **Clear** if you want to change a defined default folder to store mirrored files *C:\ProgramData\ESET\ESET Security\mirror*.

⌃ HTTP server

Server port

Default port is set to 2221. Change this value if you are using different port.

Authentication

Defines the method of authentication used for accessing update files. The following options are available: **None**, **Basic** and **NTLM**.

• Select **Basic** to use base64 encoding with basic username and password authentication.

• The **NTLM** option provides encoding using a safe encoding method. For authentication, the user created on the workstation sharing the update files is used.

• The default setting is **None**, which grants access to the update files with no need for authentication.

> ⚠️ If you want to allow access to the update files via the HTTP server, the Mirror folder must be located on the same computer as the ESET Mail Security instance creating it.

SSL for HTTP server

Append your **Certificate chain file**, or generate a self-signed certificate if you want to run HTTP server with HTTPS (SSL) support. The following certificate types are available: PEM, PFX and ASN. For additional security, you can use HTTPS protocol to download update files. It is almost impossible to track data transfers and login credentials using this protocol.

The **Private key type** is set to **Integrated** by default (and therefore the Private key file option is disabled by default). This means that the private key is a part of the selected certificate chain file.

⌃ Connection options

Windows shares

When updating from a local server running Windows, authentication for each network connection is required by default.

Connect to LAN as

To configure your account, select one of the following options:

• **System account** (default) – Use the system account for authentication. Normally, no authentication process takes place if there is no authentication data supplied in the main update setup section.

• **Current user** – Select this to ensure the program authenticates using the currently logged-in user account. The drawback of this solution is that the program cannot connect to the update server if no user is currently logged in.

• **Specified user** – Select this to use a specific user account for authentication. Use this method when the default system account connection fails. Be aware that the specified user account must have access to the updated files directory on the local server. If the user does not have access, the program cannot establish a connection and download updates.

> ⚠️ When either **Current user** or **Specified user** is selected, an error may occur when changing the identity of the program to the desired user. We recommend entering the LAN authentication data in the main update setup section. In this update setup section, the authentication data should be entered as follows: *domain_name\user* (if it is a workgroup, enter *workgroup_name\name*) and password. When updating from the HTTP version of the local server, no authentication is required.

Disconnect from server after update

To force a disconnect if a connection to the server remains active even after updates have been downloaded.

Network protection

Manage network protection, click **Edit** to add a new one or modify the existing:

• Known networks

• Zones

Known networks

When using a computer that frequently connects to public networks or networks outside of your normal work network, we recommend that you verify the network credibility of new networks that you are connecting to. Once networks are defined, ESET Mail Security can recognize trusted (Home/office) networks using various network parameters configured in Network Identification.

Computers often enter networks with IP addresses that are similar to the trusted network. In such cases, ESET Mail Security may consider an unknown network to be trusted (Home/office). We recommend that you use Network authentication to avoid this type of situation.

When a network adapter is connected to a network or its network settings are reconfigured, ESET Mail Security will search the known network list for a record that matches the new network. If Network identification and Network authentication (optional) match, the network will be marked connected in this interface.

When no known network is found, network identification configuration will create a new network connection to identify the network the next time that you connect to it. By default, the new network connection uses the Public network protection type.

The new Network Connection Detected dialog window will prompt you to choose between the Public network, Home or office network or Use Windows setting protection type. If a network adapter is connected to a known network and that network is marked as Home or office network, local subnets of the adapter will be added to the Trusted zone.

Protection type of new networks

Select which of the following options: **Use Windows setting**, **Ask user** or **Mark as public** is used by default for new networks. When you select **Use Windows setting** a dialog will not appear and the network you are connected to will automatically be marked according to your Windows settings. This will cause certain features (for example file sharing and remote desktop) to become accessible from new networks.

Known networks can be configured manually in the Known networks editor window.

Add network

Network configuration settings are arranged in the following tabs:

Network

You can define the **Network name** and select the **Protection type** for the network. Shows if the network is set to **Trusted network**, **Untrusted network** or **Use Windows setting**.

Additionally, addresses added under, **Additional trusted addresses** are always added to the trusted zone of adapters connected to this network (regardless of the network's protection type).

- **Warn about weak WiFi encryption**—ESET Mail Security will inform you when you connect to an unprotected wireless network or network with weak protection.

- **Firewall profile** will be inherited from the network adapter.

- **Update profile**—Select update profile that will be used when connected to this network.

Network identification

Is performed based on the local network adapter's parameters. All selected parameters are compared against the actual parameters of active network connections. IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are allowed.

Network authentication

Searches for a specific server in the network and uses asymmetric encryption (RSA) to authenticate that server. The name of the network being authenticated must match the zone name set in authentication server settings. The name is case sensitive. Specify a server name, server listening port and a public key that corresponds to the private server key. The server name can be entered in the form of an IP address, DNS or NetBios name and can be followed by a path specifying the location of the key on the server (for example, *server_name_/directory1/directory2/authentication*). You can specify alternate servers to use by appending them to the path, separated by semicolons.

The public key can be imported using any of the following file types:

- PEM encrypted public key (.pem), this key can be generated using the ESET Authentication Server.

- Encrypted public key

- Public key certificate (.crt)

Click **Test** to test your settings. If authentication is successful, Server authentication was successful will be displayed. If authentication is not configured properly, the following error messages will be displayed:

Server authentication failed. Invalid or mismatched signature.	Server signature does not match the public key entered.
Server authentication failed. Network name does not match.	Deactivate this switch if you want to keep the rule in the list but do not want to use it.
Server authentication failed. Invalid or no response from server.	No response is received if the server is not running or is inaccessible. An invalid response may be received if another HTTP server is running on the specified address.
Invalid public key entered.	Verify that the public key file you have entered is not corrupted.

Zones

A zone represents a collection of network addresses that create one logical group of IP addresses, which is useful when you reuse the same set of addresses in multiple rules. Each address in a given group is assigned similar rules defined centrally for the whole group. One example of such a group is a **Trusted zone**. A Trusted zone represents a group of network addresses that are not blocked by the Firewall in any way.

To add a trusted zone:

1. Open **Advanced setup (F5)** > **Network protection** > **Basic** > **Zones**.

2. Click **Edit** next to the **Zones**.

3. Click **Add**, type **Name** and **Description** for the new zone, and add a remote IP address into the **Remote computer address (IPv4/IPv6, range, mask)** field.

4. Click **OK**.

Columns

- **Name**—Name of a group of remote computers.

- **IP addresses**—Remote IP addresses that belong to a zone.

Control elements

When you add or edit a zone, the following fields are available:

- **Name**—Name of a group of remote computers.

- **Description**—A general description of the group.

- **Remote computer address (IPv4, IPv6, range, mask)**—A remote address, address range or subnet.

- **Delete**—Removes a zone from the list.

| i | Pre-defined zones cannot be removed. |

Network attack protection

Enable Network attack protection (IDS)

Allows you to configure access to some of the services running on your computer from the Trusted zone and enable/disable detection of several types of attacks and exploits that might be used to harm your computer.

Enable Botnet protection

Detects and blocks communication with malicious command and control servers based on typical patterns when the computer is infected and a bot is attempting to communicate

IDS exceptions

You can think of Intrusion Detection System (IDS) exceptions as network protection rules. Click edit to define IDS exceptions.

> ℹ️ If your environment runs a high-speed network (10GbE and above), read the KB article for information on network speed performance and ESET Mail Security.

Brute-force attack protection

ESET Mail Security inspects network traffic content and blocks the attempts of password-guessing attacks.

Advanced options

Configure the advanced filtering options to detect the various types of attacks and vulnerabilities than can be carried out against your computer.

Intrusion detection:

Protocol SMB – Detects and blocks various security problems in SMB protocol
Protocol RPC – Detects and blocks various CVEs in the remote procedure call system developed for the Distributed Computing Environment (DCE).
Protocol RDP – Detects and blocks various CVEs in the RDP protocol (see above).
Block unsafe address after attack detection – IP addresses that have been detected as sources of attacks are added to the Blacklist to prevent connection for a certain period of time.
Display notification after attack detection – Turns on the Windows notification area at the bottom right corner of the screen.
Display notifications also for incoming attacks against security holes – Alerts you if attacks against security holes are detected or if an attempt is made by a threat to enter the system this way.

Packet inspection:

Allow incoming connection to admin shares in SMB protocol – The administrative shares (admin shares) are the default network shares that share hard drive partitions (C$, D$, ...) in the system together with the system folder (ADMIN$). Disabling connection to admin shares should mitigate many security risks. For example, the Conficker worm performs dictionary attacks To connect to admin shares.

Deny old (unsupported) SMB dialects – Deny SMB sessions that use an old SMB dialect unsupported by IDS. Modern Windows operating systems support old SMB dialects due to backward compatibility with old operating systems such as Windows 95. The attacker can use an old dialect in an SMB session to evade traffic inspection. Deny old SMB dialects if your computer does not need to share files (or use SMB communication in general) with a computer with an old version of Windows.

Deny SMB sessions without extended security – Extended security can be used during the SMB session negotiation to provide a more secure authentication mechanism than LAN Manager Challenge/Response (LM) authentication. The LM scheme is considered weak and is not recommended for use.

Allow communication with the Security Account Manager service – For more information about this service see [MS-SAMR].

Allow communication with the Local Security Authority service – For more information about this service see [MS-LSAD] and [MS-LSAT].

Allow communication with the Remote Registry service – For more information about this service see [MS-RRP].

Allow communication with the Service Control Manager service – For more information about this service see [MS-SCMR].

Allow communication with the Server service – For information about this service see [MS-SRVS].

Allow communication with the other services – Other MSRPC services.

IDS exceptions

Intrusion Detection System (IDS) exceptions are essentially network protection rules. The exceptions are evaluated from top to bottom. IDS exceptions editor allows you to customize network protection behavior upon various IDS exceptions. First matching exception is applied, for each action type (Block, Notify, Log) separately. **Top/Up/Down/Bottom** allows you to adjust the priority level of exceptions. To create a new IDS exception, click **Add**. Click **Edit** to modify an existing IDS exception, or **Delete** to remove it.

Choose **Alert** type from the drop-down list. Specify the **Threat name** and **Direction**. Browse for an **Application** you want to create the exception for. Specify a list of IP addresses (IPv4 or IPv6) or subnets. For multiple entries use comma as a delimiter.

Configure **Action** for IDS exception by selecting one of the options from the drop-down menu (**Default**, **Yes**, **No**). Do this for each Action type (**Block**, **Notify**, **Log**).

> ✓ If want a notification to be displayed in case of an IDS exception alert, as well as have the time of the event logged, leave the **Block** action type **Default** and for the other two action types (**Notify** and **Log**) choose **Yes** from the drop-down menu.

Suspected threat blocked

This situation can occur when an application on your computer is trying to transmit malicious traffic to another computer on the network, exploiting a security hole or if someone is trying to scan ports on your network.

- Threat – Name of the threat.

- Source – Source network address.

- Target – Target network address.

- Stop blocking – Creates an IDS rule for the suspected threat with settings to allow communication.

- Keep blocking – Blocks the detected threat. To create an IDS rule with settings to block communication for this threat, select Do not notify me again.

> ℹ️ The information shown in this notification window may vary depending on the type of threat detected. For more information about threats and other related terms, see Types of remote attacks or Types of detections.

Temporary IP address blacklist

View a list of IP addresses that have been detected as the source of attacks and added to the blacklist to block connections for a certain period of time (up to one hour). Shows **IP address** that have been locked.

Block reason

Shows type of attack that has been prevented from the address (for example security vulnerability exploitation attempt).

Timeout

Shows time and date when the address will expire from the blacklist.

Remove / Remove all

Removes selected IP address from the temporary blacklist before it will expire or removes all addresses from the blacklist immediately.

Add exception

Adds a firewall exception into IDS filtering for selected IP address.

Brute-force attack protection

Brute-force attack protection blocks password-guessing attacks for RDP and SMB services. A brute-force attack is a method of discovering a targeted password by systematically trying all possible combinations of letters, numbers, and symbols.

- **Enable Brute-force attack protection** – ESET Mail Security inspects network traffic content and blocks the attempts of password-guessing attacks.

- Rules – To create, edit and view rules for incoming and outgoing network connections.

- Exclusions – List of excluded detections defined by an IP address or application path. You can create and edit exclusions in ESET PROTECT Web Console.

Brute-force attack protection rules

Brute-force attack protection rules to create, edit and view rules for incoming and outgoing network connections. The pre-defined rules cannot be edited or deleted.

Create a new rule, click **Add** new Brute-force attack protection rule, or **Edit** selected entries.

This window gives you an overview of existing Brute-force attack protection rules.

Name	User-defined or automatically chosen rule name.
Enabled	Deactivate this switch if you want to keep the rule in the list but do not want to use it.
Action	The rule specifies an action – Allow or Deny – that should be performed if the conditions are right.
Protocol	The communication protocol this rule will inspect.
Profile	Custom rules can be set and applied for specific profiles.
Max attempts	The maximum number of allowed attempts of attack repetition until the IP address is blocked and added to the blacklist.
Blacklist retention period (min)	Sets the time for the address expiration from the blacklist. The default time period for counting the number of attempts is 30 minutes.
Source IP	A list of IP addresses/ranges/subnets. Multiple addresses must be separated by a comma.
Source zones	Enables you to add a pre-defined or created zone with a range of IP addresses here by clicking Add.

Brute-force attack protection exclusions

Brute-force exclusions can be used to suppress Brute-force detection for specific criteria. These exclusions are created from ESET PROTECT based on Brute-force detection. The exclusions will be displayed if an administrator creates Brute-force exclusions in ESET PROTECT Web Console ☑. Exclusions can contain allowing rules only and are evaluated before IDS rules.

- **Detection** – Type of detection.

- **Application** – Select the file path of an excepted application by clicking ... (for example *C:\Program Files\Firefox\Firefox.exe*). Do not type the name of the application.

- **Remote IP** – A list of remote IPv4 or IPv6 address/ranges/subnets. Multiple addresses must be separated by a comma.

Web and email

You can configure protocol filtering, Email client protection, Web access protection and Anti-phishing to protect your server during internet communication.

Email client protection

Controls all email communication, protects against malicious code and lets you choose the action taken when an infection is detected.

Monitors the communication between web browsers and remote servers and complies with the HTTP and HTTPS rules. This feature also allows you to block, allow or exclude certain URL addresses.

Offers advanced protection for application protocols and it is provided by the ThreatSense scanning engine. This control works automatically, regardless of whether a web browser or an email client is used. It also works for encrypted (SSL/TLS) communication.

Allows you to block web pages known to distribute phishing content.

Protocol filtering

Malware protection for application protocols is provided by the ThreatSense scanning engine, which integrates multiple advanced malware scanning techniques. Protocol filtering works automatically, regardless of the web browser or email client used. If protocol filtering is enabled, ESET Mail Security will be checking communications that uses the SSL/TLS protocol, go to **Web and email** > SSL/TLS.

Enable application protocol content filtering

If you disable protocol filtering, note that many ESET Mail Security components (Web access protection, Email protocols protection and Anti-Phishing protection) depend on it and not all their features will be available.

Excluded applications

To exclude the communication of specific network-aware applications from content filtering, select them in the list. HTTP/POP3 communication of the selected applications will not be checked for threats. Enables you to exclude specific applications from protocol filtering. Click **Edit** and **Add** to select an executable from the list of applications to exclude it from protocol filtering.

> ⚠️ We recommend only using this option for applications that do not work properly with their communication being checked.

Excluded IP addresses

Allows you to exclude specific remote addresses from protocol filtering. IP addresses in this list will be excluded from protocol content filtering. HTTP/POP3/IMAP communication from/to the selected addresses will not be checked for threats.

> ⚠️ We recommend that you only use this option for addresses that are known to be trustworthy.

Click **Edit** and **Add** to specify IP address, address range or subnet to which the exclusion will be applied. When you select **Enter multiple values**, you can add multiple IP addresses delimited by newlines, commas or semicolons. When multiple selection is enabled, addresses will be shown in the list of excluded IP addresses.

> ℹ️ Exclusions are useful when protocol filtering causes compatibility issues.

Web and email clients

Because of the enormous amount of malicious code circulating the internet, safe internet browsing is a very important aspect of computer protection. Web browser vulnerabilities and fraudulent links help malicious code enter the system unnoticed, which is why ESET Mail Security focuses on web browser security. Each application accessing the network can be marked as a web browser. Applications that already use protocols for communication or applications from selected paths can be added to the list of Web and email clients.

SSL/TLS

ESET Mail Security is capable of checking for threats in communications that use the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) / Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol.

You can use various scanning modes to examine SSL protected communications with trusted certificates, unknown certificates, or certificates that are excluded from SSL-protected communication checking.

Enable SSL/TLS protocol filtering

If protocol filtering is disabled, the program will not scan communications over SSL/TLS. The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) / Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol filtering mode is available in following options:

- **Automatic mode** – Select this option to scan all SSL/TLS protected communications except communications protected by certificates excluded from checking. If a new communication using an unknown, signed certificate is established, you will not be notified and the communication will automatically be filtered. When you access a server with an untrusted certificate that is marked as trusted (it is on the trusted certificates list), communication to the server is allowed and the content of the communication channel is filtered.

- **Interactive mode** – If you enter a new SSL/TLS protected site (with an unknown certificate), an action selection dialog is displayed. This mode allows you to create a list of SSL/TLS certificates that will be excluded from scanning.

- **Policy mode** – All SSL/TLS connections are filtered, except configured exclusions.

List of SSL/TLS filtered application

Add filtered application and set one of the scan actions. The List of SSL/TLS filtered applications can be used to customize ESET Mail Security behavior for specific applications, and to remember actions chosen if **Interactive mode** is selected in **SSL/TLS protocol filtering mode**.

List of known certificates

Allows you to customize ESET Mail Security behavior for specific SSL certificates. The list can be viewed and managed by clicking Edit next to **List of known certificates**.

Exclude communication with trusted domains

To exclude communication using Extended validation certificates from protocol checking (internet banking).

Block encrypted communication utilizing the obsolete protocol SSL v2

Communication using this earlier version of the SSL protocol will automatically be blocked.

Root certificate

For SSL/TLS communication to work properly in your browsers/email clients, it is essential that the root certificate for ESET be added to the list of known root certificates (publishers). **Add the root certificate to known browsers** should be enabled.

Select this option to automatically add the ESET root certificate to known browsers (for example, Opera and Firefox). For browsers using the system certification store, the certificate is added automatically (for example, in Internet Explorer).

To apply the certificate to unsupported browsers, click **View Certificate** > **Details** > **Copy to File**... and manually import it into the browser.

Certificate validity

If the certificate cannot be verified using the TRCA certificate store

In some cases, a website certificate cannot be verified using the **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** (TRCA) store. This means that the certificate is signed by someone (for example, the administrator of a web server or a small business) and considering this certificate as trusted is not always a risk. Most large businesses (for example banks) use a certificate signed by the TRCA.

If **Ask about certificate validity** is selected (selected by default), the user will be prompted to select an action to take when encrypted communication is established. You can select **Block communication that uses the certificate** to always terminate encrypted connections to sites with unverified certificates.

If the certificate is invalid or corrupt

This means that the certificate expired or was incorrectly signed. In this case, we recommend that you leave **Block communication that uses the certificate** selected.

List of known certificates

To customize ESET Mail Security behavior for specific Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) / Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificates, and to remember actions chosen if **Interactive mode** is selected in SSL/TLS protocol filtering mode. You can configure selected certificate or **Add** a certificate from a URL or File.

When you are in **Add certificate** window, click **URL** or **File** and specify the certificate URL or browse for a certificate file. The following fields will automatically be filled using data from the certificate:

- **Certificate name**—Name of the certificate.

- **Certificate issuer**—Name of the certificate creator.

- **Certificate subject**—The subject field identifies the entity associated with the public key stored in the subject public key field.

Access action

- **Auto**—To allow trusted certificates and ask for untrusted ones.

- **Allow or Block**—To allow/block communication secured by this certificate regardless of its trustworthiness.

- **Ask**—To receive a prompt when a specific certificate is encountered.

Scan action

- **Auto**—To scan Automatic mode and ask in Interactive mode.

- **Scan or Ignore**—To scan or ignore communication secured by this certificate.

- **Ask**—Receive a prompt when a specific certificate is encountered.

Encrypted SSL communication

If your system is configured to use SSL protocol scanning, a dialog window prompting you to choose an action will be displayed in two situations:

First, if a website uses an unverifiable or invalid certificate, and ESET Mail Security is configured to ask the user in such cases (by default yes for unverifiable certificates, no for invalid ones), a dialog box will ask you whether to **Allow** or **Block** the connection.

Second, if **SSL protocol filtering mode** is set to **Interactive mode**, a dialog box for each website will ask whether to **Scan** or **Ignore** the traffic. Some applications verify that their SSL traffic is not modified nor inspected by anyone, in such cases ESET Mail Security must **Ignore** that traffic to keep the application working.
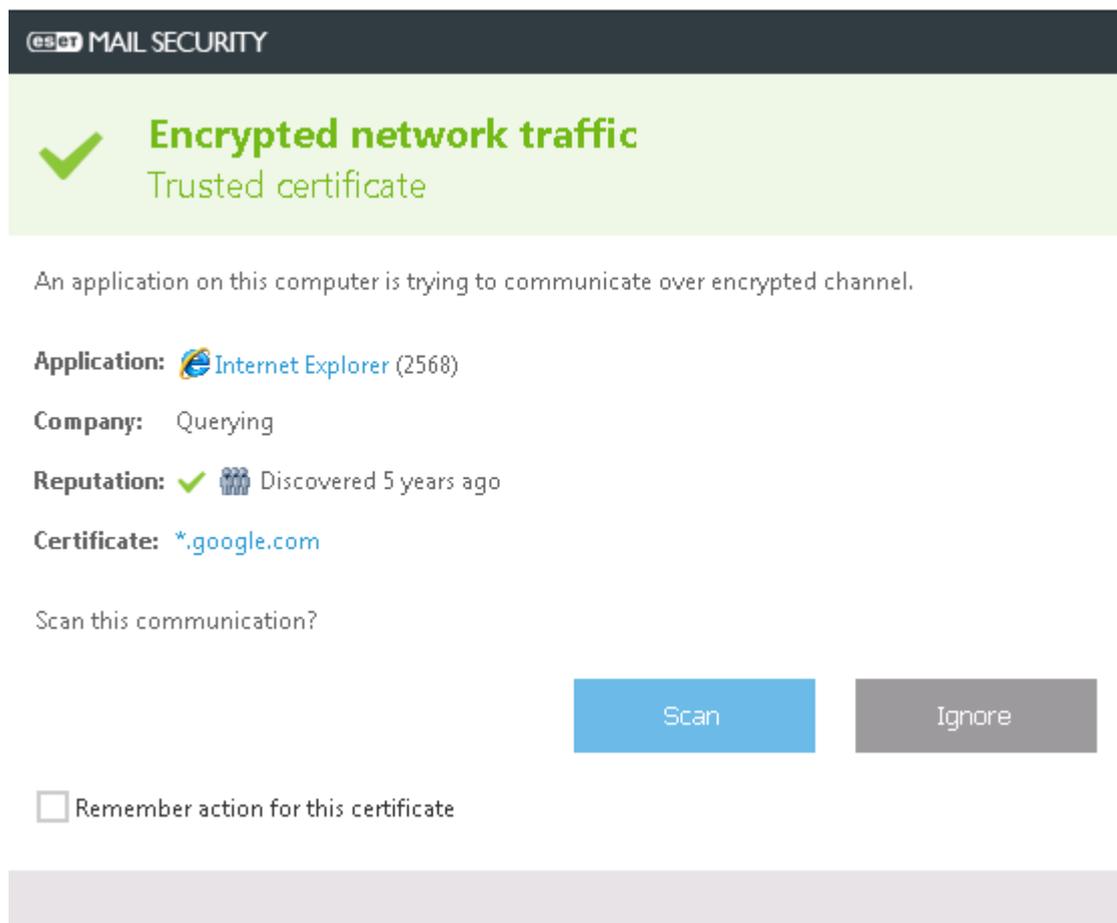
In both cases, the user can choose to remember the selected action. Saved actions are stored in the List of known certificates.

Email client protection

Integration of ESET Mail Security with email clients increases the level of active protection against malicious code in email messages. If your email client is supported, integration can be enabled in ESET Mail Security. When integration is activated, the ESET Mail Security toolbar is inserted directly into the email client for more efficient email protection. Integration settings are located under **Advanced setup (F5)** > **Web and email** > **Email client protection** > **Email client integration**.

Email client integration

Microsoft Outlook is currently the only supported email client. Email protection works as a plugin. The main advantage of the plugin is that it is independent of the protocol used. When the email client receives an encrypted message, it is decrypted and sent to the virus scanner. For a complete list of supported email clients and their versions, refer to the following Knowledgebase article.

Attachment handling optimization—If optimization is disabled all attachments are scanned immediately. When disabled, it can slow down email client performance.

Advanced email client processing—If you are experiencing a system slowdown when working with your email client, disable this option.

Email clients that are currently supported include Microsoft Outlook, Outlook Express, Windows Mail and Windows Live Mail. Email protection works as a plug-in for these programs. The main advantage of the plug-in is that it is independent of the protocol used. When the email client receives an encrypted message, it is decrypted and sent to the virus scanner. Even if integration is not enabled, email communication is still protected by the email client protection module (POP3, IMAP).

Disable checking upon inbox content change

If you are experiencing a system slowdown when working with your email client (Microsoft Outlook only). This may occur when retrieving an email from the Kerio Outlook Connector Store, for example.

Enable email protection by client plugins

Lets you disable email client protection without removing integration into your email client. You can disable all plugins at once, or disable selectively the following:

- **Received email** – Toggles checking of received messages.

- **Sent email** – Toggles checking of sent messages.

- **Read email** – Toggles checking of read messages.

- **Modified email** – Toggles checking of modified messages.

Action to be performed on infected email

- **No action** – If enabled, the program will identify infected attachments, but will leave emails without taking any action.

- **Delete email** – The program will notify the user about infiltration(s) and delete the message.

- **Move email to the Deleted items folder** – Infected emails will be moved automatically to the Deleted items folder.

- **Move email to folder** – Infected emails will be moved automatically to the specified folder.

- **Folder** – Specify the custom folder where you want to move infected emails when detected.

Repeat scan after update

Toggles rescanning after a detection engine update.

Accept scan results from other modules

If this is selected, the email protection module accepts scan results of other protection modules (POP3, IMAP protocols scanning).

Email protocols

Enable email protection by protocol filtering

The IMAP and POP3 protocols are the most widespread protocols used to receive email communication in an email client application. ESET Mail Security provides protection for these protocols regardless of the email client used.

ESET Mail Security also supports the scanning of IMAPS and POP3S protocols, which use an encrypted channel to transfer information between server and client. ESET Mail Security checks communication utilizing the SSL (Secure Socket Layer), and TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocols. The program will only scan traffic on ports defined in Ports used by **IMAPS / POP3S protocol**, regardless of operating system version.

IMAPS / POP3S scanner setup

Encrypted communications will not be scanned when default settings are in use. To enable the scanning of encrypted communication, navigate to SSL/TLS protocol checking.

The port number identifies what type of port it is. Here are the default email ports for:

Port name	Port numbers	Description
POP3	110	Default POP3 non-encrypted port.
IMAP	143	Default IMAP non-encrypted port.
Secure IMAP (IMAP4-SSL)	585	Enable SSL/TLS protocol filtering. Multiple port numbers must be delimited by a comma.
IMAP4 over SSL (IMAPS)	993	Enable SSL/TLS protocol filtering. Multiple port numbers must be delimited by a comma.
Secure POP3 (SSL-POP)	995	Enable SSL/TLS protocol filtering. Multiple port numbers must be delimited by a comma.

Email tags

Email protection provides control of email communications received through the POP3 and IMAP protocols. Using the plug-in for Microsoft Outlook and other email clients, ESET Mail Security provides control of all communications from the email client (POP3, MAPI, IMAP, HTTP).

When examining incoming messages, the program uses all the advanced scanning methods included in the ThreatSense scanning engine. This means that detection of malicious programs takes place even before being matched against the virus detection database. Scanning of POP3 and IMAP protocol communications is independent of the email client used.

After an email has been checked, a notification with the scan result can be appended to the message. You can select **Append tag messages to received and read email** or **Append tag messages to sent email**.

Be aware that on rare occasions, tag messages may be omitted in problematic HTML messages or if messages are forged by malware. The tag messages can be added to received and read email, sent email or both.

The available options are:

- **Never** – No tag messages will be added at all.

- **When a detection occurs** – Only messages containing malicious software will be marked as checked (default).

- **To all email when scanned** – The program will append messages to all scanned email.

Text to add to subject of detected email

Edit this template if you want to modify the subject prefix format of an infected email. This function will replace the message subject `Hello` with the following format: `"[detection %DETECTIONNAME%] Hello`. The variable `%DETECTIONNAME%` represents the detection.

Microsoft Outlook toolbar

Microsoft Outlook protection works as a plug-in module. After ESET Mail Security is installed, this toolbar containing the malware protection options is added to Microsoft Outlook:

ESET Mail Security

Click the icon to open the main program window of ESET Mail Security.

Rescan messages

Allows you to launch email checking manually. You can specify messages that will be checked and you can activate rescanning of received email. For more information see Email client protection.

Scanner setup

Displays the Email client protection setup options.

Outlook Express and Windows Mail toolbar

Outlook Express and Windows Mail protection works as a plug-in module. After ESET Mail Security is installed, this toolbar containing the malware protection options is added to Outlook Express or Windows Mail:

ESET Mail Security

Click the icon to open the main program window of ESET Mail Security.

Rescan messages

Enables you to launch email checking manually. You can specify messages that will be checked and you can activate rescanning of received email. For more information see Email client protection.

Scanner setup

Displays the Email client protection setup options.

Customize appearance

The appearance of the toolbar can be modified for your email client. Deselect the option to customize appearance independent of email program parameters.

- **Show text** – displays descriptions for icons.

- **Text to the right** – option descriptions are moved from the bottom to the right side of icons.

- **Large icons** – displays large icons for menu options.

Confirmation dialog

This notification serves to verify that the user really wants to perform the selected action, which should eliminate possible mistakes. The dialog also offers the option to disable confirmations.

Rescan messages

The ESET Mail Security toolbar integrated in email clients enables users to specify several options for email checking. The option **Rescan messages** offers two scanning modes:

- **All messages in the current folder** – Scans messages in the currently displayed folder.

- **Selected messages only** – Scans only messages marked by the user.

- **Rescan already scanned messages** – Provides the user with the option to run another scan on messages that have been scanned before.

Web access protection

Web access protection works by monitoring communication between web browsers and remote servers to protect you from online threats, and complies with HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and HTTPS (encrypted communication) rules.

Access to web pages known to contain malicious content is blocked before content is downloaded. All other web pages are scanned by the ThreatSense scanning engine when they are loaded and blocked if malicious content is detected. Web access protection offers two levels of protection, blocking by blacklist and blocking by content.

⌃ Basic

We strongly recommend that you leave **Web access protection** enabled. This option can also be accessed from the main program window of ESET Mail Security by navigating to **Setup** > **Web and email** > **Web access protection**.
Enable advanced scanning of browser scripts
By default, all JavaScript programs executed by web browsers will be checked by the detection engine.

⌃ Web protocols

Allows you to configure monitoring for these standard protocols which are used by most web browsers. By default, ESET Mail Security is configured to monitor the HTTP protocol used by most web browsers.
ESET Mail Security also supports HTTPS protocol checking. HTTPS communication uses an encrypted channel to transfer information between server and client. ESET Mail Security checks communication utilizing the Secure Socket Layer (SSL), and Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocols. The program will only scan traffic on ports defined in **Ports used by HTTPS protocol**, regardless of operating system version.
Encrypted communication will be not scanned when default settings are in use. To enable the scanning of encrypted communication **Advanced setup** (**F5**) > **Web and email** > SSL/TLS.

ThreatSense parameters

Configure settings such as types of scan (emails, archives, exclusions, limits, etc.) and detection methods for Web access protection.

URL address management

The URL address management allows you to specify HTTP addresses to block, allow or exclude from checking. Websites in the List of blocked addresses will not be accessible unless they are also included in the List of allowed addresses. Websites in the List of addresses excluded from checking are not scanned for malicious code when accessed. SSL/TLS protocol filtering must be enabled if you want to filter HTTPS addresses in addition to HTTP web pages. Otherwise, only the domains of HTTPS sites that you have visited will be added, the full URL will not be.

One list of blocked addresses may contain addresses from some external public blacklist, and a second one may contain your own blacklist, which makes it easier to update the external list while keeping yours intact.

Click **Edit** and **Add** to create a new address list in addition to the pre-defined ones. This can be useful if you want to logically split different groups of addresses. By default, the following three lists are available:

- **List of addresses excluded from checking** – No checking for malicious code will be performed for any address added to this list.

- **List of allowed addresses** – If Allow access only to HTTP addresses in the list of allowed addresses is enabled and the list of blocked addresses contains * (match everything), the user will be allowed to access

addresses specified in this list only. The addresses in this list are allowed even if they are included in the list of blocked addresses.

- **List of blocked addresses** – The user will not be allowed to access addresses specified in this list unless they also occur in the list of allowed addresses.

You can **Add** a new URL address into the list. You can also enter multiple values with separator. Click **Edit** to modify an existing address in the list, or **Delete** to delete it. Deleting is only possible for addresses created with **Add**, not the ones that were imported.

In all lists, the special symbols * (asterisk) and ? (question mark) can be used. The asterisk represents any number or character, while the question mark represents any one character. Carefully specify excluded addresses because the list should only contain trusted and safe addresses. Similarly, it is necessary to ensure that the symbols * and ? are used correctly in this list.

> **i** If you want to block all HTTP addresses except addresses present in the active List of allowed addresses, add * to the active List of blocked addresses.

Create new list

The list will include the desired URL addresses/domain masks that will be blocked, allowed or excluded from checking. When creating a new list, specify the following:

- **Address list type** – Choose the type (Excluded from checking, Blocked or Allowed) from the drop-down list.

- **List name** – Specify the name of the list. This field will be grayed out when editing one of the three pre-defined lists.

- **List description** – Type a short description for the list (optional). Will be grayed out when editing one of three pre-defined list.

- **List active** – Use the switch to deactivate the list. You can activate it later when required.

- **Notify when applying** – If you want to be notified when a specific list is used in evaluation of an HTTP / HTTPS site that you visited. A notification will be issued if a website is blocked or allowed because it is included in the list of blocked or allowed addresses. The notification will contain the name of the list containing the specified website.

- **Logging severity** – Choose the logging severity (None, Diagnostic, Information or Warning) from the drop-down list. Records with Warning verbosity can be collected by ESET PROTECT.

ESET Mail Security enables user to block access to specified websites and prevent the web browser from displaying their content. Furthermore, it allows user to specify addresses, which should be excluded from checking. If the complete name of the remote server is unknown, or the user want to specify a whole group of remote servers, so-called masks can be used to identify such a group.

The masks include the symbols ? and *:

- use ? to substitute a symbol

- use * to substitute a text string

> ✓ *.c?m* applies to all addresses where the last part begins with the letter c, ends with the letter m and contains an unknown symbol in between them (*.com*, *.cam*, etc.).

A leading *. sequence is treated specially if used at the beginning of a domain name. First, the * wildcard cannot represent a slash character ('/') in this case. This is to avoid circumventing the mask, for example the mask *.domain.com will not match *https://anydomain.com/anypath#.domain.com* (such a suffix can be appended to any URL without affecting the download). And second the *. also matches an empty string in this special case. This is to make it possible to match the whole domain, including any subdomains using a single mask. For example the mask *.domain.com also matches *https://domain.com*. Using *domain.com would be incorrect, as that would also match https://anotherdomain.com.

Enter multiple values

Add multiple URL addresses delimited by new lines, commas or semicolons. When multiple selection is enabled, addresses will be shown in the list.

Import

Text file with URL addresses to import (separate values with a line break, for example `*.txt` using encoding UTF-8).

Anti-Phishing web protection

The term phishing defines a criminal activity that uses social engineering (the manipulation of users to obtain confidential information). Phishing is often used to gain access to sensitive data such as bank account numbers, PIN numbers and more.

ESET Mail Security includes anti-phishing protection, which blocks web pages known to distribute this type of content. We strongly recommend that you enable Anti-Phishing in ESET Mail Security. Visit our Knowledgebase article for more information on Anti-Phishing protection in ESET Mail Security.

When you access a recognized phishing website, the following dialog will be displayed in your web browser. If you still want to access the website, click **Ignore threat** (not recommended).
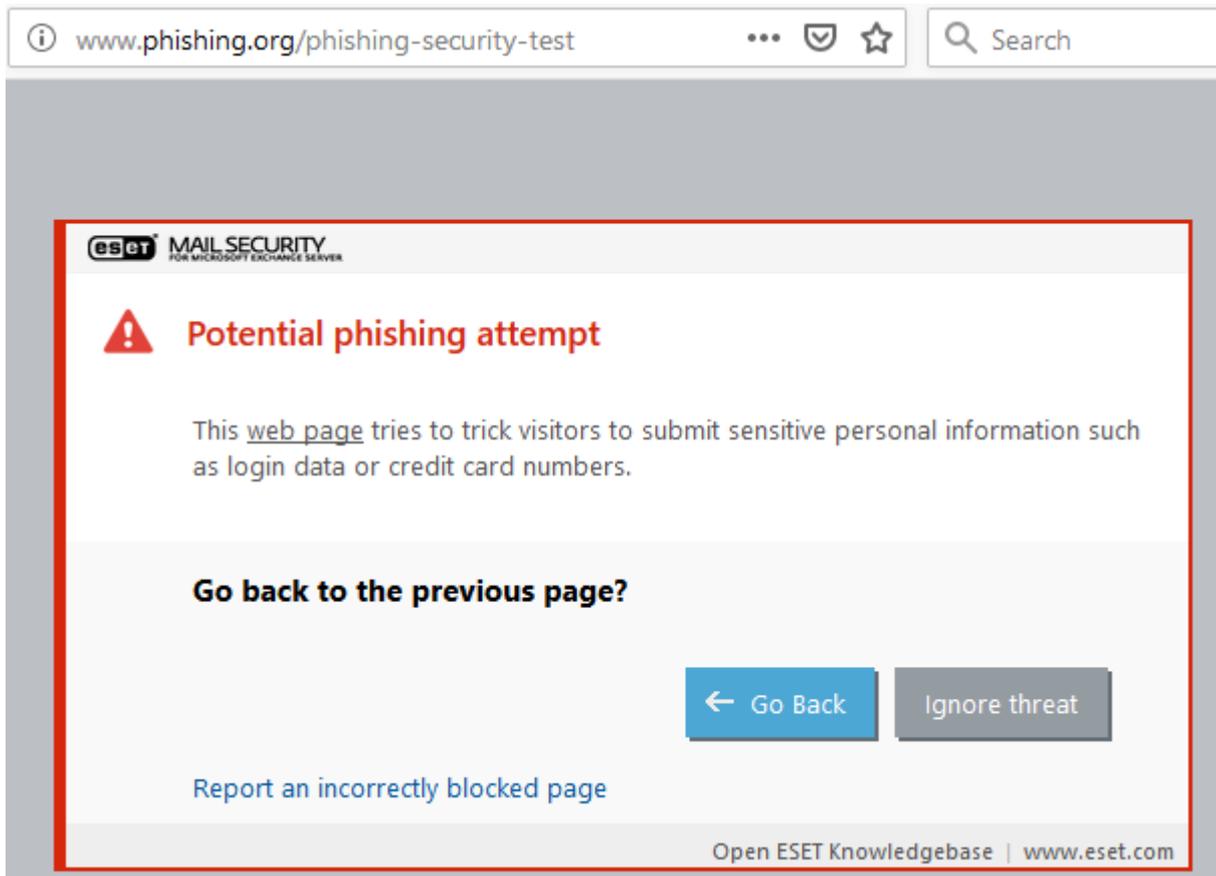
> ℹ️ Potential phishing websites that have been whitelisted will expire after several hours by default. To allow a website permanently, use the URL address management tool.

Report a phishing site

If you run across a suspicious website that appears to be phishing or otherwise malicious, you can report it to ESET for analysis. Before submitting a website to ESET, make sure it meets one or more of the following criteria:

• the website is not detected at all

• the website is incorrectly detected as a threat. In this case, you can Report a false-positive phishing site.

Alternatively, you can submit the website by email. Send your email to samples@eset.com. Remember to use a descriptive subject and enclose as much information about the website as possible (for example, the website that referred you there, how you learned of this website, etc.).

Device control

ESET Mail Security includes automatic device (CD/DVD/USB/) control. This module allows you to scan, block or adjust extended filters/permissions and define a user's ability to access and work with a given device. This may be useful if the computer administrator wants to prevent the use of devices containing undesirable content.

> ℹ️ When you enable device control using **Integrate into system** switch, the Device control feature of ESET Mail Security will be activated. However, a restart your system is required for this change to take effect.

Device control will become active, allowing you to edit their settings. If a device blocked by an existing rule is detected, a notification window will be displayed and access to the device will not be granted.

Rules

A Device control rule defines the action that will be taken when a device meeting the rule criteria is connected to the computer.

Groups

When you click Edit, you can manage Device groups. Create a new Device group or select an existing one to add or remove devices from the list.

> i   You can view device control log entries in Log files.

Device rules

Specific devices can be allowed or blocked by user, user group, or any of several additional parameters that can be specified in the rule configuration. The list of rules contains several descriptions of a rule such as its name, the type of external device, the action to perform when a device is detected, and log severity.

You can **Add** a new rule or modify settings of an existing one. Enter a description of the rule into the **Name** field for better identification. Click the switch next to **Rule enabled** to disable or enable this rule; this can be useful if you do not want to delete the rule permanently.

Apply during

You can limit rules using Time slots. Create the time slot first, it will then appear in the drop-down menu.

Device type

Choose the external device type from the drop-down menu (Disk storage/Portable device/Bluetooth/FireWire/...). The types of devices are inherited from the operating system and can be seen in the system Device manager assuming the device is connected to the computer. Storage devices include external disks or conventional memory card readers connected via USB or FireWire. Smart card readers include all readers of smart cards with an embedded integrated circuit, such as SIM cards or authentication cards. Examples of imaging devices are scanners or cameras, these devices do not provide information about users, only about their actions. This means that imaging devices can only be blocked globally.

Action

Access to non-storage devices can either be allowed or blocked. In contrast, rules for storage devices allow you to select one of the following rights settings:

- **Read/Write** – Full access to the device will be allowed.

- **Block** – Access to the device will be blocked.

- **Read Only** – Only read access to the device will be allowed.

- **Warn** – Each time that a device is connected, the user will be notified if it is allowed/blocked, and a log entry will be made. Devices are not remembered, a notification will still be displayed upon subsequent connections of the same device.

> **i** Not all rights (actions) are available for all device types. If a device has storage space, all four actions are made available. For non-storage devices, there are only two (for example, **Read Only** is not available for Bluetooth, so Bluetooth devices can only be allowed or blocked).

Criteria type

Additional parameters below can be used to fine-tune rules and tailor them to devices. All parameters are case-sensitive and support wildcards (*, ?):

- **Vendor** – Filter by vendor name or ID.

- **Model** – The given name of the device.

- **Serial** – External devices usually have their own serial numbers. In the case of a CD/DVD, this is the serial number of the given media, not the CD drive.

> **i** If these parameters are undefined, the rule will ignore these fields while matching. Filtering parameters in all text fields are case-sensitive and support wildcards (a question mark (?) represents a single character, whereas an asterisk (*) represents a string of zero or more characters).

To figure out the parameters of a device, create a rule to allow that type of device, connect the device to your computer and then review the device details in the Device control log.

Choose the **Logging severity** from the drop-down list:

- **Always** – Logs all events.

- **Diagnostic** – Logs information needed to fine-tune the program.

- **Information** – Records informative messages, including successful update messages, plus all records above.

- **Warning** – Records critical errors and warning messages.

- **None** – No logs will be recorded.

Rules can be limited to certain users or user groups by adding them to the User list. Click **Edit** to manage the **User list**.

- **Add** – Opens the Object types: Users or Groups dialog window that allows you to select desired users.

- **Delete** – Deletes the selected user from the filter.

> **i** All devices can be filtered by user rules (for example imaging devices do not provide information about users, only about invoked actions).

The following functions are available:

Edit

Lets you modify the name of a selected rule or parameters for the devices contained therein (vendor, model, serial number).

Copy

Creates a new rule based on the parameters of the selected rule.

Delete

If you want to delete the selected rule. Alternatively, you can use the check box next to a given rule to disable it. This can be useful if you do not want to delete a rule permanently so that you can use it in the future.

Populate

Provides an overview of all currently connected devices with the following information: device type, device vendor, model and serial number (if available). When you select a device (from the list of Detected devices) and click **OK**, a rule editor window appears with pre-defined information (you can adjust all the settings).

Rules are listed in order of priority with higher-priority rules at the top. You can select multiple rules and apply actions, such as deleting or moving them up or down the list by clicking **Top/Up/Down/Bottom** (arrow buttons).

Device groups

The Device groups window is divided into two parts. The right part of the window contains a list of devices that belong to a respective group and the left part of the window contains a list of existing groups. Select the group that contains the devices you want to display in the right pane.

You can create different groups of devices for which different rules will be applied. You can also create a single group of devices that are set to **Read/Write** or **Read-only**. This ensures that unrecognized devices will be blocked by Device control when connected to your computer.

⚠ Having an external device connected to your computer may pose a security risk.

The following functions are available:

Add

Create a new device group by entering its name or add a device to an existing group (optionally, you can specify details such as vendor name, model and serial number) depending on where in the window you clicked the button.

Edit

Lets you modify the name of a selected group or parameters for the devices contained therein (vendor, model, serial number).

Delete

Deletes the selected group or device depending on where in the window you clicked. Alternatively, you can use the check box next to a given rule to disable it. This can be useful if you do not want to delete a rule permanently so that you can use it in the future.

Import

Imports a serial number list of devices from a file. Each device starts at the new line.

Vendor, **Model**, and **Serial** must be present for each device and separated with a comma.

> ✓ Kingston,DT 101 G2,001CCE0DGRFC0371
> 04081-0009432,USB2.0 HD WebCam,20090101

Populate

Provides an overview of all currently connected devices with the following information: device type, device vendor, model and serial number (if available). When you select a device (from the list of Detected devices) and click **OK**, a rule editor window appears with pre-defined information (you can adjust all the settings).

Add device

Click Add in the right window to add a device to an existing group. Additional parameters shown below can be used to fine-tune rules for different devices. All parameters are case-sensitive and support wildcards (*, ?):

- **Vendor**—Filter by vendor name or ID.

- **Model**—The given name of the device.

- **Serial**—External devices usually have their own serial numbers. In the case of a CD/DVD, this is the serial number of the given media, not the CD drive.

- **Description**—Your description of the device for better organization.

> ℹ If these parameters are undefined, the rule will ignore these fields while matching. Filtering parameters in all text fields are case-sensitive and support wildcards (a question mark (?) represents a single character, whereas an asterisk (*) represents a string of zero or more characters).

After creating a device group, you have to add a new device control rule for the created device group and choose the action to take.

When you are done with customization click **OK**. Click **Cancel** to leave the **Device groups** window without saving your changes.

> ℹ Not all rights (Actions) are available for all device types. If a device has storage space, all four actions are made available. For non-storage devices, there are only two (for example, Read-only is not available for Bluetooth, so Bluetooth devices can only be allowed or blocked).

Tools configuration

You can customize advanced settings for the following:

- Time slots

- Microsoft Windows update

- ESET CMD

- ESET RMM

- License

- [WMI Provider](#)

- [ESET management console scan targets](#)

- [Log files](#)

- [Proxy server](#)

- [Presentation mode](#)

- [Diagnostics](#)

- [Cluster](#)

Time slots

Time slots are used within [Device control rules](#), limiting the rules when they are being applied. Create a time slot and select it when adding new or modifying existing rules (**Apply during** parameter). This enables you to define commonly used time slots (work time, weekend, etc.) and reuse them easily without redefining the time ranges for every rule. A time slot should be applicable to any relevant type of rule that supports time-based control.

Microsoft Windows update

Windows updates provide important fixes to potentially dangerous vulnerabilities and improve the general security level of your computer. For this reason, it is vital that you install Microsoft Windows updates as soon as they become available. ESET Mail Security notifies you about missing updates according to the level you specify. The following levels are available:

- **No updates** – No system updates will be offered for download.

- **Optional updates** – Updates marked as low priority and higher will be offered for download.

- **Recommended updates** – Updates marked as common and higher will be offered for download.

- **Important updates** – Updates marked as important and higher will be offered for download.

- **Critical updates** – Only critical updates will be offered for download.

Click **OK** to save changes. The System updates window will be displayed after status verification with the update server. Sytem update information may not be immediately available after saving changes.

Command line scanner

As an alternative to [eShell](#), you can run ESET Mail Security On-demand scanner via command line using `ecls.exe` located in the installation folder.

The following is a list of parameters and switches:

Options:

`/base-dir=FOLDER`	load modules from FOLDER
`/quar-dir=FOLDER`	quarantine FOLDER
`/exclude=MASK`	exclude files matching MASK from scanning
`/subdir`	scan subfolders (default)
`/no-subdir`	do not scan subfolders
`/max-subdir-level=LEVEL`	maximum sub-level of folders within folders to scan
`/symlink`	follow symbolic links (default)
`/no-symlink`	skip symbolic links
`/ads`	scan ADS (default)
`/no-ads`	do not scan ADS
`/log-file=FILE`	log output to FILE
`/log-rewrite`	overwrite output file (default – append)
`/log-console`	log output to console (default)
`/no-log-console`	do not log output to console
`/log-all`	also log clean files
`/no-log-all`	do not log clean files (default)
`/aind`	show activity indicator
`/auto`	scan and automatically clean all local disks

Scanner options:

`/files`	scan files (default)
`/no-files`	do not scan files
`/memory`	scan memory
`/boots`	scan boot sectors
`/no-boots`	do not scan boot sectors (default)
`/arch`	scan archives (default)
`/no-arch`	do not scan archives
`/max-obj-size=SIZE`	only scan files smaller than SIZE megabytes (default 0 = unlimited)
`/max-arch-level=LEVEL`	maximum sub-level of archives within archives (nested archives) to scan
`/scan-timeout=LIMIT`	scan archives for LIMIT seconds at maximum
`/max-arch-size=SIZE`	only scan the files in an archive if they are smaller than SIZE (default 0 = unlimited)
`/max-sfx-size=SIZE`	only scan the files in a self-extracting archive if they are smaller than SIZE megabytes (default 0 = unlimited)
`/mail`	scan email files (default)
`/no-mail`	do not scan email files
`/mailbox`	scan mailboxes (default)
`/no-mailbox`	do not scan mailboxes
`/sfx`	scan self-extracting archives (default)
`/no-sfx`	do not scan self-extracting archives
`/rtp`	scan runtime packers (default)

`/no-rtp`	do not scan runtime packers
`/unsafe`	scan for potentially unsafe applications
`/no-unsafe`	do not scan for potentially unsafe applications (default)
`/unwanted`	scan for potentially unwanted applications
`/no-unwanted`	do not scan for potentially unwanted applications (default)
`/suspicious`	scan for suspicious applications (default)
`/no-suspicious`	do not scan for suspicious applications
`/pattern`	use signatures (default)
`/no-pattern`	do not use signatures
`/heur`	enable heuristics (default)
`/no-heur`	disable heuristics
`/adv-heur`	enable Advanced heuristics (default)
`/no-adv-heur`	disable Advanced heuristics
`/ext-exclude=EXTENSIONS`	exclude file EXTENSIONS delimited by colon from scanning
`/clean-mode=MODE`	use cleaning MODE for infected objects The following options are available: • none (default) – No automatic cleaning will occur. • standard – ecls.exe will attempt to automatically clean or delete infected files. • strict – ecls.exe will attempt to automatically clean or delete infected files without user intervention (you will not be prompted before files are deleted). • rigorous – ecls.exe will delete files without attempting to clean regardless of what the file is. • delete – ecls.exe will delete files without attempting to clean, but will refrain from deleting sensitive files such as Windows system files.
`/quarantine`	copy infected files (if cleaned) to Quarantine (supplements the action carried out while cleaning)
`/no-quarantine`	do not copy infected files to Quarantine

General options:

`/help`	show help and quit
`/version`	show version information and quit
`/preserve-time`	preserve last access timestamp

Exit codes:

`0`	no threat found
`1`	threat found and cleaned
`10`	some files could not be scanned (may be threats)
`50`	threat found
`100`	error (exit codes greater than 100 mean the file was not scanned and cannot be considered clean)

ESET CMD

This is a feature that enables advanced ecmd commands. It allows you to export and import settings using the command line (ecmd.exe). Until now, it was only possible to export settings using the GUI. ESET Mail Security configuration can be exported to an *.xml* file.

When you have enabled ESET CMD, there are two authorization methods available:

- **None** – No authorization. We do not recommend this method because it allows importation of any unsigned configuration, which is a potential risk.

- **Advanced setup password** – A password is required to import a configuration from an .xml file, this file must be signed (see singing .xml configuration file further down). The password specified in Access Setup must be provided before a new configuration can be imported. If you do not have access setup enabled, your password does not match or the .xml configuration file is not signed, the configuration will not be imported.

Once ESET CMD is enabled, you can use the command line to import or export ESET Mail Security configurations. You can do it manually or create a script for the purpose of automation.

> ⚠️ To use advanced ecmd commands, you need to run them with administrator privileges, or open a Windows Command Prompt (cmd) using **Run as administrator**. Otherwise, you will get **Error executing command** message. Also, when exporting a configuration, the destination folder must exist. The export command still works when the ESET CMD setting is switched off.

> ✔️ Export settings command:
> `ecmd /getcfg c:\config\settings.xml`
>
> Import settings command:
> `ecmd /setcfg c:\config\settings.xml`

> ℹ️ Advanced ecmd commands can only be run locally. Executing the client task **Run command** using ESET PROTECT will not work.

Signing an *.xml* configuration file:

1. Download XmlSignTool executable.

2. Open a Windows Command Prompt (cmd) using **Run as administrator**.

3. Navigate to the location of `xmlsigntool.exe`

4. Execute a command to sign the *.xml* configuration file, usage: `xmlsigntool /version 1|2 <xml_file_path>`

> ⚠️ Value of the parameter `/version` depends on the version of your ESET Mail Security. Use `/version 2` for ESET Mail Security 7 and newer.

5. Enter and Re-enter your Advanced Setup Password when prompted by the XmlSignTool. Your *.xml* configuration file is now signed and can be used to import on another instance of ESET Mail Security with ESET CMD using the password authorization method.

Sign exported configuration file command: `xmlsigntool /version 2 c:\config\settings.xml`
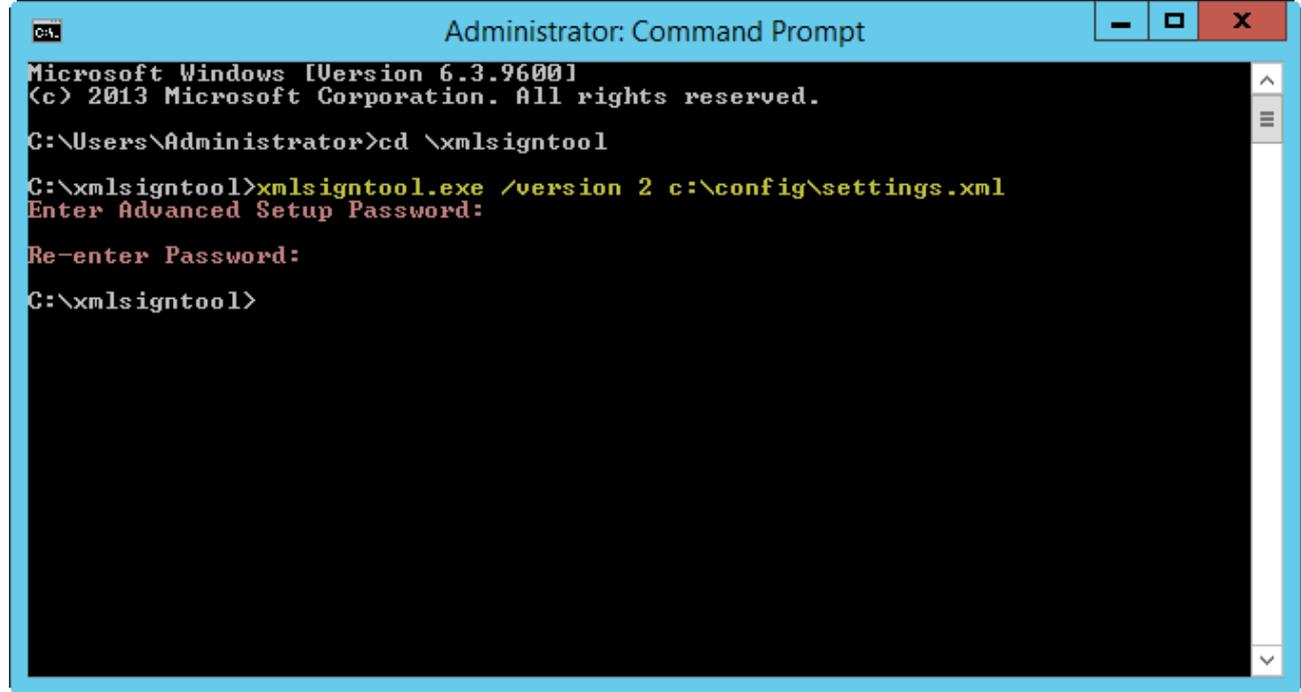
```
Administrator: Command Prompt                              _  □  X

Microsoft Windows [Version 6.3.9600]
(c) 2013 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Users\Administrator>cd \xmlsigntool

C:\xmlsigntool>xmlsigntool.exe /version 2 c:\config\settings.xml
Enter Advanced Setup Password:

Re-enter Password:

C:\xmlsigntool>
```

> ℹ️ If your Access Setup password changes and you want to import a configuration that was signed earlier with an old password, you can sign the *.xml* configuration file again using your current password. This allows you to use an older configuration file without exporting it to another machine running ESET Mail Security before the import.

ESET RMM

Remote monitoring and management (RMM) is the process of supervising and controlling software systems (such as those on desktops, servers and mobile devices) by means of a locally installed agent that can be accessed by a management service provider.

Enable RMM

Enables Remote monitoring and management command are functional. You must have administrator privileges to use RMM utility.

Working mode

Select the working mode of RMM from the drop-down menu:

- **Safe separation only** – If you want to enable RMM interface for safe and read-only operations

- **All operations** – If you want to enable RMM interface for all operations

Authorization method

Set the RMM authorization method from the drop-down menu:

- **None** – No application path check will be performed, you can run ermm.exe from any application

- **Application path** – Specify application which is allowed to run ermm.exe

229

Default ESET Mail Security installation contains file *ermm.exe* located in ESET Mail Security (default path *c:\Program Files\ESET\ESET Mail Security*). *ermm.exe* exchange data with RMM Plugin, which communicates with RMM Agent, linked to a RMM Server.

- *ermm.exe* – Command line utility developed by ESET that allows managing of Endpoint products and communication with any RMM Plugin.

- RMM Plugin – A third party application running locally on Endpoint Windows system. The plugin was designed to communicate with specific RMM Agent (e.g. Kaseya only) and with *ermm.exe*.

- RMM Agent – A third party application (e.g. from Kaseya) running locally on Endpoint Windows system. Agent communicates with RMM Plugin and with RMM Server.

- RMM Server – Running as a service on a third party server. Supported RMM systems are by Kaseya, Labtech, Autotask, Max Focus and Solarwinds N-able.

Visit our [Knowledgebase article](#) for more information on ESET RMM in ESET Mail Security.

ESET Direct Endpoint Management plugins for third-party RMM solutions

RMM Server is running as a service on a third-party server. For more information see the following ESET Direct Endpoint Management online user guides:

- [ESET Direct Endpoint Management Plug-in for ConnectWise Automate](#)

- [ESET Direct Endpoint Management Plugin for DattoRMM](#)

- [ESET Direct Endpoint Management for Solarwinds N-Central](#)

- [ESET Direct Endpoint Management for NinjaRMM](#)

License

ESET Mail Security connects to the ESET License server a few times per hour to preform checks. The **Interval check** parameter is set to **Automatic** by default. If you want to decrease network traffic caused by licensing checks, change the Interval check to **Limited** and the licensing check will be done only once a day (also after server restart).

With the Interval check set to **Limited**, all license-related changes done to your ESET Mail Security via ESET Business Account and ESET MSP Administrator may take up to one day to apply.

WMI Provider

Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) is the Microsoft implementation of Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM), which is an industry initiative to develop a standard technology for accessing management information in an enterprise environment.

For more information on WMI, see
http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa384642(v=vs.85).aspx

ESET WMI Provider

The purpose of the ESET WMI Provider is to allow for the remote monitoring of ESET products in an enterprise environment without requiring any ESET-specific software or tools. By exposing the basic product, status and statistics information via WMI, we greatly expand the possibilities of enterprise administrators when monitoring the ESET products.

Administrators can take advantage of the number of access methods offered by WMI (command line, scripts and third-party enterprise monitoring tools) to monitor the state of their ESET products.

The current implementation provides read-only access to basic product information, installed features and their protection status, statistics of individual scanners, and product log files.

The WMI Provider allows for the use of standard Windows WMI infrastructure and tools to read the state of the product and product logs.

Provided data

All the WMI classes related to ESET product are located in the "root\ESET" namespace. The following classes, which are described in more detail below, are currently implemented:

General

- ESET_Product

- ESET_Features

- ESET_Statistics

Logs

- ESET_ThreatLog

- ESET_EventLog

- ESET_ODFileScanLogs

- ESET_ODFileScanLogRecords

- ESET_ODServerScanLogs

- ESET_ODServerScanLogRecords

- ESET_HIPSLog

- ESET_URLLog

- ESET_DevCtrlLog

- ESET_GreylistLog

- ESET_MailServeg

- ESET_HyperVScanLogs

- ESET_HyperVScanLogRecords

ESET_Product class

There can only be one instance of the ESET_Product class. Properties of this class refer to basic information about your installed ESET product:

- ID – Product type identifier, for example, "emsl"

- Name - Name of the product, for example, "ESET Mail Security"

- FullName - Full name of the product, for example, "ESET Mail Security for IBM Domino"

- Version - Product version, for example, "6.5.14003.0"

- VirusDBVersion - Version of the virus database, for example, "14533 (20161201)"

- VirusDBLastUpdate - Timestamp of the last update of the virus database. The string contains the timestamp in WMI datetime format. for example, "20161201095245.000000+060"

- LicenseExpiration - License expiration time. The string contains timestamp in WMI datetime format

- KernelRunning - Boolean value indicating whether the ekrn service is running on the machine, for example, "TRUE"

- StatusCode - Number indicating the protection status of the product: 0 - Green (OK), 1 - Yellow (Warning), 2 - Red (Error)

- StatusText - Message describing the reason for a non-zero status code, otherwise it is null

ESET_Features class

The ESET_Features class has multiple instances, depending on the number of product features. Each instance contains:

- Name - Name of the feature (list of names is provided below)

- Status - Status of the feature: 0 - inactive, 1 - disabled, 2 - enabled

A list of strings representing currently recognized product features:

- CLIENT_FILE_AV - Real-time file system anti-virus protection

- CLIENT_WEB_AV - Client web anti-virus protection

- CLIENT_DOC_AV - Client document anti-virus protection

- CLIENT_NET_FW - Client personal firewall

- CLIENT_EMAIL_AV - Client email anti-virus protection

- CLIENT_EMAIL_AS - Client email anti-spam protection

- SERVER_FILE_AV - Real-time anti-virus protection of files on the protected file server product, for example,

files in SharePoint's content database in the case of ESET Mail Security

- SERVER_EMAIL_AV - Anti-virus protection of emails of protected server product, for example, emails in Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino

- SERVER_EMAIL_AS - Anti-spam protection of emails of protected server product, for example, emails in Microsoft Exchange or IBM Domino

- SERVER_GATEWAY_AV - Anti-virus protection of protected network protocols on the gateway

- SERVER_GATEWAY_AS - Anti-spam protection of protected network protocols on the gateway

ESET_Statistics class

The ESET_Statistics class has multiple instances, depending on the number of scanners in the product. Each instance contains:

- Scanner - String code for the specific scanner, for example, "CLIENT_FILE"

- Total - Total number of files scanned

- Infected - Number of infected files found

- Cleaned - Number of cleaned files

- Timestamp - Timestamp of the last change of this statistics. In WMI datetime format, for example, "20130118115511.000000+060"

- ResetTime - Timestamp of when the statistics counter was last reset. In WMI datetime format, for example, "20130118115511.000000+060"

List of strings representing currently recognized scanners:

- CLIENT_FILE

- CLIENT_EMAIL

- CLIENT_WEB

- SERVER_FILE

- SERVER_EMAIL

- SERVER_WEB

ESET_ThreatLog class

The ESET_ThreatLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Detected threats" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - severity of the log record expressed as a number in the [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Scanner - Name of the scanner that created this log event

- ObjectType - Type of object that produced this log event

- ObjectName - Name of the object that produced this log event

- Threat - Name of the threat that has been found in the object described by ObjectName and ObjectType properties

- Action - Action performed after the threat was identified

- User - User account that caused this log event to be generated

- Information - Additional description of the event

- Hash - Hash of the object that produced this log event

ESET_EventLog

The ESET_EventLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Events" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number in the [0-8] interval. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Module - Name of the module that created this log event

- Event - Description of the event

- User - User account that caused this log event to be generated

ESET_ODFileScanLogs

The ESET_ODFileScanLogs class has multiple instances, each one representing an on-demand file scan record. This is equivalent to the GUI "On-demand computer scan" list of logs. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- Targets - Target folders/objects of the scan

- TotalScanned - Total number of objects scanned

- Infected - Number of infected objects found

- Cleaned - Number of objects cleaned

- Status - Status of the scan process

ESET_ODFileScanLogRecords

The ESET_ODFileScanLogRecords class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record in one of the scan logs represented by instances of the ESET_ODFileScanLogs class. Instances of this class provide log records of all the on-demand scans/logs. When an instance of a specific scan log is required, it must be filtered only by the LogID property. Each class instance contains:

- LogID - ID of the scan log this record belongs to (ID of one of the instances of the ESET_ODFileScanLogs class)

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Log - The actual log message

ESET_ODServerScanLogs

The ESET_ODServerScanLogs class has multiple instances, each one representing a run of the on-demand server scan. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- Targets - Target folders/objects of the scan

- TotalScanned - Total number of objects scanned

- Infected - Number of infected objects found

- Cleaned - Number of objects cleaned

- RuleHits - Total number of rule hits

- Status - Status of the scan process

ESET_ODServerScanLogRecords

The ESET_ODServerScanLogRecords class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record in one of the scan logs represented by instances of the ESET_ODServerScanLogs class. Instances of this class provide log records of all the on-demand scans/logs. When an instance of a specific scan log is required, it must be filtered only by the LogID property. Each class instance contains:

- LogID - ID of the scan log this record belongs to (ID of one of the instances of the ESET_ ODServerScanLogs class)

235

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number in the [0-8] interval. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Log - The actual log message

ESET_SmtpProtectionLog

The ESET_SmtpProtectionLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Smtp protection" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this scan log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- HELODomain - Name of the HELO domain

- IP - Source IP address

- Sender - Email sender

- Recipient - Email recipient

- ProtectionType - Type of protection used

- Action - Action performed

- Reason - Reason for action

- TimeToAccept - Number of minutes after which the email will be accepted

ESET_HIPSLog

The ESET_HIPSLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "HIPS" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number in the [0-8] interval. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Application - Source application

- Target - Type of operation

- Action - Action taken by HIPS, e.g. allow, deny, etc.

- Rule - Name of the rule responsible for the action

- AdditionalInfo

ESET_URLLog

The ESET_URLLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Filtered websites" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- URL - The URL

- Status - What happened to URL, e.g. "Blocked by Web control"

- Application - Application that tried to access the URL

- User - User account the application was running under

ESET_DevCtrlLog

The ESET_DevCtrlLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Device control" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Device - Device name

- User - User account name

- UserSID - User account SID

- Group - User group name

- GroupSID - User group SID

- Status - What happened to the device, e.g. "Writing blocked"

- DeviceDetails - Additional info regarding the device

- EventDetails - Additional info regarding the event

ESET_MailServerLog

The ESET_MailServerLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Mail server" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- IPAddr - Source IP address

- HELODomain - Name of the HELO domain

- Sender - Email sender

- Recipient - Email recipient

- Subject - Email subject

- ProtectionType - Protection type that has performed the action described by the current log record, i.e. malware, antispam or rules.

- Action - Action performed

- Reason - The reason why was the action performed on the object by the given ProtectionType.

ESET_HyperVScanLogs

The ESET_HyperVScanLogs class has multiple instances, each one representing a run of the Hyper-V file scan. This is equivalent to the GUI "Hyper-V scan" list of logs. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- Targets - Target machines/disks/volumes of the scan

- TotalScanned - Total number of objects scanned

- Infected - Number of infected objects found

- Cleaned - Number of objects cleaned

- Status - Status of the scan process

ESET_HyperVScanLogRecords

The ESET_HyperVScanLogRecords class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record in one of the scan logs represented by instances of the ESET_HyperVScanLogs class. Instances of this class provide log records of all the Hyper-V scans/logs. When an instance of a specific scan log is required, it must be filtered only by the LogID property. Each class instance contains:

- LogID - ID of the scan log this record belongs to (ID of one of the instances of the ESET_HyperVScanLogs class)

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Log - The actual log message

ESET_NetworkProtectionLog

The ESET_NetworkProtectionLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Network protection" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Event - Event triggering network protection action

- Action - Action performed by network protection

- Source - Source address of network device

- Target - Destination address of network device

- Protocol - Network communication protocol

- RuleOrWormName - Rule or worm name related to the event

- Application - Application that initiated the network communication

- User - User account that caused this log event to be generated

ESET_SentFilesLog

The ESET_SentFilesLog class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record from the "Sent files" log. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this log record

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log record (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Sha1 - Sha-1 hash of sent file

- File - Sent File

- Size - Sent file size

- Category - Sent file category

- Reason - Reason of sending the file

- SentTo - ESET department the file was sent to

- User - User account that caused this log event to be generated

ESET_OneDriveScanLogs

The ESET_OneDriveScanLogs class has multiple instances, each one representing a run of the OneDrive scan. This is equivalent to the GUI "OneDrive scan" list of logs. Each instance contains:

- ID - Unique ID of this OneDrive log

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- Targets - Target folders/objects of the scan

- TotalScanned - Total number of objects scanned

- Infected - Number of infected objects found

- Cleaned - Number of objects cleaned

- Status - Status of the scan process

ESET_OneDriveScanLogRecords

The ESET_OneDriveScanLogRecords class has multiple instances, each one representing a log record in one of the scan logs represented by instances of the ESET_OneDriveScanLogs class. Instances of this class provide log records of all the OneDrive scans/logs. When an instance of a specific scan log is required, it must be filtered only by the LogID property. Each instance contains:

- LogID - ID of the scan log this record belongs to (ID of one of the instances of the ESET_OneDriveScanLogs class)

- ID - Unique ID of this OneDrive log

- Timestamp - Creation timestamp of the log (in the WMI date/time format)

- LogLevel - Severity of the log record expressed as a number [0-8]. Values correspond to the following

named levels: Debug, Info-Footnote, Info, Info-Important, Warning, Error, SecurityWarning, Error-Critical, SecurityWarning-Critical

- Log - The actual log message

Accessing Provided Data

Here are a few examples of how to access ESET WMI data from Windows command line and PowerShell, which should work from any current Windows operating system. There are, however, many other ways of accessing the data from other scripting languages and tools.

Command line without scripts

The `wmic` command line tool can be used to access various pre-defined or any custom WMI classes.

To display complete info about product on the local machine:

```
wmic /namespace:\\root\ESET Path ESET_Product
```

To display product version number only of the product on the local machine:

```
wmic /namespace:\\root\ESET Path ESET_Product Get Version
```

To display complete info about product on a remote machine with IP 10.1.118.180:

```
wmic /namespace:\\root\ESET /node:10.1.118.180 /user:Administrator Path ESET_Product
```

PowerShell

Get and display complete info about product on the local machine:

```
Get-WmiObject ESET_Product -namespace 'root\ESET'
```

Get and display complete info about product on a remote machine with IP 10.1.118.180:

```
$cred = Get-
Credential # promts the user for credentials and stores it in the variable
Get-WmiObject ESET_Product -namespace 'root\ESET' -computername '10.1.118.180' -
cred $cred
```

ESET Management console scan targets

This functionality lets ESET PROTECT use scan target (On-demand mailbox database scan and Hyper-V scan) when running the Server Scan client task on a server with ESET Mail Security. ESET PROTECT scan targets setting is available only if you have ESET Management Agent installed, otherwise it will be grayed out.

When you enable **Generate target list** ESET Mail Security creates a list of available scan targets. This list is generated periodically, according to your **Update period**.

> **i** When **Generate target list** is enabled for the first time, it takes ESET PROTECT about half of the specified **Update period** to pick it up. So if **Update period** is set to 60 minutes, it will take ESET PROTECT about 30 minutes to receive the list of scan targets. If you need ESET PROTECT to collect the list earlier, set the update period to a smaller value. You can always increase it later.

When ESET PROTECT runs a **Server Scan** client task, it will collect the list and you will be asked to select scan targets for Hyper-V scan on that specific server.

Override mode

If you have ESET PROTECT policy applied to ESET Mail Security, you will see a lock icon [🔒] instead of enable/disable switch on Setup page and a lock icon next to the switch in **Advanced setup** window.
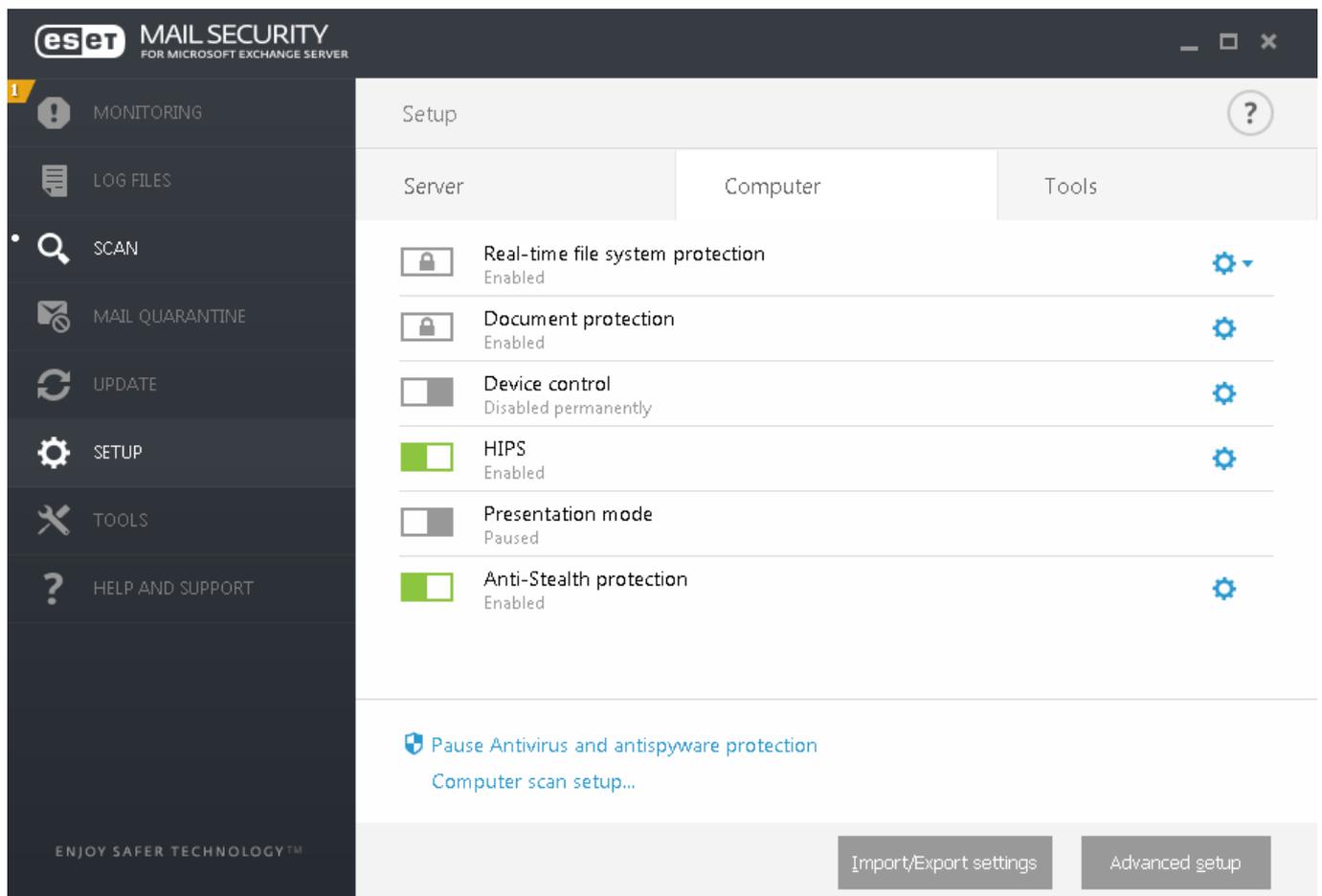
Normally, settings that are configured via ESET PROTECT policy cannot be modified. Override mode allows you to temporarily unlock these settings. However, you need to enable **Override mode** using ESET PROTECT policy.

Log into ESET PROTECT Web Console, navigate to **Policies**, select and edit existing policy that is applied to ESET Mail Security or create a new one. In **Settings**, click **Override Mode**, enable it and configure the rest of its settings including Authentication type (Active directory user or Password).

After the policy is modified, or new policy is applied to ESET Mail Security, Override policy button will appear in **Advanced setup** window.
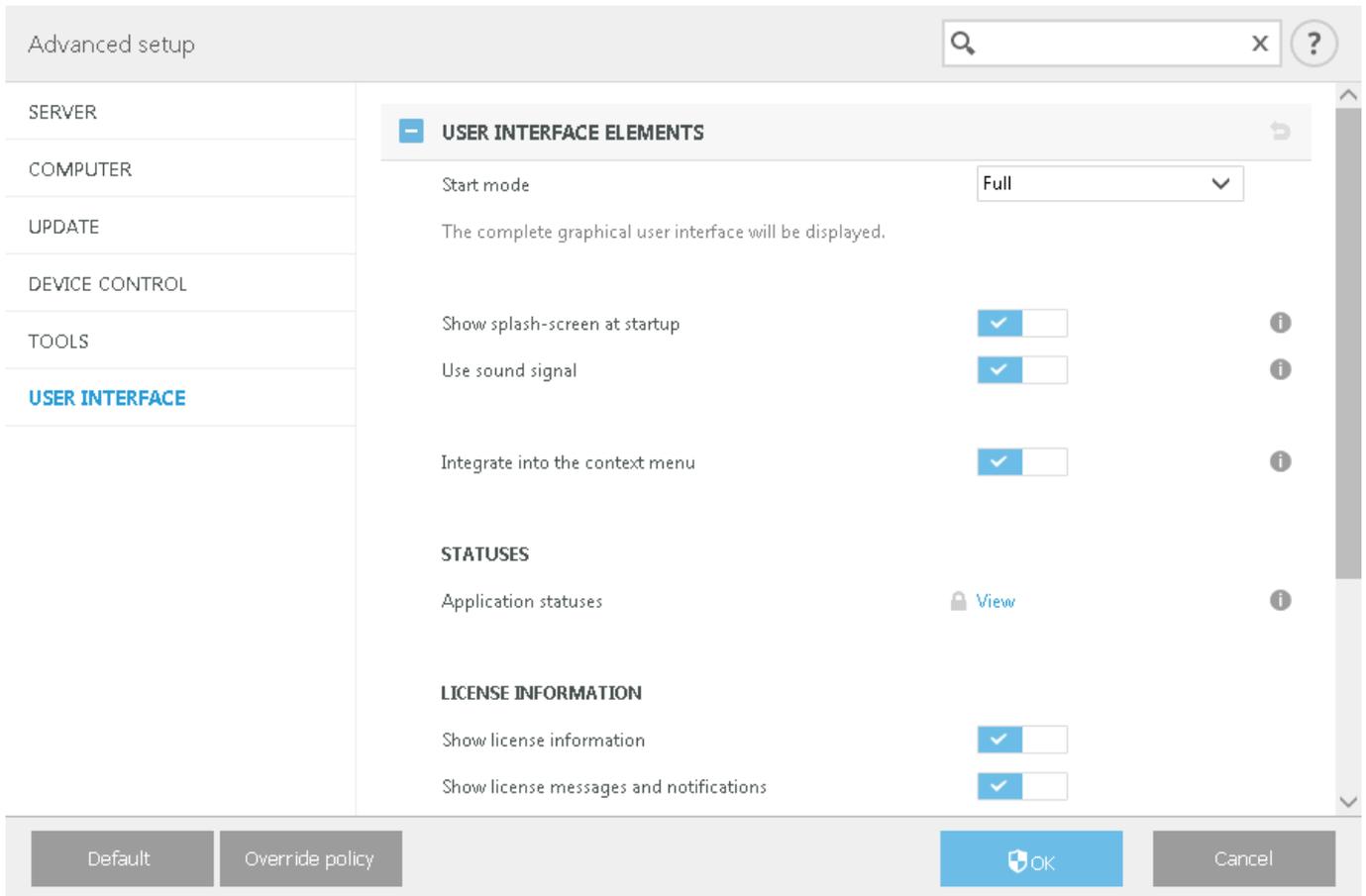
Click **Override policy** button, set the duration and click **Apply**.
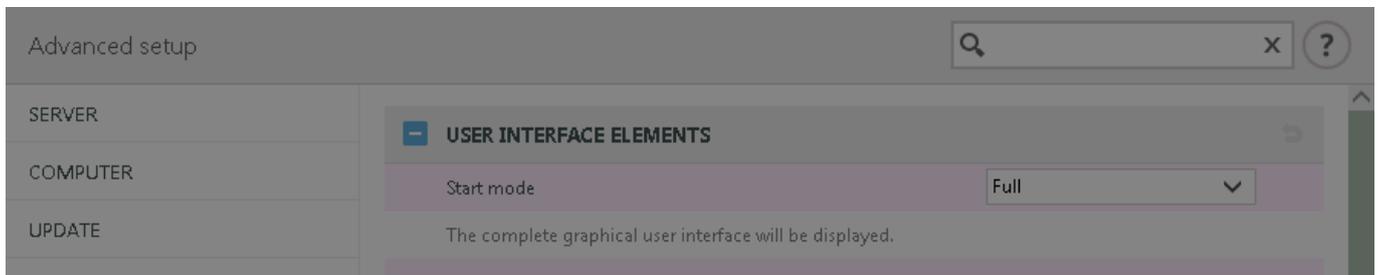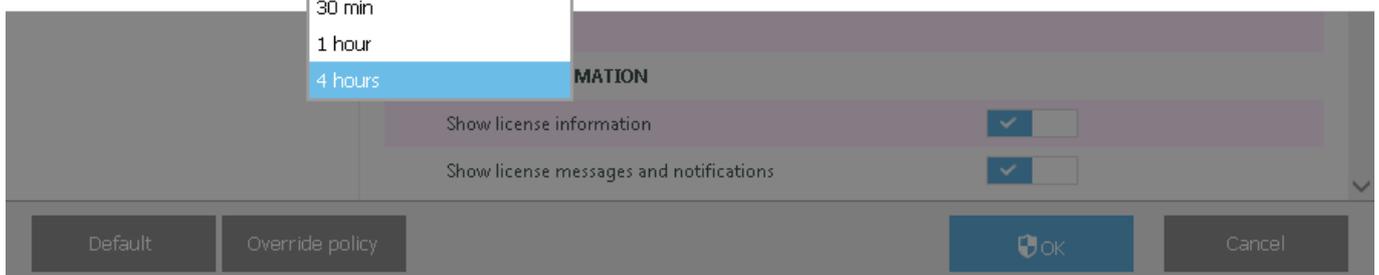
If you selected **Password** as Authentication type, enter the policy override password.
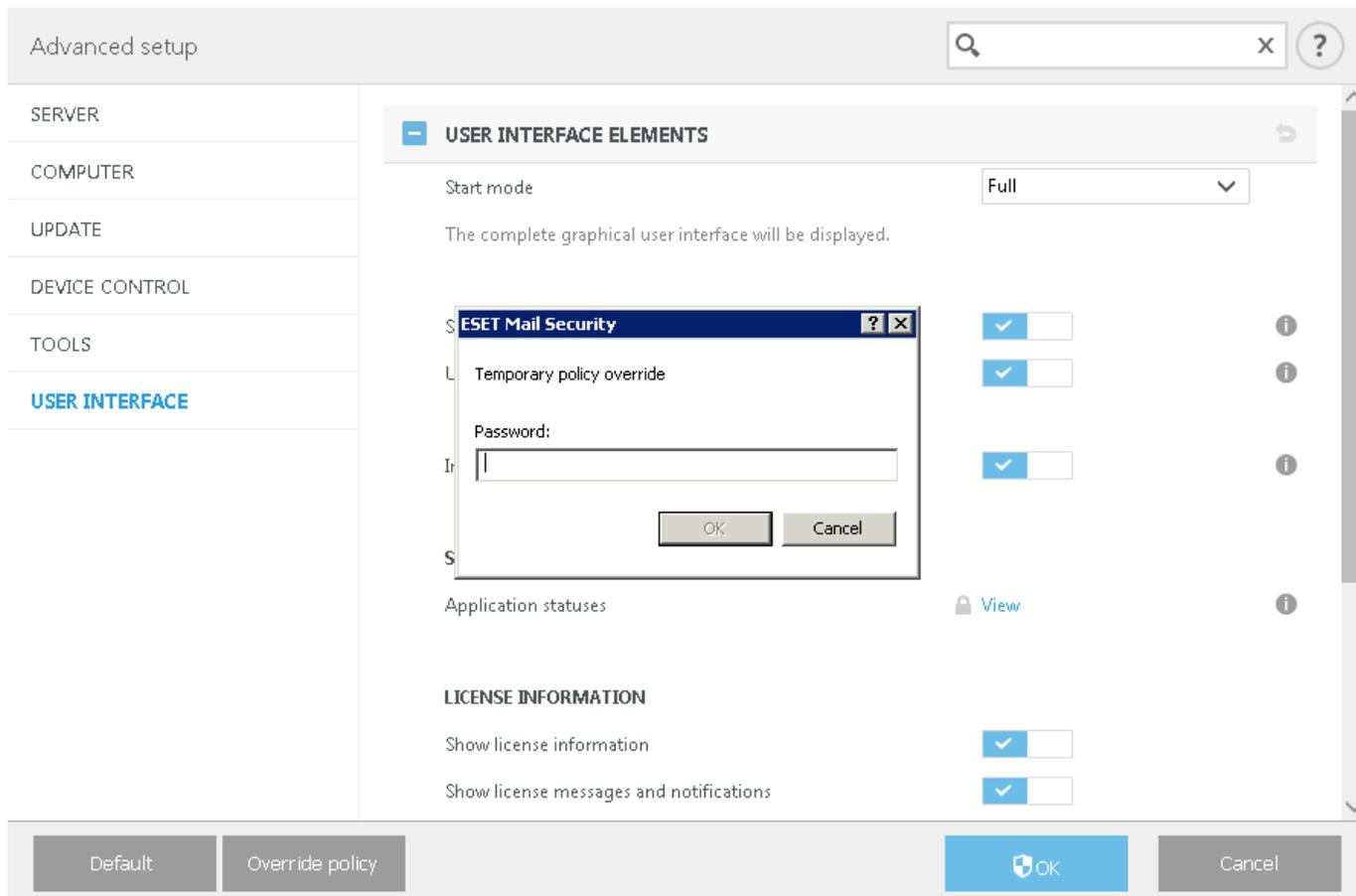
After the Override mode expires, any configuration changes you have made will revert back to original ESET PROTECT policy settings. You will see a notification before the Override expires.

You can **End override** mode anytime before it expires on Monitoring page or in Advanced setup window.

Log files

This section lets you modify configuration of ESET Mail Security logging.

∧ Log records

Records are written to the Events log (*C:\ProgramData\ESET\ESET Security\Logs*) and can be viewed in Log files viewer. Use the switches to enable or disable specific feature:
Log mail transport errors
If this option is enabled and should there be problems on the mail transport layer, error messages are written into Events log.
Log mail transport exceptions
If there are any exceptions on the mail transport layer, details about it are written into Events log.

∧ Logging filter

Produces a significant amount of data because all the logging options are enabled by default. We recommend that you selectively disable logging of the components which are not useful or related to the problem.

> ℹ️ To start the actual logging you need to turn on general **Diagnostic logging** on product level in main menu **Setup** > Tools. After the logging itself is turned on, ESET Mail Security will collect detailed logs according to what features are enabled in this section.

Use the switches to enable or disable specific feature. This options also be combined depending on the availability of individual components in the ESET Mail Security.

• **Mail transport diagnostic logging**

> ⚠️ When resolving issues with Database scan that is run in a normal operation, we recommend that you disable the **Mail transport diagnostic logging**. Otherwise, this could clog up the resulting log and make it difficult to analyze.

• **On-demand database scan diagnostic logging** - Writes detailed information into logs, especially when troubleshooting is necessary.

• **Cluster diagnostic logging** - Cluster logging will be included in general diagnostic logging.

• **OneDrive diagnostic logging** - OneDrive logging will be included in general diagnostic logging.

• **Antispam engine diagnostic logging** - When you need to troubleshoot, you will see detailed antispam engine information in the logs. Writes detailed information about the Antispam engine into the log file for diagnostic purposes. The Antispam engine does not use the Events log (warnlog.dat file) and therefore cannot be viewed in the Log files viewer. It writes records directly into a dedicated text file (for example C:\ProgramData\ESET\ESET Mail Security\Logs\antispam.0.log) so that all Antispam engine diagnostic data is kept in one place. This way, performance of ESET Mail Security is not compromised in a case of a huge email traffic.

Log files

Define how the logs will be managed. This is important mostly to prevent the disk being used up. Default settings allow for automatic deletion of older logs to save disk space.

Delete records automatically

Log entries older than the specified number of days (below) will get deleted.

Delete records older than (days)

Specify the number of days.

Automatically delete old records if log size exceeded

When log size exceeds **Max log size [MB]**, old log records will be deleted until **Reduced log size [MB]** is reached.

Back up automatically deleted records

Automatically deleted log records and files will be backed up to the specified directory and optionally compressed as ZIP files.

Back up diagnostic logs

Will back up automatically deleted diagnostic logs. If not enabled, diagnostic log records are not backed up.

Backup folder

Folder where log backups will be stored. You can enable compressed log backups using ZIP.

Optimize log files automatically

When engaged, log files will automatically be defragmented if the fragmentation percentage is higher than value specified in the **If the number of unused records exceeds (%)** field. Click **Optimize** to begin defragmenting the log files. All empty log entries are removed to improve performance and log processing speed. This improvement can be observed especially if the logs contain a large number of entries.

Enable text protocol

To enable the storage of logs in another file format separate from Log files:

• **Target directory** - The directory where log files will be stored (only applies to **Text/CSV**). Each log section has its own file with a pre-defined filename (for example, *virlog.txt* for Detected threats section of Log files, if you use plain text file format to store logs).

• **Type** - If you select the **Text** file format, logs will be stored in a text file; data will be separated by tabs. The same applies to comma-separated **CSV** file format. If you choose **Event**, logs will be stored in the Windows Event log (can be viewed using Event Viewer in Control panel) as opposed to file.

• **Delete all log files** - Erases all stored logs currently selected in the **Type** drop-down menu.

> **i** To help resolve issues more quickly, ESET Technical Support may ask you to provide logs from your computer. ESET Log Collector makes it easy for you to collect the information needed. For more information about ESET Log Collector, see our Knowledgebase article.

Audit Log

Tracks changes in configuration or protection. Since the modification of the product configuration may dramatically affect how the product operates, you might want to track the changes for auditing purposes. You will see log records of changes in **Log files** > Audit log section.

⌃ Log export

Export to Windows Applications and Services Logs

Allows you to duplicate records from the <u>Mail server protection log</u> to the Applications and Services Logs. To view the Mail server protection log, open Windows **Event Viewer** and navigate to **Applications and Services Logs** > **ESET** > **Security** > **ExchangeServer** > **MailProtection**. The Application and Services logs are supported on Microsoft Windows Server 2012 or newer.

Export to syslog server

You can have Mail server protection logs duplicated to the Syslog server in Common Event Format (CEF). CEF is a standardized extensible, text-based format, that can be used to facilitate data collection and aggregation for later analysis by an enterprise management system. In this case, you can use it with Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) and log management solutions such as Micro Focus ArcSight. See <u>Syslog event mapping</u> for details on exported event fields and description.

Server address

Enter IP address or server host name. In case of ArcSight, specify server with SmartConnector installed.

Protocol

Select the protocol that will be used, either TCP or UDP protocol.

Port

The default value is 514 for both protocols.

Export to file

Allows for the logs to be exported locally to a file in CEF format. Logging storage capacity is limited, therefore a circular logging is used. Records are written sequentially into the files (from `mailserver.0.log` to `mailserver.9.log`). The latest records are stored in `mailserver.0.log`, once it reaches its size limit, the oldest file `mailserver.9.log` is deleted and the rest of the log files are renamed in sequence (`mailserver.0.log` is renamed to `mailserver.1.log` and so on).

File path

Default path is C:\ProgramData\ESET\ESET Security\Logs. You can change the location if required.

Syslog event mapping

The following tables show ESET Mail Security event mapping to ArcSight data fields. You can use these tables as a reference of what is being fed to ArcSight via SmartConnector.

Header		
Device Vendor	"ESET"	
Device Product	"EMSX"	"EMSX" or "ESET Mail Security for MS Exchange Server"
Device Version	e.g. "7.1.10005.0"	
Device Event Class ID	e.g. "101"	Device Event Category unique identifier: 100-199 malware 200-299 phish 300-399 spam 400-499 policy
Event Name	e.g. "MailScanResult: malware"	A brief description of what happened in the event: MailScanResult: malware MailScanResult: phishing link MailScanResult: spam MailScanResult: policy

CEF Key Name	CEF Key Full Name (Size)	Field Description	Detailed Field Description
rt	deviceReceiptTime	Time event was generated	The time at which the event was generated, in milliseconds since Jan 1st 1970

CEF Key Name	CEF Key Full Name (Size)	Field Description	Detailed Field Description
src	sourceAddress	Sender's IP	IP address of the sending mail server
shost	sourceHostName (1023)	Sender's HELO domain	HELO domain of the sending mail server
flexString1	flexString1	Message-ID	Message-ID header from the email
dhost	destinationHostName (1023)	Receiving server	Hostname of the machine that received the communication
msg	message (1023)	Message subject	Subject of the message, from the RFC5233 header "Subject:"
suser	sourceUserName (1023)	SMTP sender	SMTP sender of the email (MAIL FROM)
duser	destinationUserName (1023)	SMTP recipient(s)	SMTP recipient(s) of the email (RCPT TO)
act	deviceAction (63)	Action taken	Action taken (cleaned, quarantined, etc.)
cat	deviceEventCategory (1023)	Detection category	Most significant detection (malware >> phish >> spam >> SPF/DKIM >> policy)
sourceServiceName	sourceServiceName	Type of protection	SMTP Transport agent, On-demand database scan
deviceExternalId	deviceExternalId	Engine version	Anti-Malware engine version, Antispam engine version, e.g. "18620,7730"
cs1	deviceCustomString1	Anti-Malware result	Result of Anti-Malware scan, including threat name
cs1Label	deviceCustomString1Label	"Anti-Malware result"	
cs2	deviceCustomString2	Antispam result	Result of Antispam scan, including reason for marking as spam
cs2Label	deviceCustomString2Label	"Antispam result"	
cs3	deviceCustomString3	Anti-Phishing result	Result of Anti-Phishing scan, including detected URL
cs3Label	deviceCustomString3Label	"Anti-Phishing result"	
cs4	deviceCustomString4	SPF/DKIM/DMARC result	Result of SPF/DKIM/DMARC check, in RFC7601 format
cs4Label	deviceCustomString4Label	"SPF/DKIM/DMARC result"	
cs5	deviceCustomString5	"From:" sender	Sender address from RFC5322 header "From:"
cs5Label	deviceCustomString5Label	"From header"	
cs6	deviceCustomString6	"To:" and "Cc:" recipients	Recipients addresses from RFC5322 headers "To:" and "Cc:"
cs6Label	deviceCustomString6Label	"To and Cc headers"	
fname	filename (1023)	Attachment name	Name of the first detected attachment
fileHash	fileHash (255)	Attachment hash	Hash of the first detected attachment

CEF Key Name	CEF Key Full Name (Size)	Field Description	Detailed Field Description
fsize	fileSize	Attachment size	Size of the first detected attachment
reason	reason (1023)	Rule/policy activated	Name of the policy triggered by the email or it's content
ESETEMSXFileDetails	ESETEMSXFileDetails	File details	Information about all detected attachments, their names, hashes and sizes

Optional

CEF Key Name	CEF Key Full Name (Size)	Field Description	Detailed Field Description
end	endTime	Time event has ended	The time at which the activity ended, in milliseconds since Jan 1st 1970. Useful only if sand boxing technology is used ESET LiveGuard Advanced.
dtz	deviceTimeZone (255)	Timezone of the server	
request	requestURL	Detected URL	Malign or blacklisted URL extracted from mail body or mail headers. ESET Mail Security does not provide single URL in logs due to the fact that multiple URL's can be detected in email messages by various detection components.

Proxy server

In large LAN networks, the connection of your computer to the internet can be mediated by a proxy server. If this is the case, the following settings need to be defined. If you do not define the settings, the program will not be able to update itself automatically. In ESET Mail Security, proxy server setup is available in two different sections within the **Advanced setup** window (**F5**):

1. **Advanced setup** (F5) > **Update** > **Profiles** > **Updates** > **Connection options** > HTTP Proxy. This setting applies for the given update profile and is recommended for laptops that often receive modules from different locations.

2. **Advanced setup** (F5) > **Tools** > **Proxy server**. Specifying the proxy server at this level defines global proxy server settings for all of ESET Mail Security. Parameters here will be used by all modules that connect to the internet.

To specify proxy server settings for this level, turn on the **Use proxy server** switch and then enter the address of the proxy server into the **Proxy server** field, along with the **Port** number of the proxy server.

Proxy server requires authentication

If network communication via proxy server requires authentication, enable this option and specify **Username** and **Password**.

Detect proxy server

Click **Detect** to automatically detect and populate proxy server settings. The parameters specified in Internet Explorer will be copied.

> **i** This feature does not retrieve authentication data (username and password); you must supply it.

Use direct connection if proxy is not available

If a product is configured to utilize HTTP Proxy and the proxy is unreachable, the product will bypass the proxy and communicate directly with ESET servers.

Presentation mode

Presentation mode is a feature for users that demand uninterrupted usage of their software, do not want to be disturbed by the notification windows, and want to minimize CPU usage. Presentation mode can also be used during presentations that cannot be interrupted by activity of ESET Mail Security. When enabled, all notification windows are disabled and scheduled tasks are not run. System protection still runs in the background but does not require any user interaction.

Enable Presentation mode when running applications in full-screen mode automatically

Presentation mode is activated automatically whenever you run a full-screen application. With Presentation mode engaged, you will not be able to see notifications or a status change of your ESET Mail Security.

Disable Presentation mode automatically after

To define the amount of time in minutes after which Presentation mode will automatically be disabled.

Diagnostics

Diagnostics provides application crash dumps of ESET processes (for example, *ekrn*). If an application crashes, a dump will be generated. This can help developers debug and fix various ESET Mail Security problems.

Click the drop-down menu next to **Dump type** and select one of three available options:

- **Disable** - To disable this feature.

- **Mini** - (default) Records the smallest set of useful information that may help identify why the application crashed unexpectedly. This kind of dump file can be useful when space is limited. However, because of the limited information included, errors that were not directly caused by the thread that was running at the time of the problem may not be discovered by an analysis of this file.

- **Full** - Records all the contents of system memory when the application stops unexpectedly. A complete memory dump may contain data from processes that were running when the memory dump was collected.

Target directory

Directory where the dump during the crash will be generated.

Open diagnostics folder

Click **Open** to open this directory within a new *Windows Explorer* window.

Create diagnostic dump

Click **Create** to create diagnostic dump files in the Target directory.

⌃ Advanced logging

Enable Computer Scanner advanced logging - Record all events that occur while scanning files and folders by Computer scan or Real-time file system protection.
Enable Device control advanced logging - Record all events that occur in Device control to allow diagnosing and solving problems.
Enable Direct Cloud advanced logging - Record all product communication between the product and Direct Cloud servers.
Enable Document protection advanced logging - Record all events in Document protection to allow diagnosing and solving problems.
Enable Kernel advanced logging - Record all events that occur in ESET kernel service (ekrn) to allow diagnosing and solving problems.
Enable Licensing advanced logging - Record all product communication with the license server.
Enable Memory tracing - Record all events, which will help developers diagnose memory leaks.
Enable Network protection advanced logging - Record all network data passing through network protection in PCAP format to help developers diagnose and fix the problems related to network protection.
Enable Operating System logging - Additional information about Operating system such as running processes, CPU activity, disc operations will be gathered. This can help developers to diagnose and fix problems related to ESET product running on your operating system.
Enable Protocol filtering advanced logging - Record all data passing through the Protocol filtering engine in PCAP format to help developers diagnose and fix the problems related to Protocol filtering.
Enable push messaging advanced logging - Record all events during push messaging to allow diagnostics and problem-solving.
Enable Real-time file system protection advanced logging - Record all events in Real-time file system protection to allow diagnosing and problem-solving.
Enable Update engine advanced logging - Record all events that occur during the update process to help developers diagnose and fix the problems related to the Update engine.
Log files location
C:\ProgramData\ESET\ESET Security\Diagnostics

Technical support

Submit system configuration data

Select **Always submit** not to be prompted before submitting your ESET Mail Security configuration data to customer care, or use **Ask before submission**.

Cluster

Enable Cluster is automatically enabled when the ESET Cluster is configured. You can disable it manually in the **Advanced setup** (F5) window by clicking the switch icon (for example, when you need to change configuration without affecting other nodes in the ESET Cluster). This switch only enables or disables the ESET Cluster functionality. To set up or destroy the cluster, to use the Cluster wizard or **Destroy** the cluster located in the Tools > Cluster section of the main program window.

ESET Cluster not configured and disabled:

ESET Cluster properly configured with its details and options:

User interface

Configure the Graphical user interface (GUI) behavior of ESET Mail Security. You can adjust the program's visual appearance and effects.

Use the GUI start mode drop-down menu to select from the following Graphical user interface (GUI) start modes:

- **Full**—The complete user interface will be displayed.

- **Terminal**—No notifications or alerts will be displayed. GUI can only be started by the Administrator. The user interface should be set to Terminal if graphical elements slow the performance of your computer or cause other problems. You may also want to turn off the GUI on a Terminal server. For more information about ESET Mail Security installed on Terminal server, see Disable GUI on Terminal Server topic.

Color mode

Select the color scheme of the ESET Mail Security graphical user interface (GUI) from the drop-down menu:

- **Same as the system color**—The ESET Mail Security color scheme is based on your operating system settings.

- **Dark**—The ESET Mail Security will use a dark color scheme (dark mode).

- **Light**—The ESET Mail Security will use a light color scheme (standard).

Show splash-screen at startup - Disable this option if you prefer not to have the splash screen displayed when main program window of your ESET Mail Security starts, for example, when logging into the system.

Use sound signal - ESET Mail Security plays a sound when important events occur during a scan, for example, when a threat is discovered or when the scan has finished.

Integrate into the context menu - When enabled, ESET Mail Security control elements are integrated into the context menu. The context menu is displayed after right-clicking an object (file). The menu lists all of the actions that you can perform on an object.

License Information

When enabled, messages and notifications about your license will be displayed.

Show license information - When disabled, the license expiration date on **Protection status** and **Help and support** screen will not be displayed.

Configure license-related application statuses - Opens the list of license-related application statuses.

Configure license notifications - When disabled, the notifications and messages will only be displayed when the license expired.

Access setup - You can prevent any unauthorized changes using the **Access setup** tool to ensure that security remains high.

ESET Shell - Configure access rights to product settings, features and data via eShell by changing the ESET Shell execution policy.

Access setup

For maximum security of your system, it is essential that ESET Mail Security is correctly configured. Any unqualified modifications may result in issues or even a loss of important data. To avoid unqualified modifications, you can have your ESET Mail Security configuration password protected.

> ⚠ If you are uninstalling ESET Mail Security while using access setup password protection, you will be prompted to enter the password. You will otherwise not be able to uninstall ESET Mail Security.

Password protect settings

Locks/unlocks the program's setup parameters. Click to open the **Password setup window**.

Set password

To set or change a password to protect setup parameters, click **Set**. To protect the setup parameters of ESET Mail Security and avoid unauthorized modification, a new password must be set. When you want to change an existing password, type your old password in the **Old password** field, enter your new password in the **New password** and **Confirm password** fields and then click **OK**. This password will be required for any future modifications to ESET Mail Security.

Require full administrator rights for limited administrator accounts

Select this option to prompt the current user (who does not have administrator's rights) to enter administrator account credentials when modifying certain parameters, such as disabling protection modules.

> ℹ If the Access Setup password changes and you want to import an existing .xml configuration file (that was signed before the password change) using the ESET CMD command line, make sure to sign it again using your current password. This allows you to use older configuration file without the need to export it on the other machine running ESET Mail Security before the import.

ESET Shell

You can configure access rights to product settings, features and data via eShell by changing the **ESET Shell execution policy**. The default setting is **Limited scripting**, but you can change it to Disabled, Read-only or Full access if needed.

Disabled

eShell cannot be used at all. Only the configuration of eShell itself is allowed - in ui eshell context. You can customize the appearance of eShell, but cannot access product settings or data.

Read only

eShell can be used as a monitoring tool. You can view all settings in both Interactive and Batch mode, but you cannot modify any settings or features or modify any data.

Limited scripting

In Interactive mode, you can view and modify all settings, features and data. In Batch mode eShell will function as if you were in Read-only mode; however, if you use signed batch files, you will be able to edit settings and modify data.

Full access

Access to all settings is unlimited in both Interactive and Batch mode (when running batch files). You can view and modify any setting. You must use an administrator account to run eShell with full access. If UAC is enabled, elevation is also required.

Disable GUI on Terminal Server

This chapter describes how to disable the GUI of ESET Mail Security running on Windows Terminal Server for user sessions.

Normally, the ESET Mail Security GUI starts up every time a remote user logs onto the server and creates a terminal session. This is usually undesirable on Terminal Servers. If you want to turn off the GUI for terminal sessions, you can do so via eShell by running `set ui ui gui-start-mode none` command. This will put the GUI into terminal mode. These are the two available modes for GUI startup:

```
set ui ui gui-start-mode full

set ui ui gui-start-mode none
```

If you want to find out what mode is currently in use, run the command `get ui ui gui-start-mode`

> **i** If you have installed ESET Mail Security on a Citrix server, we recommend using the settings described in our Knowledgebase article.

Icon in the Windows notification area

The most important setup options and features are available by right-clicking the system tray (Windows notification area) icon ⊜.

> **i** To access the system tray (Windows notification area) icon menu, ensure the start mode of User Interface elements is set to Full.

More information

Opens Monitoring page to show you the current protection status and messages.

Pause protection

Displays the confirmation dialog box that disables Antivirus and antispyware protection, which guards against attacks by controlling file, web and email communication. The **Time interval** drop-down menu enables you to specify how long the protection will be disabled.

Opens the ESET Mail Security Advanced setup.

Contains information about all important program events that have occurred and provides an overview of detected threats.

Reset window layout

Resets the ESET Mail Security window to its default size and position on the screen.

Color mode

Opens User Interface settings where you can change the color of the graphical user interface.

Starts updating modules to ensure your level of protection against malicious code.

Provides system information, details about the installed version of ESET Mail Security and the installed program modules as well as your license expiration date. Information about your operating system and system resources can be found at the bottom of the page.

Notifications

Notifications on the Desktop and balloon tips are informative only, and do not require user interaction. They are displayed in the notification area at the bottom right corner of the screen. More detailed options, such as notification display time and window transparency can be modified below.

Manage ESET Mail Security notifications, open the **Advanced setup** (**F5**) > **Notifications**. You can configure the following types:

Application statuses – Click **Edit** to select which application statuses will be displayed in the home section of the main program window.

Desktop notifications – Small pop-up windows next to the system taskbar.

Interactive alerts – Alert windows and message boxes that require user interaction.

Forwarding (email notifications) – Notifications are sent to a specified email address.

Application statuses

This dialog window lets you select or deselect which application statuses will be or will not be displayed. For example, when you pause Antivirus and antispyware protection, that will result in a change of protection status which will appear on the Monitoring page. Application status will also be displayed if your product is not activated or if your license has expired. Application statuses can be managed via ESET PROTECT policies.
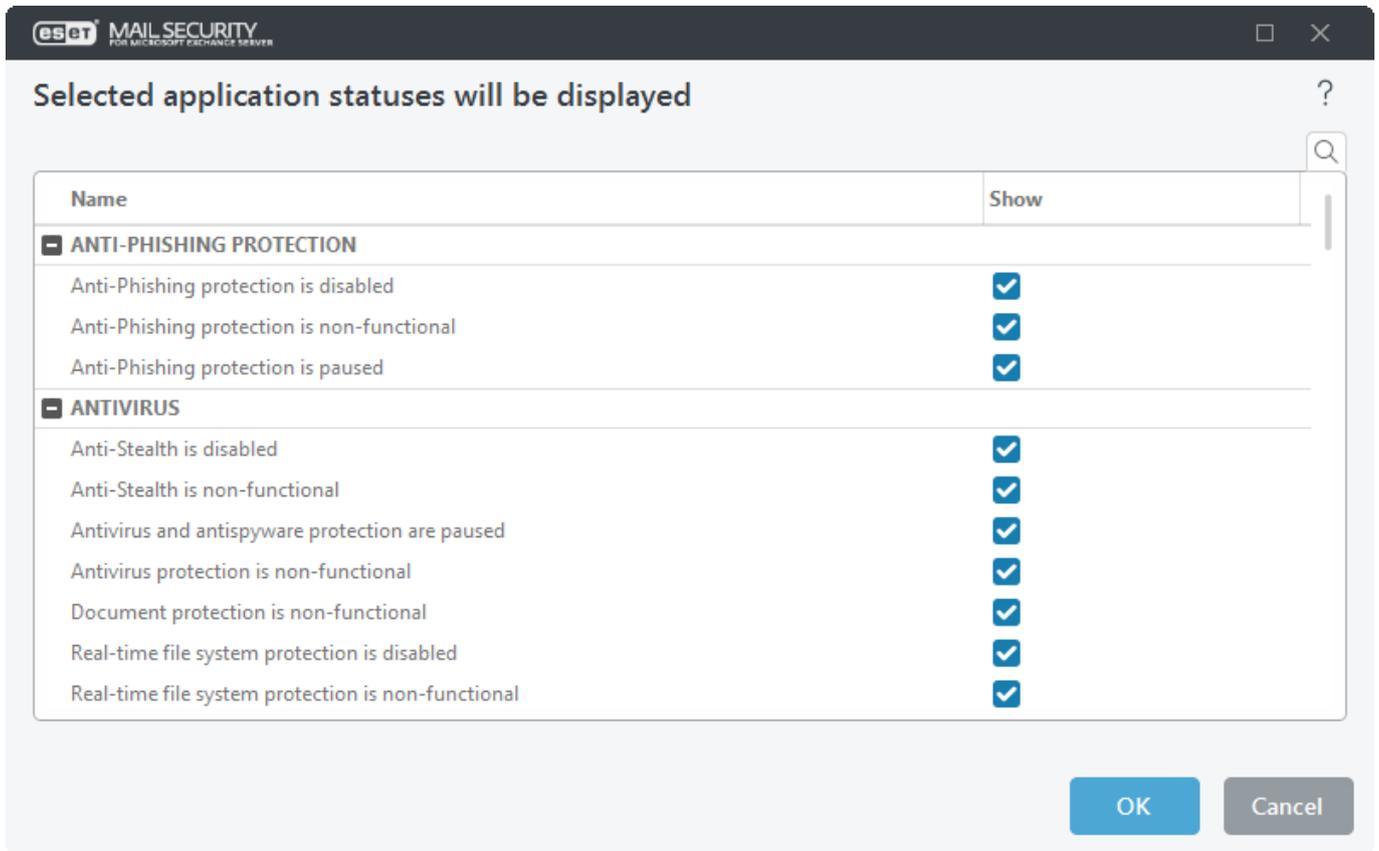
Disabled messages and statuses

Confirmation messages

It shows you a list of confirmation messages you can select to display or not to display.

Application statuses

Enable or disable display status in the Monitoring page in the main menu.

Desktop notifications

Desktop notification is represented by a small notification window next to the system taskbar. It is default set to show for 10 seconds, then it slowly disappears. ESET Mail Security communicates with the user by notifying them about successful product updates, new devices connected, virus scans, task completion or new detections found.

Display desktop notifications

We recommend keeping this option enabled so the product can inform you when a new event occurs.

Desktop notifications

Click **Edit** to select what Desktop notifications to communicate various events.

Turn the **Do not display notifications when running applications in full screen mode** switch on to suppress all non-interactive notifications.

Display time in seconds

Set the notification visibility duration. The value must be between 3-30 seconds.

Transparency

Set the notification transparency percentage. The supported range is 0 (no transparency) to 80 (very high transparency).

Minimum verbosity of events to display drop-down menu enables you to select the severity level of alerts and notification. The following options are available:

- **Diagnostic** - Logs information needed to fine-tune the program and all records above.

- **Informative** - Records informative messages, including successful update messages, plus all records above.

- **Warnings** - Records critical errors and warning messages.

- **Errors** - Errors such as "Error downloading file" and critical errors will be recorded.

- **Critical** - Logs only critical errors.

The **On multi-user systems**, display notifications on the screen of this user field specifies which user will receive system and other notifications on systems allowing multiple users to connect at the same time. Normally, this would be a system or network administrator. This option is especially useful for terminal servers, provided that all system notifications are sent to the administrator.

Allow notifications to take screen focus - Notifications will take screen focus and be accessible by Alt+Tab.

Customization

In this window, you can customize the messaging used in notifications.

Notification message - A default message to be shown in the notification footer.

Detection

Do not close detection notifications automatically

Enables detection notifications to stay on screen until you close them manually.

Use default message

You can turn off default message and specify custom detection notification message that will be displayed when a detection is blocked.

Detection notification message

Type a custom message to display when a detection is blocked.

Desktop notifications

You can configure ESET Mail Security notifications to be shown on desktop.
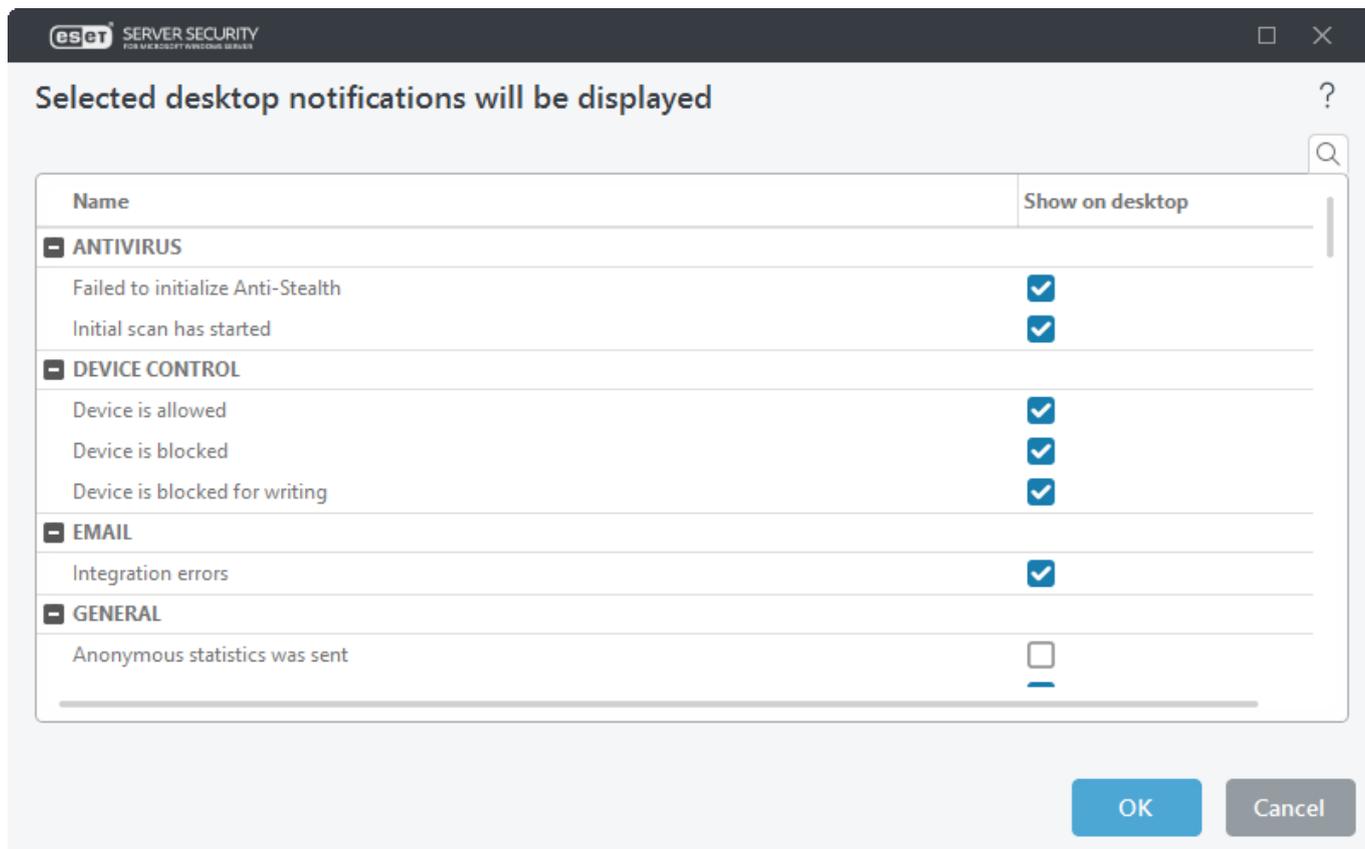
Interactive alerts

You can configure how threat alerts and system notifications (such as successful update messages) are handled by ESET Mail Security. For example, the display time **Duration** and **Transparency** in the Windows notification area (this applies only to the systems that support notifications).

Display interactive alerts

Disable this feature, if you want to prevent ESET Mail Security from displaying alerts in Windows notification area.

List of interactive alerts

Useful for automation. Deselect **Ask user** for items you want to automate, and choose what action will be taken instead of the alert window waiting for you interaction.

Message boxes are used to display short text messages or questions.

Close message boxes automatically

To close notification windows automatically after a certain period of time. If they are not closed manually, alert windows are automatically closed after the specified time period elapses.

Confirmation messages

When you click **Edit**, a window will open with a list of confirmation messages that ESET Mail Security displays before an action is performed. Use the check boxes to customize your preferences for confirmation messages.

Forwarding

ESET Mail Security can automatically send notification emails if an event with the selected verbosity level occurs.

Forward to email

Enable Forward notifications to email to activate email notifications.

Forwarded notifications

Select which desktop notifications are forwarded to email.

Email settings

Minimum verbosity for notifications - Specifies the minimum verbosity level of notifications to be sent.

- **Diagnostic**—Logs information needed to fine-tune the program and all records above.

- **Informative**—Records informative messages such as non-standard network events, including successful update messages, plus all records above.

- **Warnings**—Records critical errors and warning messages (Anti-Stealth is not running properly or update failed).

- **Errors**—Errors such as "Error downloading file" and critical errors will be recorded.

- **Critical**—Logs only critical errors.

Send each notification in a separate email

When enabled, the recipient will receive a new email for each individual notification. This may result in a large number of emails being received in a short period of time.

Interval after which new notification emails will be sent (min)

After the interval in minutes, a new notification will be sent via email. Set this value to 0 if you want to send those notifications immediately.

Sender address

Type the sender's address that will appear in the header of notification emails. This is what the recipient will see in the **From** field.

Recipient address

Specify the recipient's email address that will be displayed in the header of notification emails. Use a semi-colon ";" to separate multiple email addresses.

SMTP server

The name of the SMTP server used for sending alerts and notifications. This is typically the name of your Microsoft Exchange Server.

> ℹ SMTP servers with TLS encryption are supported by ESET Mail Security.

Username and password

If the SMTP server requires authentication, these fields should be filled in with a valid username and password to access the SMTP server.

Enable TLS

Enable alert and notification messages supported by TLS encryption.

Test SMTP connection

A test email will be sent to the recipient's email address.

Message format

Communications between the program and a remote user or system administrator are done via emails or LAN messages (using the Windows messenger service). The default alert messages and notification format will be optimal for most situations. In some circumstances, you may need to change the message format of event messages.

Format of event messages

Specify format of the email event notification messages.

Format of threat warning messages

Threat alert and notification messages have a pre-defined default format. We advise against changing this format. However, in some circumstances (for example, if you have an automated email processing system), you may need to change the message format.

Keywords (strings separated by % signs) are replaced in the message by the actual information as specified. The following keywords are available:

- %TimeStamp%—Date and time of the event.

- %Scanner%—Module concerned.

- %ComputerName%—Name of the computer where the alert occurred.

- %ProgramName%—Program that generated the alert.

- %DetectionObject%—Name of infected file, message, etc.

- %DetectionName%—Identification of the infection.

- %ErrorDescription%—Description of a non-virus event.

The keywords **%DetectionObject%** and **%DetectionName%** are only used in threat warning messages, and **%ErrorDescription%** is only used in event messages.

Charset

You can choose encoding from the drop-down menu. Email message will be converted according to the selected character encoding. Converts an email message to the ANSI character encoding based on Windows Regional settings (for example, windows-1250, Unicode (UTF-8), ACSII 7-bit, or Japanese (ISO-2022-JP)). As the result, "á" will be changed to "a" and an unknown symbol to "?".

Use Quoted-printable encoding

The email message source will be encoded to Quoted-printable (QP) format which uses ASCII characters and can correctly transmit special national characters by email in 8-bit format (áéíóú).

Revert to default settings

You can restore settings to their default values within **Advanced setup**. There are two options. You can revert everything to default or revert settings only for a specific section (settings in other sections will remain unchanged).

Revert all settings - All settings in all sections of advanced setup will be restored to the state they were after you have installed ESET Mail Security. You can think of it as Restore Factory Defaults.

> **i** After you click **Revert to default**, all changes that have been made will be lost. This action cannot be undone.

Revert all settings in this section - Reverts module settings in selected section to default values. Any changes you have made in this section will be lost.
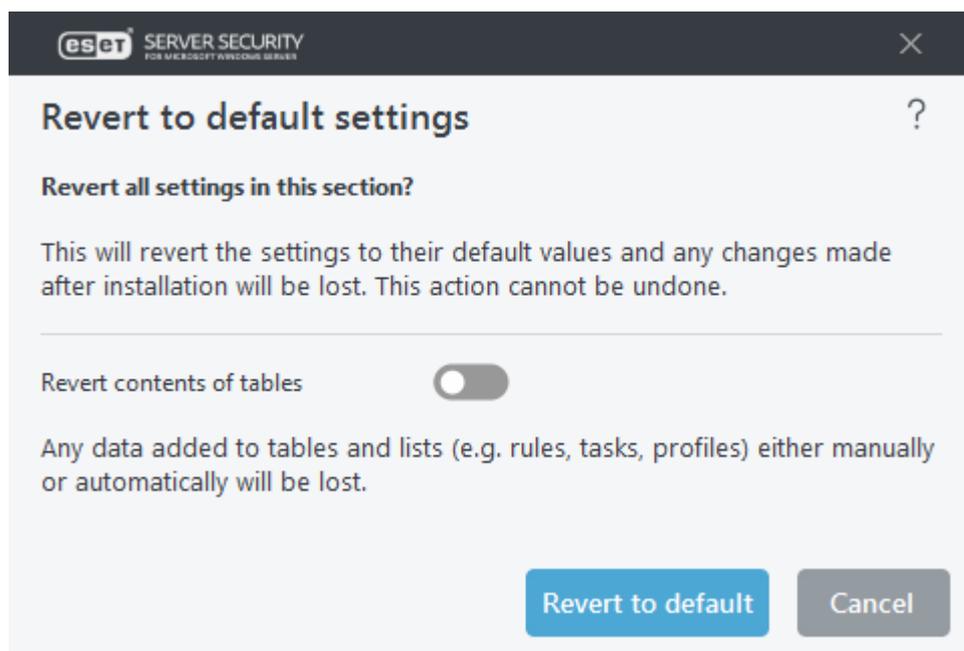
Revert contents of tables - When enabled, the rules, tasks or profiles added manually or automatically will be lost.

Help and support

ESET Mail Security contains troubleshooting tools and support information that will assist you in solving issues that you may encounter.

Installed product

Product and License information

- About ESET Mail Security – Displays information about your copy of ESET Mail Security.

- Product troubleshooting – To find solutions to the most frequently encountered problems. We recommend that you read this section before contacting technical support.

- License troubleshooting – To find solutions for problems with activation or license change.

- Change license – Click to launch the activation window and activate your product.

Help pages

Launches online help pages for ESET Mail Security.

Knowledgebase

Search ESET Knowledgebase – The ESET Knowledgebase contains answers to the most frequently asked questions and recommended solutions for various issues. Regularly updated by ESET technical specialists, the Knowledgebase is the most powerful tool for resolving various problems.

Technical Support

- Advanced logging – To create advanced logs for all available features to help developers diagnose and solve issues.

- Request support – If you cannot find an answer to your problem, contact our Technical Support department.

- Details for Technical Support – Display details information (Product name, Product version,etc.) for Technical Support.

- ESET Log Collector – ESET Log Collector is an application that automatically collects information, such as configuration and logs from your server to help resolve issues more quickly.

Submit support request

To assist as quickly and accurately as possible, ESET requires information about your ESET Mail Security configuration, detailed system information, running processes (ESET SysInspector log file) and registry data. ESET will only use this data to provide technical assistance to the customer. This setting can also be configured from the **Advanced setup** (**F5**) > **Tools** > **Diagnostics** > **Technical Support**.

> **i** If you choose to submit system data you must fill and submit the web form, otherwise your ticket will not be created and your system data will be lost.

When you submit the web form, your system configuration data will be sent to ESET. Select **Always submit this information** to remember this action for this process.

Don't submit data - Use this option if you do not want to submit data. You will be redirected to ESET Technical Support web page.

About ESET Mail Security

This window provides details about the installed version of ESET Mail Security. The top part of the window contains information about your operating system and system resources, the current user and full computer name.

Installed components

Contain information about modules, to view a list of installed components and their details. Click **Copy** to copy the list to your clipboard. This may be useful during troubleshooting or when contacting Technical Support.

Glossary

Visit Glossary page for more information about technical terms, threats and internet security.

End User License Agreement

Effective as of October 19, 2021.

IMPORTANT: Please read the terms and conditions of product application set out below carefully prior to download, installation, copy or use. **THROUGH DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING OR USING THE SOFTWARE YOU ARE EXPRESSING YOUR CONSENT TO THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS AND YOU ACKNOWLEDGE PRIVACY POLICY.**

End User License Agreement

Under the terms of this End User License Agreement ("Agreement") executed by and between ESET, spol. s r. o., having its registered office at Einsteinova 24, 85101 Bratislava, Slovak Republic, registered in the Commercial Register administered by Bratislava I District Court, Section Sro, Entry No 3586/B, Business Registration Number: 31333532 ("ESET" or "Provider") and you, a physical person or legal entity ("You" or "End User"), You are entitled to use the Software defined in Article 1 of this Agreement. The Software defined in Article 1 of this Agreement can be stored on a data carrier, sent via electronic mail, downloaded from the Internet, downloaded from the Provider's servers or obtained from other sources, subject to the terms and conditions specified below.

THIS IS AN AGREEMENT ON END USER RIGHTS AND NOT AN AGREEMENT FOR SALE. The Provider continues to own the copy of the Software and the physical media contained in the sales package and any other copies that the End User is authorized to make pursuant to this Agreement.

By clicking on "I Accept" or "I Accept…" while installing, downloading, copying or using the Software, You agree to the terms and conditions of this Agreement and acknowledge the Privacy Policy. If You do not agree to all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement and/or Privacy Policy, immediately click on the canceling option, cancel the installation or download, or destroy or return the Software, installation media, accompanying documentation and sales receipt to the Provider or the outlet from which You acquired the Software.

YOU AGREE THAT YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE ACKNOWLEDGES THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTAND IT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

1. **Software**. As used in this Agreement the term "Software" means: (i) computer program accompanied by this Agreement and all components thereof; (ii) all the contents of the disks, CD-ROMs, DVDs, e-mails and any attachments, or other media with which this Agreement is provided, including the object code form of the Software supplied on a data carrier, via electronic mail or downloaded via the Internet; (iii) any related explanatory written materials and any other possible documentation related to the Software, above all any description of the Software, its specifications, any description of the Software properties or operation, any description of the operating environment in which the Software is used, instructions for use or installation of the Software or any description of how to use the Software ("Documentation"); (iv) copies of the Software, patches for possible errors in the Software, additions to the Software, extensions to the Software, modified versions of the Software and updates of Software components, if any, licensed to You by the Provider pursuant to Article 3 of this Agreement. The Software shall be provided exclusively in the form of executable object code.

2. **Installation, Computer and a License key**. Software supplied on a data carrier, sent via electronic mail, downloaded from the Internet, downloaded from the Provider's servers or obtained from other sources requires installation. You must install the Software on a correctly configured Computer, complying at least with requirements set out in the Documentation. The installation methodology is described in the Documentation. No computer programs or hardware which could have an adverse effect on the Software may be installed on the Computer on which You install the Software. Computer means hardware, including but not limited to personal computers, laptops, workstations, palmtop computers, smartphones, hand-held electronic devices, or other electronic devices for which the Software is designed, on which it will be installed and/or used. License key means the unique sequence of symbols, letters, numbers or special signs provided to the End User in order to allow the legal use of the Software, its specific version or extension of the term of the License in compliance with this Agreement.

3. **License**. Subject to the condition that You have agreed to the terms of this Agreement and You comply with all the terms and conditions stipulated herein, the Provider shall grant You the following rights ("License"):

a) **Installation and use**. You shall have the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to install the Software on the hard disk of a Computer or other permanent medium for data storage, installation and storage of the Software in the memory of a computer system and to implement, store and display the Software.

b) **Stipulation of the number of licenses.** The right to use the Software shall be bound by the number of End Users. One End User shall be taken to refer to the following: (i) installation of the Software on one Computer; or (ii) if the extent of a license is bound to the number of mailboxes, then one End User shall be taken to refer to a Computer user who accepts electronic mail via a Mail User Agent ("MUA"). If MUA accepts electronic mail and subsequently distributes it automatically to several users, then the number of End Users shall be determined according to the actual number of users for whom the electronic mail is distributed. If a mail server performs the function of a mail gate, the number of End Users shall equal the number of mail server users for which the said gate provides services. If an unspecified number of electronic mail addresses are directed to and accepted by one user (e.g., through aliases) and messages are not automatically distributed by the client to a larger number of users, a License for one computer shall be required. You must not use the same License at the same time on more than one Computer. The End User is entitled to enter the License key to the Software only to the extent to which the End User has the right to use the Software in accordance with the limitation arising from the number of Licenses granted by Provider. The License key is deemed confidential, You must not share the License with third parties or allow third parties to use the License key unless permitted by this Agreement or Provider. If your License key is compromised, notify Provider immediately.

c) **Home/Business Edition.** A Home Edition version of the Software shall be used exclusively in private and/or non-commercial environments for home and family use only. A Business Edition version of the Software must be

obtained for use in a commercial environment as well as to use the Software on mail servers, mail relays, mail gateways, or Internet gateways.

d) **Term of the License.** Your right to use the Software shall be time-limited.

e) **OEM Software.** Software classified as "OEM" shall be limited to the Computer You obtained it with. It cannot be transferred to a different Computer.

f) **NFR, TRIAL Software.** Software classified as "Not-for-resale", NFR or TRIAL cannot be assigned for payment and must only be used for demonstration or testing the Software's features.

g) **Termination of the License.** The License shall terminate automatically at the end of the period for which granted. If You fail to comply with any of the provisions of this Agreement, the Provider shall be entitled to withdraw from the Agreement, without prejudice to any entitlement or legal remedy open to the Provider in such eventualities. In the event of cancellation of the License, You must immediately delete, destroy or return at your own cost, the Software and all backup copies to ESET or to the outlet from which You obtained the Software. Upon termination of the License, the Provider shall also be entitled to cancel the End User's entitlement to use the functions of the Software, which require connection to the Provider's servers or third-party servers.

4. **Functions with data collection and internet connection requirements.** To operate correctly, the Software requires connection to the Internet and must connect at regular intervals to the Provider's servers or third-party servers and applicable data collection in compliance with Privacy Policy. Connection to the Internet and applicable data collection is necessary for the following functions of the Software:

a) **Updates to the Software.** The Provider shall be entitled from time to issue updates or upgrades to the Software ("Updates"), but shall not be obliged to provide Updates. This function is enabled under the Software's standard settings and Updates are therefore installed automatically, unless the End User has disabled the automatic installation of Updates. For provisioning of Updates, License authenticity verification is required, including information about Computer and/or the platform on which the Software is installed in compliance with Privacy Policy.

Provision of any Updates may be subject to End of Life Policy ("EOL Policy"), which is available on https://go.eset.com/eol. No Updates will be provided after the Software or any of its features reaches the End of Life date as defined in the EOL Policy.

b) **Forwarding of infiltrations and information to the Provider.** The Software contains functions which collect samples of computer viruses and other malicious computer programs and suspicious, problematic, potentially unwanted or potentially unsafe objects such as files, URLs, IP packets and ethernet frames ("Infiltrations") and then send them to the Provider, including but not limited to information about the installation process, the Computer and/or the platform on which the Software is installed and, information about the operations and functionality of the Software ("Information"). The Information and Infiltrations may contain data (including randomly or accidentally obtained personal data) about the End User or other users of the Computer on which the Software is installed, and files affected by Infiltrations with associated metadata.

Information and Infiltrations may be collected by following functions of Software:

i. LiveGrid Reputation System function includes collection and sending of one-way hashes related to Infiltrations to Provider. This function is enabled under the Software's standard settings.

ii. LiveGrid Feedback System function includes collection and sending of Infiltrations with associated metadata and Information to Provider. This function may be activated by End User during the process of installation of the Software.

The Provider shall only use Information and Infiltrations received for the purpose of analysis and research of Infiltrations, improvement of Software and License authenticity verification and shall take appropriate measures to ensure that Infiltrations and Information received remain secure. By activating this function of the Software, Infiltrations and Information may be collected and processed by the Provider as specified in Privacy Policy and in compliance with relevant legal regulations. You can deactivate these functions at any time.

For the purpose of this Agreement, it is necessary to collect, process and store data enabling the Provider to identify You in compliance with Privacy Policy. You hereby acknowledge that the Provider checks using its own means whether You are using the Software in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement. You hereby acknowledge that for the purpose of this Agreement it is necessary for your data to be transferred, during communication between the Software and the Provider's computer systems or those of its business partners as part of Provider's distribution and support network to ensure functionality of Software and authorization to use the Software and to protection of the Provider's rights.

Following conclusion of this Agreement, the Provider or any of its business partners as part of Provider's distribution and support network shall be entitled to transfer, process and store essential data identifying You for billing purposes, performance of this Agreement and transmitting notifications on your Computer.

Details about privacy, personal data protection and Your rights as a data subject can be found in Privacy Policy which is available on Provider's website and accessible directly from the installation process. You can also visit it from Software's help section.

5. **Exercising End User rights**. You must exercise End User rights in person or via your employees. You are only entitled to use the Software to safeguard your operations and protect those Computers or computers systems for which You have obtained a License.

6. **Restrictions to rights.** You may not copy, distribute, extract components or make derivative works of the Software. When using the Software, You are required to comply with the following restrictions:

a) You may make one copy of the Software on a permanent storage medium as an archival backup copy, provided your archival back-up copy is not installed or used on any Computer. Any other copies You make of the Software shall constitute a breach of this Agreement.

b) You may not use, modify, translate or reproduce the Software or transfer rights to use the Software or copies of the Software in any manner other than as provided for in this Agreement.

c) You may not sell, sub-license, lease or rent or borrow the Software or use the Software for the provision of commercial services.

d) You may not reverse engineer, reverse compile or disassemble the Software or otherwise attempt to discover the source code of the Software, except to the extent that this restriction is expressly prohibited by law.

e) You agree that You will only use the Software in a manner that complies with all applicable laws in the jurisdiction in which You use the Software, including, but not limited to, applicable restrictions concerning copyright and other intellectual property rights.

f) You agree that You will only use the Software and its functions in a way which does not limit the possibilities of other End Users to access these services. The Provider reserves the right to limit the scope of services provided to individual End Users, to enable use of the services by the highest possible number of End Users. Limiting the scope of services shall also mean complete termination of the possibility to use any of the functions of the Software and deletion of Data and information on the Provider's servers or third-party servers relating to a specific function of the Software.

g) You agree not to exercise any activities involving use the License key, contrary to the terms of this Agreement or leading to provide License key to any person who is not entitled to use the Software, such as the transfer of used or unused License key in any form, as well as the unauthorized reproduction, or distribution of duplicated or generated License keys or using the Software as a result of the use of a License key obtained from the source other than the Provider.

7. **Copyright**. The Software and all rights, without limitation including proprietary rights and intellectual property rights thereto are owned by ESET and/or its licensors. They are protected by international treaty provisions and by all other applicable national laws of the country in which the Software is being used. The structure, organization and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of ESET and/or its licensors. You must not copy the Software, except as set forth in Article 6(a). Any copies which You are permitted to make pursuant to this Agreement must contain the same copyright and other proprietary notices that appear on the Software. If You reverse engineer, reverse compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to discover the source code of the Software, in breach of the provisions of this Agreement, You hereby agree that any information thereby obtained shall automatically and irrevocably be deemed to be transferred to and owned by the Provider in full, from the moment such information comes into being, notwithstanding the Provider's rights in relation to breach of this Agreement.

8. **Reservation of rights**. The Provider hereby reserves all rights to the Software, with the exception of rights expressly granted under the terms of this Agreement to You as the End User of the Software.

9. **Multiple language versions, dual media software, multiple copies**. In the event that the Software supports multiple platforms or languages, or if You receive multiple copies of the Software, You may only use the Software for the number of computer systems and for the versions for which You obtained a License. You may not sell, rent, lease, sub-license, lend or transfer versions or copies of the Software which You do not use.

10. **Commencement and termination of the Agreement.** This Agreement shall be effective from the date You agree to the terms of this Agreement. You may terminate this Agreement at any time by permanently uninstalling, destroying and returning, at your own cost, the Software, all backup copies and all related materials provided by the Provider or its business partners. Your right to use Software and any of its features may be subject to EOL Policy. After the Software or any of its features reaches the End of Life date defined in the EOL Policy, your right to use the Software will terminate. Irrespective of the manner of termination of this Agreement, the provisions of Articles 7, 8, 11, 13, 19 and 21 shall continue to apply for an unlimited time.

11. **END USER DECLARATIONS**. AS THE END USER YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. NEITHER THE PROVIDER, ITS LICENSORS OR AFFILIATES, NOR THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY THIRD-PARTY PATENTS, COPYRIGHTS, TRADEMARKS OR OTHER RIGHTS. THERE IS NO WARRANTY BY THE PROVIDER OR BY ANY OTHER PARTY THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE. YOU ASSUME ALL RESPONSIBILITY AND RISK FOR THE SELECTION OF THE SOFTWARE TO ACHIEVE YOUR INTENDED RESULTS AND FOR THE INSTALLATION, USE AND RESULTS OBTAINED FROM IT.

12. **No other obligations**. This Agreement creates no obligations on the part of the Provider and its licensors other than as specifically set forth herein.

13. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY**. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PROVIDER, ITS EMPLOYEES OR LICENSORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, REVENUE, SALES, DATA OR COSTS OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY, INTERRUPTION OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION OR FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT,

INCIDENTAL, ECONOMIC, COVER, PUNITIVE, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, HOWEVER CAUSED AND WHETHER ARISING UNDER CONTRACT, TORT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF THE INSTALLATION, THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF THE PROVIDER OR ITS LICENSORS OR AFFILIATES ARE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. BECAUSE SOME COUNTRIES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY, BUT MAY ALLOW LIABILITY TO BE LIMITED, IN SUCH CASES, THE LIABILITY OF THE PROVIDER, ITS EMPLOYEES OR LICENSORS OR AFFILIATES SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE SUM THAT YOU PAID FOR THE LICENSE.

14. Nothing contained in this Agreement shall prejudice the statutory rights of any party dealing as a consumer if running contrary thereto.

15. **Technical support**. ESET or third parties commissioned by ESET shall provide technical support at their own discretion, without any guarantees or declarations. No technical support will be provided after the Software or any of its features reaches the End of Life date defined in the EOL Policy. The End User shall be required to back up all existing data, software and program facilities prior to the provision of technical support. ESET and/or third parties commissioned by ESET cannot accept liability for damage or loss of data, property, software or hardware or loss of profits due to the provision of technical support. ESET and/or third parties commissioned by ESET reserve the right to decide that resolving the problem is beyond the scope of technical support. ESET reserves the right to refuse, suspend or terminate the provision of technical support at its own discretion. License information, Information and other data in compliance with Privacy Policy may be required for the purpose of technical support provision.

16. **Transfer of the License**. The Software can be transferred from one Computer to another, unless contrary to the terms of the Agreement. If not contrary to the terms of the Agreement, the End User shall only be entitled to permanently transfer the License and all rights ensuing from this Agreement to another End User with the Provider's consent, subject to the condition that (i) the original End User does not retain any copies of the Software; (ii) the transfer of rights must be direct, i.e. from the original End User to the new End User; (iii) the new End User must assume all the rights and obligations incumbent on the original End User under the terms of this Agreement; (iv) the original End User has to provide the new End User with documentation enabling verification of the genuineness of the Software as specified under Article 17.

17. **Verification of the genuineness of the Software.** The End User may demonstrate entitlement to use the Software in one of the following ways: (i) through a license certificate issued by the Provider or a third party appointed by the Provider; (ii) through a written license agreement, if such an agreement was concluded; (iii) through the submission of an e-mail sent by the Provider containing licensing details (user name and password). License information and End User identification data in compliance with Privacy Policy may be required for the purpose of Software genuineness verification.

18. **Licensing for public authorities and the US Government**. The Software shall be provided to public authorities, including the United States Government, with the license rights and restrictions described in this Agreement.

19. **Trade control compliance**.

a) You will not, directly or indirectly, export, re-export, transfer or otherwise make available the Software to any person, or use it in any manner, or be involved in any activity, that could result in ESET or its holding companies, its subsidiaries, and the subsidiaries of any of its holding companies, as well as entities controlled by its holding companies ("Affiliates") being in violation of, or being subject to, negative consequences under trade control laws which include:

i. any laws that control, restrict, or impose licensing requirements on export, re-export or transfer of goods, software, technology, or services, issued or adopted by any government, state or regulatory authority of the United States of America, Singapore, the United Kingdom, the European Union or any of its Member States, or any country in which obligations under the Agreement are to be performed, or in which ESET or any of its

Affiliates are incorporated or operate, and

ii. any economic, financial, trade or other, sanction, restriction, embargo, import or export ban, prohibition on transfer of funds or assets or on performing services, or equivalent measure imposed by any government, state or regulatory authority of the United States of America, Singapore, the United Kingdom, the European Union or any of its Member States, or any country in which obligations under the Agreement are to be performed, or in which ESET or any of its Affiliates are incorporated or operate.

(legal acts referred to in points i, and ii. above together as "Trade Control Laws").

b) ESET shall have the right to suspend its obligations under, or terminate, these Terms with immediate effect in the event that:

i. ESET determines that, in its reasonable opinion, the User has breached or is likely to breach provision of Article 19 a) of the Agreement; or

ii. the End User and/or the Software become subject to Trade Control Laws and, as a result, ESET determines that, in its reasonable opinion, the continued performance of its obligations under the Agreement could result in ESET or its Affiliates being in violation of, or being subject to negative consequences under, Trade Control Laws.

c) Nothing in the Agreement is intended, and nothing should be interpreted or construed, to induce or require either party to act or refrain from acting (or to agree to act or refrain from acting) in any manner which is inconsistent with, penalized, or prohibited under any applicable Trade Control Laws.

20. **Notices**. All notices and returns of the Software and Documentation must be delivered to: ESET, spol. s r. o., Einsteinova 24, 85101 Bratislava, Slovak Republic, without prejudice to ESET's right to communicate to You any changes to this Agreement, Privacy Policies, EOL Policy and Documentation in accordance with art. 22 of the Agreement. ESET may send You emails, in-app notifications via Software or post the communication on our website. You agree to receive legal communications from ESET in electronic form, including any communications on change in Terms, Special Terms or Privacy Policies, any contract proposal/acceptance or invitations to treat, notices or other legal communications. Such electronic communication shall be deemed as received in writing, unless applicable laws specifically require a different form of communication.

21. **Applicable law**. This Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Slovak Republic. The End User and the Provider hereby agree that the principles of the conflict of laws and the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply. You expressly agree that any disputes or claims ensuing from this Agreement with respect to the Provider or any disputes or claims relating to use of the Software shall be settled by Bratislava I District Court and You expressly agree to the said court exercising jurisdiction.

22. **General provisions**. Should any of the provisions of this Agreement be invalid or unenforceable, this shall not affect the validity of the other provisions of the Agreement, which shall remain valid and enforceable under the conditions stipulated therein. This Agreement has been executed in English. In case any translation of the Agreement is prepared for the convenience or any other purpose or in any case of a discrepancy between language versions of this Agreement, the English version shall prevail.

ESET reserves the right to make changes to the Software as well as to revise terms of this Agreement, its Annexes, Addendums, Privacy Policy, EOL Policy and Documentation or any part thereof at any time by updating the relevant document (i) to reflect changes to the Software or to how ESET does business, (ii) for legal, regulatory or security reasons, or (iii) to prevent abuse or harm. You will be notified about any revision of the Agreement by email, in-app notification or by other electronic means. If You disagree with the proposed changes to the Agreement, You may terminate it in accordance with Art. 10 within 30 days after receiving a notice of the change. Unless You terminate the Agreement within this time limit, the proposed changes will be deemed accepted and

become effective towards You as of the date You received a notice of the change.

This is the entire Agreement between the Provider and You relating to the Software and it supersedes any prior representations, discussions, undertakings, communications or advertising relating to the Software.

EULAID: EULA-PRODUCT-LG; 3537.0

Privacy Policy

The protection of personal data is of particular importance to ESET, spol. s r. o., having its registered office at Einsteinova 24, 851 01 Bratislava, Slovak Republic, registered in the Commercial Register administered by Bratislava I District Court, Section Sro, Entry No 3586/B, Business Registration Number: 31333532 as a Data Controller ("ESET" or "We"). We want to comply with the transparency requirement as legally standardized under the EU General Data Protection Regulation ("GDPR"). To achieve this goal, We are publishing this Privacy Policy with the sole purpose of informing our customer ("End User" or "You") as a data subject about following personal data protection topics:

- Legal Basis of Personal Data Processing,
- Data Sharing and Confidentiality,
- Data Security,
- Your Rights as a Data Subject,
- Processing of Your Personal Data
- Contact Information.

Processing of Your Personal Data

Services provided by ESET implemented in our product are provided under the terms of EULA, but some of them might require specific attention. We would like to provide You with more details on data collection connected with the provision of our services. We render various services described in the EULA and the product documentation. To make it all work, We need to collect the following information:

- Update and other statistics covering information concerning installation process and your computer including platform on which our product is installed and information about the operations and functionality of our products such as operation system, hardware information, installation IDs, license IDs, IP address, MAC address, configuration settings of product.
- One-way hashes related to infiltrations as part of ESET LiveGrid® Reputation System which improves the efficiency of our anti-malware solutions by comparing scanned files to a database of whitelisted and blacklisted items in the cloud.
- Suspicious samples and metadata from the wild as part of ESET LiveGrid® Feedback System which enables ESET to react immediately to needs of our end users and keep us responsive to the latest threats providing. We are dependent on You sending us

    - infiltrations such as potential samples of viruses and other malicious programs and suspicious; problematic, potentially unwanted or potentially unsafe objects such as executable files, email messages reported by You as spam or flagged by our product;
    - information about devices in local network such as type, vendor, model and/or name of device;
    - information concerning the use of internet such as IP address and geographic information, IP packets, URLs and ethernet frames;
    - crash dump files and information contained.

We do not desire to collect your data outside of this scope but sometimes it is impossible to prevent it.

271

Accidentally collected data may be included in malware itself (collected without your knowledge or approval) or as part of filenames or URLs and We do not intend it to form part of our systems or process it for the purpose declared in this Privacy Policy.

- Licensing information such as license ID and personal data such as name, surname, address, email address is required for billing purposes, license genuineness verification and provision of our services.
- Contact information and data contained in your support requests may be required for service of support. Based on the channel You choose to contact us, We may collect your email address, phone number, license information, product details and description of your support case. You may be asked to provide us with other information to facilitate service of support.

Data Sharing and Confidentiality

We do not share your data with third parties. However, ESET is a company that operates globally through affiliated companies or partners as part of our sales, service and support network. Licensing, billing and technical support information processed by ESET may be transferred to and from affiliates or partners for the purpose of fulfilling the EULA, such as providing services or support.

ESET prefers to process its data in the European Union (EU). However, depending on your location (use of our products and/or services outside the EU) and/or the service you choose, it may be necessary to transfer your data to a country outside the EU. For example, we use third-party services in connection with cloud computing. In these cases, we carefully select our service providers and ensure an appropriate level of data protection through contractual as well as technical and organizational measures. As a rule, we agree on the EU standard contractual clauses, if necessary, with supplementary contractual regulations.

For some countries outside the EU, such as the United Kingdom and Switzerland, the EU has already determined a comparable level of data protection. Due to the comparable level of data protection, the transfer of data to these countries does not require any special authorization or agreement.

Data Subject's Rights

The rights of every End User matter and We would like to inform you that all End Users (from any EU or any non-EU country) have the following rights guaranteed at ESET. To exercise your data subject's rights, you can contact us via support form or by e-mail at dpo@eset.sk. For identification purposes, we ask you for the following information: Name, e-mail address and - if available - license key or customer number and company affiliation. Please refrain from sending us any other personal data, such as the date of birth. We would like to point out that to be able to process your request, as well as for identification purposes, we will process your personal data.

Right to Withdraw the Consent. Right to withdraw the consent is applicable in case of processing based on consent only. If We process your personal data on the basis of your consent, you have the right to withdraw the consent at any time without giving reasons. The withdrawal of your consent is only effective for the future and does not affect the legality of the data processed before the withdrawal.

Right to Object. Right to object the processing is applicable in case of processing based on the legitimate interest of ESET or third party. If We process your personal data to protect a legitimate interest, You as the data subject have the right to object to the legitimate interest named by us and the processing of your personal data at any time. Your objection is only effective for the future and does not affect the lawfulness of the data processed before the objection. If we process your personal data for direct marketing purposes, it is not necessary to give reasons for your objection. This also applies to profiling, insofar as it is connected with such direct marketing. In all other cases, we ask you to briefly inform us about your complaints against the legitimate interest of ESET to process your personal data.

Please note that in some cases, despite your consent withdrawal or your objection processing, we are entitled to further process your personal data on the basis of another legal basis, for example, for the performance of a contract.

Right of Access. As a data subject, you have the right to obtain information about your data stored by ESET free of charge at any time.

Right to Rectification. If we inadvertently process incorrect personal data about you, you have the right to have this corrected.

Right to Erasure. As a data subject, you have the right to request the deletion or restriction of the processing of your personal data. If we process your personal data, for example, with your consent, you withdraw it and there is no other legal basis, for example, a contract, We delete your personal data immediately. Your personal data will also be deleted as soon as they are no longer required for the purposes stated for them at the end of our retention period.

Right to Restriction of Processing. If we use your personal data for the sole purpose of direct marketing and you have revoked your consent or objected to the underlying legitimate interest of ESET, We will restrict the processing of your personal data to the extent that we include your contact data in our internal black list in order to avoid unsolicited contact. Otherwise, your personal data will be deleted.

Please note that We may be required to store your data until the expiry of the retention obligations and periods issued by the legislator or supervisory authorities. Retention obligations and periods may also result from the Slovak legislation. Thereafter, the corresponding data will be routinely deleted.

Right to Data Portability. We are happy to provide You, as a data subject, with the personal data processed by ESET in the xls format.

Right to Lodge a Complaint. As a data subject, You have a right to lodge a complaint with a supervisory authority at any time. ESET is subject to the regulation of Slovak laws and We are bound by data protection legislation as part of the European Union. The relevant data supervisory authority is The Office for Personal Data Protection of the Slovak Republic, located at Hraničná 12, 82007 Bratislava 27, Slovak Republic.

Contact Information

If You would like to exercise your right as a data subject or You have a question or concern, send us a message at:

ESET, spol. s r.o.
Data Protection Officer
Einsteinova 24
85101 Bratislava
Slovak Republic
dpo@eset.sk